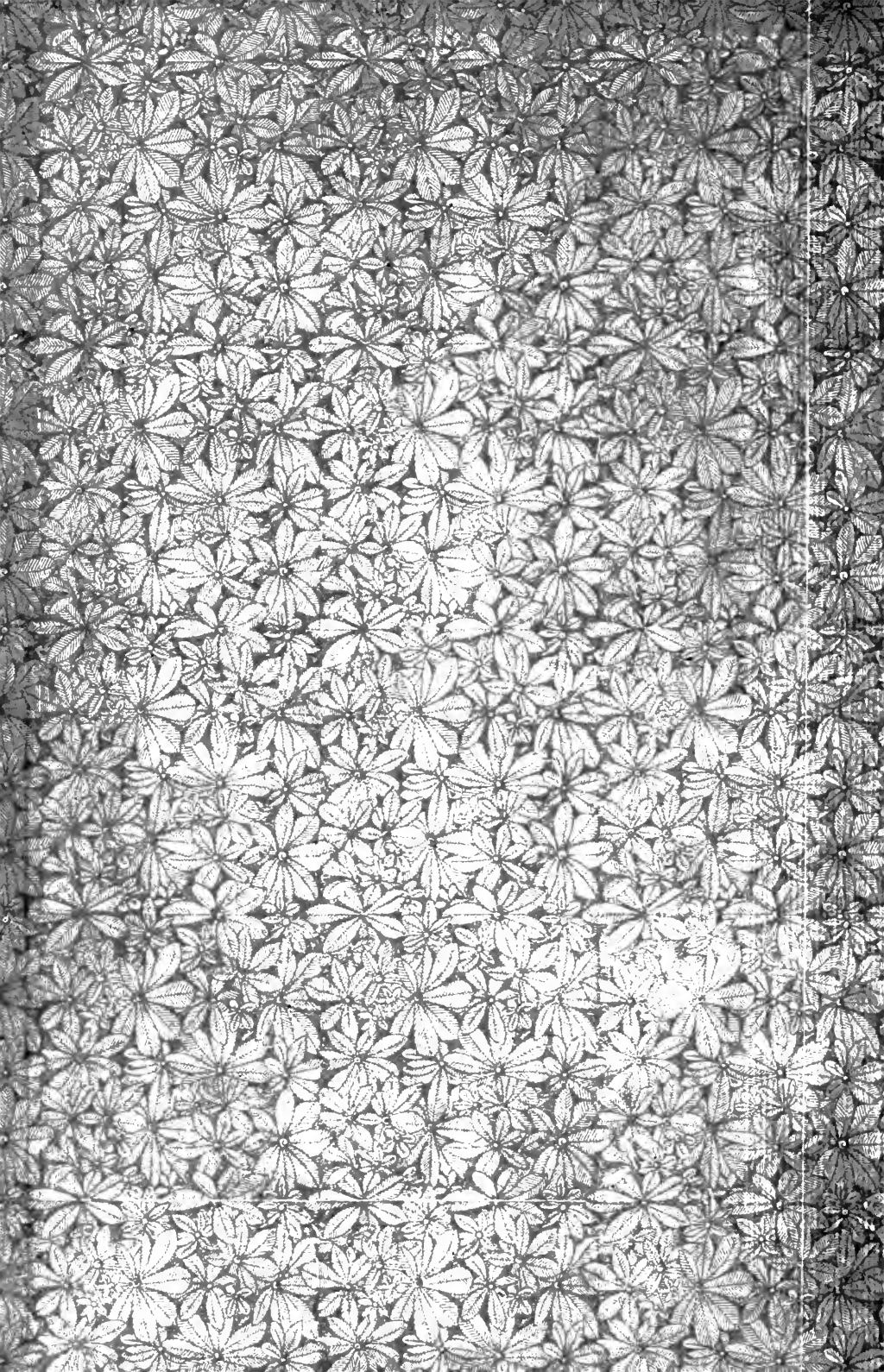
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 01795646 7



LaPor, Gr
V6716g

# A GRAMMAR

OF THE

# PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE;

TO WHICH IS ADDED

## A Copious Vocabulary and Dialogues,

WITH

EXTRACTS FROM THE BEST PORTUGUESE AUTHORS.

By A. Antonio VIEYRA.

---

*NEW EDITION, REVISED*

BY

A. PEIXOTO, K.C.C.,

PROFESSOR OF PORTUGUESE, KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON;
EXAMINER TO THE CIVIL SERVICE COMMISSIONERS, AND TO THE
SOCIETY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES.

37135
5/6/93.

---

LONDON: DULAU AND CO., 37 SOHO SQUARE.

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO., STATIONERS' HALL COURT.

1890

MICROFILMED BY
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
LIBRARY
MASTER NEGATIVE NO.:
930167

LONDON:
Printed by STRANGEWAYS & SONS, Tower Street,
Cambridge Circus, W.C.

# AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

As the usefulness of the Portuguese Language is so well known to all English merchants who carry on a general trade with the different parts of the known world, it will be needless to use any arguments here to prove it; and I shall refer what I have to say on the copiousness and energy of this language, to the Preface to my English and Portuguese Dictionary.

The reader will find, in the First Part of this Grammar, what is material as a foundation of the whole.

At the end of the Second Part is a full explanation of the Particles, on which I have bestowed more time and labour, because this subject has been hitherto much neglected, although the principal ornament and elegance, not only of the Portuguese,

but of every other language, chiefly consist in the proper arrangement and judicious interspersion of the words.

In the Third Part is a larger collection than hitherto published of the terms of trade, war, navigation, &c., which the present intercourse between the nations renders particularly useful.

I have in the Fourth Part given some passages selected from the best Portuguese Authors, which will facilitate the reading of their most eminent writers.

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### CHAPTER I.


PAGE

Of the Portugese alphabet . . . . . 1
Of the vowels . . . . . 2
Of the consonants . . . . . 3
Of the double consonants . . . . . 6
Of the five nasal vowels . . . . . 7
Of diphthongs. . . . . 8


### CHAPTER II.


Of the articles . . . . . 9


### CHAPTER III.


Of the nouns . . . . . 11
Of the adjectives . . . . . 19
Of numeral nouns; and first, of cardinal . . . . . 22
Ordinal nouns. . . . . 24
A method to learn a great many Portuguese words in a short time . . . . . 26


### CHAPTER IV.


Of pronouns . . . . . 28
Of personal pronouns . . . . . 28
Of conjunctive pronouns . . . . . 32
Of mixed pronouns. . . . . 33
Of possessive pronouns . . . . . 34

PAGE
Remarks upon the possessives . . . . . 36
Of the pronouns demonstrative . . . . . 38
Of the pronouns interrogative . . . . . 42
Of the pronouns relative. . . . . 44
Of the improper pronouns . . . . . 46

## CHAPTER V.

Of verbs. . . . . 48
Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *têr*, or *haver*, to have. . 49
Of the auxiliary verb *haver* . . . . . 55
Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *ser*, or *estar*, to be . . 56
An easy method of learning to conjugate the Portuguese verbs 62
First conjugation of the verbs in *ar* . . . . . 65
Second conjugation of the verbs in *er* . . . . . 72
Third conjugation of the verbs in *ir* . . . . . 77
Of the irregular verbs . . . . . 81
Of neuter verbs . . . . . 116
Of reciprocal verbs . . . . . 117
Impersonal verbs . . . . . 123

## CHAPTER VI.

Of the participles . . . . . 134

## CHAPTER VII.

Of the adverbs . . . . . 134

## CHAPTER VIII.

Of the prepositions . . . . . 138

## CHAPTER IX.

Of the conjunctions . . . . . 139
Interjective particles . . . . . 141
Abbreviations. . . . . 143

## PART II.

### CHAPTER I.

PAGE
Of the division of syntax . . . . . 145

### CHAPTER II.

Of the syntax of articles . . . . . 149

### CHAPTER III.

Of the syntax of nouns; and first of the substantives . . 154
Of the syntax of adjectives . . . . . 155
Adjectives which come after the substantives . . . 156
Of the syntax of comparatives and superlatives . . . 158

### CHAPTER IV.

Of the syntax of pronouns . . . . . 159

### CHAPTER V.

Of the syntax of verbs . . . . . 163

### CHAPTER VI.

Of the syntax of participles and gerunds . . . . 177

### CHAPTER VII.

Of prepositions . . . . . 179
Of further particles . . . . . 207

### CHAPTER VIII.

Of the Portuguese orthography; and of capitals and stops . 219
Of the accents . . . . . 220
Some observations upon the Portugese orthography . . 222
Of double letters . . . . . 231
Of the quantity of syllables and their sound . . . . 242

### CHAPTER IX.

Etymology of the Portuguese tongue from the Latin . . 248

## PART III.

PAGE
Phraseology . . . . . 251
Vocabulary of words most used in conversation . . . 255
Of the Portuguese coin . . . . . 256
A collection of Portugese proverbs . . . . . 257
Familiar dialogues . . . . . 368
Letters on business . . . . . 387

---

## PART IV.

Several useful and entertaining passages . . . . 395
Poetical extracts . . . . . 419

# A NEW

# PORTUGUESE GRAMMAR.

---

## PART I.

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF THE PORTUGUESE ALPHABET, AND THE MANNER OF PRONOUNCING EACH SEPARATE LETTER.

The Portuguese alphabet contains twenty-five single letters and five double consonants, viz.:—

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K*, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Of these the following five letters are vowels:—

*a, e, i, o, u.*

These five letters are pronounced with a nasal sound, when there is a cedilla (˜) over them, viz.:—

*ã, ẽ, ĩ, õ, ũ.*

The following are the five double consonants:—

*ch, lh, nh, ph, rr.*

* *K* has been adopted in the Portuguese alphabet [ever since the first (Barros's) Portuguese Grammar was printed, in 1539] for words of foreign derivation originally written with it; it is expressed by a sound like that of the *ca* in the English word *car*, if the *r* is dropped in the pronunciation; its power is the same as in English.

## OF THE MANNER OF PRONOUNCING THE PORTUGUESE LETTERS.

### OF THE VOWELS.

#### A

in Portuguese is commonly pronounced like *a* in the following English words:—*adapted*, *castle*, *bath*, &c. It is sometimes pronounced with less strength, and closely, as in *ambos*, both, where the *a* is pronounced like *a* in the English word *ambition*.

#### E.

The letter *e* has two* different sounds: the one open, like *ai* in *daily;* the other close, like that in the English word *mellow*. Examples of the former, *fé*, faith, *pe*, foot, &c. Examples of the latter, *rêde*, a net, *parêde*, a wall, &c. In this consists a great part of the beauty of the Portuguese pronunciation, which, however, cannot be learned but by long use, notwithstanding all the rules that can be given.

#### I

is pronounced like *ee* in the English word *steel*, aço; or like *i* in the English word *still*, ainda, *visible*, visivel.

* *E* has three different sounds (the same as the French *ê*, *é*, *e*, respectively corresponding with the Portuguese *é*, *ê*, *e*): no notice has been taken of the *e* mute, as in the words *appetite*, appetite; *retrato*, portrait. The accent (^) in the words *rêde*, *parêde*, is used here only to show which *e* bears the second or close sound (the other *e* being mute), not that the words are generally written with that accent. Indeed, whenever a vowel is found accentuated in Portuguese, the proper sound of the accent must, of course, be given to it; but the student must not expect always to find the respective accents on the vowels whenever any such sound belongs to them.

## O.

This vowel has two* sounds: one open, as in the word *dó*, pity, where the *o* is pronounced like our *o* in the word *store;* the other close, as in the Portuguese article *do*, of, and the word *redondo*, round, where the *o* is pronounced like our *u* in *turret* or *stumble*. It is likewise in the different pronunciation of the vowel that the greatest part of the beauty of the Portuguese pronunciation consists; but it can be learnt only by long use.

## U.

The vowel *u* is pronounced like *oo* in English.

---

### OF THE CONSONANTS.

## B

is pronounced as the *b* in the English word *better*.

## C

is pronounced as in the English word *celebrated*.

Before *a*, *o*, *u*, and the consonants, *l*, *r*, it has the sound of a *k;* but before *e* and *i* it takes the hissing

* The Portuguese *O* has three different sounds, as the *E*, and equally accentuated *ó*, *ô*, *o:* the first is open, as in the words *dó*, pity, *tópo*, I hit upon, where the *o* is pronounced much like the English in *top;* the other close, as in *tôpo*, top, *pôr*, to place, for the sound of which I find no sound equivalent in English; the third mute, as in the Portuguese article *do*, of, and the final unaccentuated *o* ending all Portuguese words, where its sound is just the same as in the English verb *do*, or the preposition *to*, when lightly pronounced without stress or emphasis. In the word *redondo*, the *on* somewhat resembles that of the English in *controversy*, and therefore bears no analogy to the *u* in *turret* or *stumble*.

sound of *s*, and also before *a*, *o*, *u*, when there is a cedilla under it, thus *ç*.

Double *c* is sounded only before *e* and *c*, the first with the sound of *k*, and the other with the hissing sound of *s*; as in the word *accidente*, accident, pronounced *aksidente*.

D

is pronounced like the *d* in the first syllable of the English word *declared*.

F

is always pronounced as in English.

G.

Before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants, it is pronounced as in English: examples, *ganancia*, gain; *repugnancia*, repugnancy.

G before *e* and *i* denotes the sound of *j* consonant, as in the English word *generation*.

G before *l* and *r* is pronounced as in English: examples, *gladiador*, gladiator; *gruta*, grotto.

*Güa* is pronounced as if the English word *guard*, in Portuguese *güarda*, were written *gward*.

*Gue*, *gui* are pronounced as *gue*, *gi* in the words *guest* and *gift*; but when there are two dots on the *u*, the *u* is then pronounced as in *argüir*, to argue.

H.

This letter is mute in Portuguese, the same as in the English words *honour*, *heir*, and is preserved in those words that are derived from the Latin.

J

is pronounced like the *j* in English.

K

is only used in the words of foreign derivation originally written with it.

L.

L and *ll* are pronounced as in English.

M

is also pronounced as in English.

N.

Also as in English.

P

has a sound as that of *pe* in the English word *penny*.

Q

is pronounced like *k*: example, *quero*, I am willing, pronounced *kero*.

The vowel *u* in the words *qual*, which; *qualidade*, quality, &c., is pronounced as in the latter word.

R

at the beginning of a word is pronounced as in English in the words *rage*, *rose*, *rice*, &c., and between two vowels, as in the name of *Sarah*; but after a consonant and before a vowel it has a strong sound, as in the word *enrich*.

S

and *ss* are pronounced as in English.

S between two vowels is pronounced like a *z*; particularly in the words ending in *oso* and *esa*, as *amoroso cuidadoso*, *mesa*, *defensa*, &c.

### T

has a sound like that of *ta* in the English word *tame.*

### V

is pronounced as in English.

### X

is pronounced like our personal pronoun *she,* with *es* added to it, as *shees,* in the words *baixo,* low; *paixão,* passion; *axioma,* axiom.

X after the vowel *e,* and before a consonant, is pronounced like *is* in the words *extensão, extenuado, expulso, excellente,* and some other words.

X between two vowels is pronounced like *iz,* as in the words *exactamente, exornar, exordio,* &c.

X at the end of a word is pronounced like *s,* as in *Felix, simplex, duplex,* &c.

### Y

has the same sound as an *i* in the English word *visible,* and is called *ypsilon.*

### Z

is pronounced as in English; but at the end of words it is sounded like *s,* as *rapaz,* boy; *Francez,* French; *perdiz,* partridge; *voz,* voice; *luz,* light, &c.

---

## OF THE FIVE DOUBLE CONSONANTS, CALLED *PROLAÇÕES* IN PORTUGUESE.

### CH

is pronounced like *sh* in the English word *shoe,* in *chegar,* to arrive; *achar,* to find, with the exception of *architecto, monarcha,* &c., when the *ch* has the sound of a *k.*

PH

is pronounced as in English.

LH

is pronounced still softer than the *l* in the word *punctilio.*

NH

has a peculiar sound, of which there is no equivalent in English; it is pronounced as the *n* in the word *cognac* in French.

RR

is only made use of between two vowels, and it is strongly sounded.*

---

OF THE FIVE NASAL VOWELS.

Words with a nasal sound can be written only with the cedilla over the vowel, thus: *ã*, *ẽ*, *ĩ*, *õ*, *ũ*, or with *m* and *n* before it; with this difference, that if they are at the end of a word, or before *b*, *p*, *m*, they must be written with *m*, and in all other cases with *n*; as in the words *sãto*, *santo*; *sõda*, *sonda*; and *sĩ*, *sim*; *irmã*, *irmam*; *tẽpo*, *tempo.*

* It would be preferable if the learned in Portugal were to follow the resolution of the Royal Academy of Madrid, by expunging the *ph* and placing the *f* in its stead, as in the words *metaphysica*, *philosophia*, &c., and by writing *c* instead of *ch* in the words *charidade*, charity, *chôro*, choir, when it is pronounced like a *k*; also by replacing the *ç* with an *s*, since they have in both languages the same hissing sound, and by omitting altogether the *h* in the words *throno*, *theatro*, and many other modifications, already adopted by some, which we shall have occasion to point out in the course of this work.

## OF DIPHTHONGS.

There are sixteen diphthongs in Portuguese, ten of which are vocal and six nasal; namely,

### VOCAL DIPHTHONGS.

*ái*, *áe*, as in *pai*, or *páe*, father.
*áo*, as in *páo*, a stick.
*éi*, as in *réi*, king.
*êi*, as in *lêi*, law.
*éo*, as in *céo*, heaven.
*êo*, as in *mêo*, or *meu*, mine.
*íó*, as in *vio*, he saw.
*ói*, *óe*, as in *herói*, or *heróe*, a hero.
*ôi*, as in *rôido*, gnawed.
*uí*, as in *fuí*, I went.

### NASAL DIPHTHONGS.

*ãi*, *ãe*, as in *mãi*, or *mãe*, mother.
*ão*, as in *mão*, hand.
*ẽe*, as in *bẽe*, or *bem*, well.
*õe*, as in *põe*, or *poem*, poem.
*õo*, as in *bõo*, or *bom*, good.
*ũi*, as in *rũi*, or *ruim*, mean.

## CHAPTER II.

### OF THE ARTICLES.

Those particles called Articles are properly prepositions, commonly put before nouns, to show their gender, number, and case.

These articles are definite or indefinite.

#### OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The definite article marks the gender, number, and case of the nouns which it precedes.

The English tongue has but one definite article, namely, *the*, which serves for both numbers and genders.

The Portuguese has two, viz., *o* for the masculine, and *a* for the feminine.

The definite article has five cases, the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative; because the vocative in the nouns is designed and preceded merely by the interjection *oh*.

#### THE DECLENSION OF THE MASCULINE ARTICLE *O*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| Nom. *o*, the | N. *os*, the |
| Gen. *do*, of the | G. *dos*, of the |
| Dat. *ao*, to the | D. *aos*, to the |
| Acc. *o*, the | A. *os*, the |
| Abl. *do*, from | A. *dos*, from the |
| „ *pelo*, by the | „ *pelos*, by the. |

*Pelo*, *pela*, &c., is the contraction of *por o* or *por a*, &c.

THE DECLENSION OF THE FEMININE ARTICLE *A*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| Nom. *a*, the | N. *as*, the |
| Gen. *da*, of the | G. *das*, of the |
| Dat. *á*, to the | D. *ás*, to the |
| Acc. *a*, the | A. *as*, the |
| Abl. *da*, from the. | A. *das*, from the. |

Observe, that the Portuguese have an article for each gender, both in the singular and the plural.

OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

$$\text{A} \begin{cases} \text{m., } um \\ \text{f., } uma \end{cases}$$

The indefinite article is declinable in the same way as the definite article: examples, a house, *uma casa;* of a horse, *de um cavallo;* by a road, *por uma estrada*, &c.

As shown above, the different cases are governed by the respective prepositions—viz., of, *de;* to, *a;* from, *de;* and by, *por.*

There are many other prepositions of which we shall speak in the course of this book.

The preposition *de* may also be put before infinitives, and then it signifies *to;* as *é tempo de fallar, de dormir, de lêr*, &c., it is time to speak, to sleep, to read, &c.

When the verb is in the infinitive mood, and serves as nominative to the following verb, put the definite article *o* before it; as *o comer e o dormir são as coisas mais necessarias n'esta vida*, eating and sleeping are the greatest necessaries of life.

When the proposition *in* (*em*) is followed by the article *the* (*o*) or another word beginning by a vowel, we must render it in Portuguese by *no*, or *nos*, for the masculine; and by *na*, or *nas*, for the feminine: examples, in the garden, *no jardim;* in the street, *na rua;*

in thy book, *no teu livro ;* in his bed, *na sua cama*, &c. Note that *no* stands for *em o ; nas* for *em as*, &c.

When after the preposition *with*, which in Portuguese is expressed by *com*, we find the article *the*, or a pronoun possessive, as *with the*, *with my*, &c., we must say, *com o*, *com a*, *com os*, *com as :* examples, with the prince, *com o principe ;* with the sword, *com a espada ;* with the eyes, *com os olhos ;* with my books, *com os meus livros*, &c.

When the preposition *with* is followed by a pronoun possessive, and this by a noun of quality or kindred, as *with your majesty*, *with your highness*, *with your excellency*, *with his brother*, &c., *with* must then be rendered by the Portuguese *com*, as *com vossa majestade*, *com vossa alteza*, *com seu irmão*, without using the article.

Observe, that sometimes the dative and accusative of the indefinite article are not expressed in English, particularly before pronouns personal and proper names: examples, *convêm-nos*, it behoves us ; *Antonio matou a Pedro*, Anthony killed Peter.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### OF THE NOUNS.

The Portuguese nouns have various terminations, as will appear hereafter.

They have but two genders, the masculine and feminine.

The Portuguese nouns have no variation of cases, like the Latin; the article only distinguishes the case.

OF NOUNS ENDING IN *A*; AND OF THEIR DECLENSION.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| N. *a rainha*, the queen | N. *as rainhas*, the queens |
| G. *da rainha*, of the queen | G. *das rainhas*, of the queens |
| D. *á rainha*, to the queen | D. *ás rainhas*, to the queens |
| A. *a rainha*, the queen | A. *as rainhas*, the queens |
| V. *oh rainha*, O queen | V. *oh rainhas*, O queens |
| A. *da* ou *pela rainha*, from *or* by the queen. | A. *das* ou *pelas rainhas*, from *or* by the queens. |

We have already observed that the Portuguese nouns have no variation of cases: therefore, there is no occasion to display more examples of their declensions, as it is only necessary to change the article according to their gender.

OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS ENDING IN *A*.

Nouns ending in *a* are generally of the feminine gender; as *rosa*, rose; *janella*, window, &c. Except *dia*, day; *planeta*, planet; and other nouns ending in *a*, belonging to a man; as *mariola*, rascal; *jesuita*, Jesuit: those derived from the Greek are likewise masculine; as *dogma*, *epigramma*, *clima*; except scientific names, as *mathematica*, *theologia*, &c.

Except also from this general rule some nouns that have the accent upon the last syllable; as *alvará*, a charter, or a prince's letters patent; *Pará*, one of the captainships of the Brazilian empire.

Observe, that the plural of nouns ending in *a* is formed by adding the letter *s* to the singular; as likewise the plural of all nouns that terminate in vowels.

Observe also, that nouns ending in *ãa* are of the feminine gender, and form their plural like those ending in *a*.*

* *ãa* is now scarcely used; *ã* is substituted instead.

### OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS ENDING IN *E*.

Nouns ending in *e* are generally of the masculine gender; as *dente*, tooth; *valle*, valley, &c.

The exceptions are *fé*, faith; *fonte*, fountain; *chave*, key; *torre*, tower; *ave*, bird; *carne*, flesh or meat; *gente*, people; *morte*, death; *neve*, snow; *noite*, night; *ponte*, bridge; *peste*, plague; *parte*, part; *serpente*, serpent; *lebre*, hare.

Except also all names of virtues, vices, faculties, and those expressive of the passions of the mind; as *virtude*, virtue; *santidade*, holiness; *bondade*, goodness; *vaidade*, vanity; *ociosidade*, idleness, &c.

Thirdly, *idade*, age; *velhice*, old age; *rusticidade*, rusticity; *capacidade*, capacity; *felicidade*, happiness; *sorte*, lot; *arte*, art; *arvore*, tree; *fertilidade*,* fertility; *sêde*, thirst; *sebe*, a hedge; *couve*, cabbage; *herdade*, farm; *chaminé*, chimney; *parede*, wall; *saude*, health; *rede*, net; *maré*, tide; *febre*, fever; *galé*, galley, &c.

### OF THE GENDER OF NOUNS ENDING IN *I*.

Nouns ending in *i* are masculine; as *extasi*, a rapture; *nebri*, a hawk, &c., and also those ending in *ei*, as *réi*, king; and in *ai*, as *pai*, father; and in *oi*, as in *boi*, ox, &c. Except *lei*, law; *mãi*, mother, which are feminine.

### OF NOUNS ENDING IN *O*.

Nouns ending in *o* are of the masculine gender; as *livro*, book; *filho*, son; *braço*, arm; *vestido*, garment; *espelho*, looking-glass, &c. Except *náo*, a ship; *filhó*, a fritter or pancake; *eiró*, an eel.

* All words ending in *dade*, without exception, or all ending in *ade*, with the exceptions of *alvaiade*, whitelead, *frade*, friar, and *confrade*, fellow-friar, are feminine in Portuguese.

### OF NOUNS ENDING IN *U*.

All nouns ending in *u* are masculine; as *peru*, a turkey; *grou*, a crane.

### OF THE OTHER TERMINATIONS OF NOUNS, OR OF THOSE TERMINATING IN CONSONANTS.

1. All nouns ending in *al* are masculine; as *sinal*, a sign or token; *sal*, salt. Except *cal*, lime, which is feminine, and has no plural.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the letter *l* of the singular into *es*; as *sinaes* from *sinal*; *animaes* from *animal*.

2. Nouns ending in *ar* are of the masculine gender; as *ar*, air.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular; as *ares* from *ar*.

Some nouns ending in *as* in the plural are feminine, and have no singular; as *migas*, *exequias*, &c.

3. Nouns ending in *az* are of the masculine gender; as *rapaz*, a boy; except *paz*, peace. The plural is formed by the addition of *es* to the singular.

4. Nouns ending in *el* are masculine; as *annel*, a ring; *papel*, paper, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *is*; *anneis*, from *annel*; *papeis*, from *papel*.

5. Nouns ending in *em* are of the masculine gender; as *homem*, a man; *bem*, benefit, &c. Except *ordem*, order; *viagem*, a voyage; *virgem*, a virgin, &c.; but *selvagem*, a savage, is common.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns*; as *homens* from *homem*, &c.

6. Nouns ending in *er* are of the masculine gender;

as *poder*, power ; *prazer*, pleasure, &c. Except *colhér*, a spoon ; *mulher*, a woman.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular ; as *colhéres*, from *colhér*.

7. Nouns ending in *ez* are of the masculine gender ; as *freguez*, a customer ; *mez*, month ; *arnez*, *levez*, *revéz*, &c. Except *surdez*, deafness ; *torquez*, *vez*, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular, as *freguezes*, from *freguez ;* but *tez* has no plural.

8. Nouns ending in *il* are of the masculine gender ; as *funil*, a funnel ; *barril*, a barrel.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *s ;* as *funis*, from *funil*, &c. Except *aquatil facil*, &c., which change the *il* into *eis* in the plural ; as *faceis*, from *facil ; aquateis*, from *aquatil ;* and *pensil*, which has its plural *pensiles*.

9. Nouns ending in *im* are of the masculine gender ; as *espadim*, a little sword.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns ;* as *espadins*, from *espadidim*.

10. Nouns ending in *ir* or *yr* are of the masculine gender ; but *martir* or *martyr*, a martyr, is common.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

11. All nouns ending in *iz* are of the masculine gender ; as *apprendiz*, an apprentice ; *nariz*, nose ; *verniz*, varnish ; *matiz*, a shadowing in painting ; *chafariz*, *chamariz*, &c. Except *aboiz*, *perdiz*, *raiz*, *codorniz*, *matriz*, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular ; as *perdizes*, from *perdiz*.

12. Nouns ending in *ol* are of the masculine gender ; as *anzol*, a hook ; *sol*, the sun, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *es ;* as *anzoes* from *anzol*, &c.

13. Nouns ending in *om* are of the masculine gender ; as *som*, sound ; *dom*, gift, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns ;* as *sons* from *som*, &c.

14. Nouns ending in *or* are of the masculine gender ; as *amor*, love ; *temor*, fear, &c. Except *dôr*, pain ; *côr*, colour, &c.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular ; as *amôres* from *amôr*.

Nouns ending in *os* are of the masculine gender ; as *Deos*, God.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es ;* as *Deoses* from *Deos*.

15. Nouns ending in *oz* are of the masculine gender ; as *albernoz*, a Moorish coat ; *arrôz*, rice ; *algôz*, hangman, &c. Except *noz*, a walnut ; *voz*, voice ; *foz*, the mouth of a river.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

16. Nouns ending in *ul* or *um* are of the masculine gender ; as *sul*, the south ; *atum*, tunny-fish.

The plural of those ending in *ul*, according to the learned Bluteau, is formed by changing the *l* of the singular into *es ;* as *sues* for *sul ; azues* from *azul*, blue, &c. Except *consules* from *consul*, a consul.

The plural of those ending in *um* is formed by changing the *m* of the singular into *ns ;* as *atuns* from *atum*.

17. Nouns ending in *uz* are of the masculine gender ; as *arcabuz*, an arquebus.

The plural of these nouns is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

18. Nouns ending in *ão* are of the feminine gender ;

as *mão*, hand; *composição*, composition; *oração*, oration, &c. Except *pão*, bread; *anão*, dwarf; *oução*, handworm; *trovão*, thunder; *esquadrão*, squadron; *pião*, top; *borrão*, blot; *papelão*, cardboard; *chão*, ground; *quinhão*, share.*

There is no certain rule for the formation of the plural of the nouns ending in *ão;* because some change the *ão* of the singular into *ães*, as *Alemães*, from *Alemão*, German; *capitães*, from *capitão*, captain; *cães*, from *cão*, dog; *pães*, from *pão*, loaf, &c. Some change the *ão* of the singular into *ãos;* as *cidadãos*, from *cidadão*, citizen; *christãos*, from *christão*, Christian; *cortezãos*, from *cortezão*, courtier; *villãos*, from *villão*, villain, &c. Some change the *ão* of the singular into *ões;* as *esquadrões*, from *esquadrão*, squadron; *trovões*, from *trovão*, thunder; *conclusões*, from *conclusão*, conclusion; *orações*, from *oração*, oration; and generally all the Portuguese nouns that may be easily made English by changing their termination *ção* into the English termination *tion*—as *declinação*, declension or declination; *consideração*, consideration, &c.—are of the feminine gender.

19. All nouns signifying a male must be of the masculine gender; as *duque*, duke; *marquez*, marquis; *conde*, count; and those denoting a female are always feminine.

Two general rules may be formed from what has

* The quantity of Portuguese nouns ending in *ão* being very great, and the exceptions to the rule, that they are feminine, numbering a good half of those that conform to it, we will remark in regard to nouns of such termination, that:

1st. All augmentatives are masculine, without exception.

2nd. Verbal nouns are feminine, excepting the following (nearly all of which are real augmentatives): *apertão, arremessão, cevão, empurrão, empuxão, enchemão, encontrão, espião, tendão.*

3rd. Nouns not verbal are masculine, except *amarellidão, constellação, escravidão, lunação, mão, mansidão, multidão, sedição, solidão, tribulação, vereação, vermelhidão.*

been said concerning the formation of the plural of nouns, viz.:

I. That all nouns ending in any of the vowels have their plural formed by adding the letter *s* to the singular.

II. That the plural of nouns ending in *az*, *ez*, *iz*, *oz*, *uz*, is formed by adding *es* to the singular.

### OF AUGMENTATIVES.

The Portuguese have their augmentatives formed by the increase of one or two syllables, which they add to the end of their nouns, and which serve either to augment the signification of nouns, or to declare a thing contemptible : thus, from *homem*, a man, they form *homem-zarrão*, a great strong man ; from *tolo*, a fool, *toleirão*, a great fool, &c., and some others that may be learned by use. They have also their augmentatives for the feminine ; as *mulherona*, a great stout woman ; *toleirona*, &c.*

There are a great many nouns that appear, by their termination, to be augmentatives, though they are not ; as, *forão*, a ferret ; *atafona*, an ass or a horse-mill, &c.

### OF DIMINUTIVES.

The diminutives lessen the signification of their primitives.

The diminutives in the Portuguese language are always formed by changing the last vowel of the primitives into *inho ;* but they denote either smallness of things, or kindness and flattery : as *bichinho*, a little worm, from *bicho*, a worm ; *coitadinho*, from *coitado*, a poor little man ; *bonitinho*, a little pretty person or thing, from *bonito*, pretty.

* It is a peculiarity of the Portuguese language that augmentatives in *ão* are also formed in it sometimes, as well as in *ona*, from feminine primitives, and that the first then assume the masculine gender ; so from *espada*, a sword, is made *espadão*, a great sword ; from *mulher*, *mulherão ;* from *canastra*, *canastrão*, &c.

Sometimes they are formed by adding *zinho* to the primitives; as *cãozinho*, a little dog, from *cão*, a dog; *irmãozinho*, dear little brother, from *irmão*, &c.*

The diminutives that serve for the feminine have their termination in *inha*, or *zinha;* as *mãozinha*, a little hand, from *mão*, a hand; *cabecinha*, a little head, from *cabeça*, a head. It may be seen, from the last example, that the diminutives serving for the feminine and ending in *inha*, are formed by changing the last syllable *a* of the primitive into *inha*.

Observe that many nouns appear to be diminutives without being so; as *moinho*, a mill; *espinha*, a fish-bone.

Note: the diminutives in Portuguese convey sometimes a bad meaning, and denote contempt.

---

## OF ADJECTIVES.

All adjectives ending in *o* make their feminine by changing the *o* into *a;* as *douta*, from *douto*, learned; but *mao*, bad, make *má* in the feminine.

Those which end in *ão* have their feminine in *ã;* as, *sã*, from *são*, healthy; *louçã*, from *loução*, brisk, gay, beautiful; *meã*, from *meão*, middling, ordinary.

Those ending in *e* are common to both genders; as *forte*, strong, &c.

* No language has so many diminutives of different degrees, especially in its familiar style, as the Portuguese: thus, for instance, the adjective *pequeno*, small, is gradually diminished by being turned into *pequenote*, *pequenete*, *pequenito*, *pequenino*, *pequenicho*, &c., and *cordeiro*, a lamb, into *cordeirote*, *cordeirete*, *cordeirito*, *cordeirinho*; the same is done with other substantives and adjectives: this for the masculine. For the feminine the nal *o* is changed into *a*.

Those which end in *m* make their feminine by adding an *a* to the masculine; as *uma*, from *um*, one; *alguma*, from *algum*, some, &c.: and sometimes by changing the *m* into *a*; as *boa* from *bom*, good.

Those ending in *u* make their feminine by adding an *a* to the masculine; as *nua*, from *nu*, naked; *crua*, from *cru*, raw.

Those ending in *ez* are common to both genders; as *cortez*, civil, kind; *capaz*, capable, &c.: except some which make the feminine by adding *a* to the masculine; as *Franceza*, from *Francez*, French; *Portugueza*, from *Portuguez*, Portuguese.

*Espanhol*, Spanish, makes *Espanhola* in the feminine; but generally those which end in *l* are common to both genders; as *affavel*, affable; *cruel*, cruel, &c.

### OF THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives is the way of increasing their signification by certain degrees, which are three, viz., the positive, comparative, and superlative.

The positive lays down the natural signification of the adjective; as *nobre*, noble; *grande*, great.

The comparative raises it to a higher degree, by comparing it with the positive, which in Portuguese is performed by the adverbs *mais*, more; *menos*, less: as, *mais nobre*, more noble; *menos bella*, less handsome.

The following four comparatives constitute exceptions:—

*Maior*, greater.
*Menor*, less.
*Peior*, worse.
*Melhor*, better.

Observe, that there can be no comparison made with-

out the word *than;* and that this word is expressed in Portuguese by *que*, or *do que*. Ex. *Mais claro que o sol*, clearer than the sun; *mais branco que a neve*, more white than the snow. The particle *que* is sometimes preceded by the word *do*. Ex. *Isto é mais do que eu lhe disse*, this is more than I told him; *é mais prudente do que parece*, he is more wise than it appears.

N.B. The comparatives *superior*, *inferior*, and some others, do not require *que* before the second term, but the dative of the articles,* viz., *a*, *á*, *ás*, *ao*, *aos*. Ex. *O outro é superior a este*, the other is superior to this.

When the Portuguese have a mind to heighten their comparisons they make use of *muito mais*, or *muito menos*, a great deal or much less. Ex. *Cæsar é muito mais estimado que Pompeio*, Cæsar is much more esteemed than Pompey; *Pompeio foi muito menos feliz que Cæsar*, Pompey was much less happy than Cæsar.

### OF THE SUPERLATIVE ABLOLUTE.

The Portuguese superlative absolute is formed from the positive by changing the last letter into *issimo* for the masculine, and into *issima*, for the feminine; thus, from *bello* is formed *bellissimo* and *bellissima*, most handsome.

Observe that some superlatives absolute are differently formed: as, *frigidissimo*, from *frio*, cold; *amicissimo*, from *amigo*, friend; *antiquissimo*, from *antigo*, ancient; *capacissimo*, from *capaz*†, capable; *nobilissimo*, from *nobre*, noble; *acerbissimo*, from *acerbo*, sharp, or acerb; *riquissimo*, from *rico*, rich; *fertilissimo*, from *fertil*, fertile;

* It would be more intelligible to say, that these require a dative with its preposition *a*.

† Adjectives in *az* generally change the *z* into *cissimo* in their superlative.

*bonissimo*, from *bom*, good ; *fidelissimo*, from *fiel*, faithful ; *sacratissimo*, from *sagrado*, sacred, &c.

*The most* is expressed also in Portuguese by *o mais* and *a mais ;* as, the most fair, or fairest, *o mais bello*, *a mais bella.* But there are some adjectives which do not admit of *muito*, very, *o mais*, or *a mais ;* as *morto*, *desterrado*, &c.

Observe, that by changing the last letter of the superlatives into *amente*, superlative adverbs are composed ; as from *doutissimo*, learned ; *doutissimamente*, most learnedly, &c. But the positive adverbs are formed by adding *mente* to the feminine of the positive ; as *doutamente*, learnedly, from *douta*, the feminine of *douto ; prudentemente*, prudently, from *prudente*, prudent.

## OF NUMERAL NOUNS.

### AND FIRST OF CARDINAL.

The cardinal nouns are such as express the number of things ; as,

*Um*, *Uma*, one.
*Dous*, *Duas*, two.
*Tres*, three.
*Quatro*, four.
*Cinco*, five.
*Seis*, six.
*Sete*, seven.
*Oito*, eight.
*Nove*, nine.
*Dez*, ten.
*Onze*, eleven.
*Doze*, twelve.
*Treze*, thirteen.
*Quatorze*, fourteen.
*Quinze*, fifteen.

*Dezaseiz*, sixteen.
*Dezasete*, seventeen.
*Dezoito*, eighteen.
*Dezanove*, nineteen.
*Vinte*, twenty.
*Vinte e um*, twenty-one.
*Vinte e dois*, twenty-two.
*Vinte e tres*, &c., twenty-three, &c.
*Trinta*, thirty.
*Quarenta*, forty.
*Cincoenta*, fifty,
*Sessenta*, sixty.
*Setenta*, seventy.
*Oitenta*, eighty.
*Noventa*, ninety.
*Cento*, *Cem*, a hundred.
*Duzentos*, *duzentas*, two hundred.
*Trezentos*, *trezentas*, three hundred.
*Quatrocentos*, four hundred.
*Quinhentos* five hundred.
*Seiscentos*, six hundred.
*Mil*, a thousand.
*Dous mil*, two thousand.
*Milhão*, or *conto*, a million.
*Uma dezena*, half a score.
*Uma duzia*, a dozen.
*Uma vintena*, a score.
*Duas vintenas*, two score.
*Tres vintenas*, three score.

Observe, that all the cardinals that are adjective nouns are not declined, being of the common gender, except *um*, *uma*, one; *dois*, *duas*, two; and those composed of *cento*, a hundred; as *duzentos*, two hundred; *quatro*

*centos*, *quatro centas*, four hundred, &c.; and when the feminine *uma* is preceded by *a*, and followed by *a outra*, then *a uma* signifies *first*, and *a outra*, *secondly*.

The plural *uns*, *umas*, is taken sometimes instead of *alguns*, *algumas*, signifying some; as, *uns réis*,* some *réis*; *umas maçãs*, some apples.

N.B. *Cento* loses *to* before a noun, either masculine or feminine, and the *n* is changed into *m*; therefore you must say, *cem soldados*, not *cento soldados*. It only retains *to* and *n* when it is followed by another number, as *cento e um*, &c., a hundred and one, &c., and when it is a substantive.

N.B. Sometimes *cento* is made a substantive; as *um cento de castanhas*, one hundred of chestnuts: likewise all the cardinal numbers, when preceded by an article, or by another noun of number, as *o cinco de páos*, the five of clubs; *um sete*, a seven.

The cardinal number is used in Portuguese instead of the ordinal when it expresses the day of the month, or the date of any act; as, *elle chegou a quatro de Maio*, he arrived the fourth day of May. The first day of the month is, however, an exception to this rule; as, *o primeiro de Maio*, the first of May.

### OF ORDINAL NOUNS.

Ordinal nouns are such as express the order of things; as,

*Primeiro*, *primeira*, first.
*Segundo*, *segunda*, second.
*Terceiro*, *terceira*, third.
*Quarto*, fourth.
*Quinto*, fifth.
*Sexto*, sixth.

* Derived from *real*, a Portuguese coin.

*Setimo*, seventh.
*Oitavo*, eighth.
*Nono*, ninth.
*Decimo*, tenth.
*Undecimo*, eleventh.
*Duodecimo*, twelfth.
*Decimo-tercio*, thirteenth.
*Decimo-quarto*, fourteenth.
*Decimo-quinto*, fifteenth.
*Decimo-sexto*, sixteenth.
*Decimo-setimo*, seventeenth.
*Decimo-oitavo*, eighteenth.
*Decimo-nono*, nineteenth.
*Vigesimo*, twentieth.
*Vigesimo-primeiro*, one-and-twentieth.
*Trigesimo*, thirtieth.
*Quadragesimo*, fortieth.
*Quinquagesimo*, fiftieth.
*Sexagesimo*, sixtieth.
*Septuagesimo*, seventieth.
*Octagesimo*, eightieth.
*Nonagesimo*, ninetieth.
*Centesimo*, the hundredth.
*Millesimo*, the thousandth.
*Ultimo*, the last.

The proportionable numbers are, *simples*, *duplo* or *duplicado*, *triplo* or *triplicado*, *quadruplo*, *quintuplo*, *centuplo*; a single, double, threefold, fourfold, fivefold, a hundredfold.

The distributive nouns are *um a um*, one by one; *dois a dois*, two by two.

In English all ordinal numbers may be formed into adverbs; but in Portuguese they have only *primeiramente*,

and *secundariamente*, first, secondly; and to express thirdly, fourthly, &c., they say, *em terceiro lugar*, *em quarto lugar*, in the third place, in the fourth place.

### A METHOD (FOR THOSE WHO UNDERSTAND FRENCH) TO LEARN A GREAT MANY PORTUGUESE WORDS IN A SHORT TIME.

We must observe, that the French syllable *cha* is generally expressed in Portuguese by *ca*, rejecting the *h*. Ex. *Charbon*, *charité*, *chasteté*, *chapelle*, *chapitre*, &c., the Portuguese say, *carvão*, *caridade*, *castidade*, *capella*, *capitulo*, &c. Observe also the following rules :—

French words ending in *ance*, or *ence*, as *constance*, *vigilance*, *clémence*, *prudence*, &c., in Portuguese end in *ancia*, or *encia*; as *constancia*, *vigilancia*, *clemencia*, *prudencia*, &c.

*Agne* makes *anha*; montagne, *montanha*; campagne, *campanha*.

*Ie* makes *ia*; comédie, *comedia*. Here the accent is upon the *e*, and not upon the *i*, as in French; poésie, *poesia*.

*Oire* makes *oria*; gloire, *gloria*; victoire, *victoria*.

*Ure* makes *ura*; imposture, *impostura*; figure, *figura*.

*Ison* makes *são*; prison, *prisão*; raison, *ração*.

*On* makes *ão*; charbon, *carvão*; baron, *barão*.

*Ulier* makes *ular*; régulier, *regular*; particulier, *particular*.

### FRENCH TERMINATIONS ENDING IN PORTUGUESE IN *E*.

*Ant*, *ante*; vigilant, *vigilante*; amant, *amante*.

*Ent*, adjective, *ente*; prudent, *prudente*; diligent, *diligente*.

*Té* makes *dade*; liberalité, *liberalidade*.

FRENCH TERMINATIONS ENDING IN PORTUGUESE IN *VEL.*

*Able, vel*; louable, *louvavel*; aimable, *amavel.*

FRENCH TERMINATIONS ENDING IN PORTUGUESE IN *EZ.*

*Ais*, names of nations, *ez*; Français, *Francez*; Anglais, *Inglez.*

FRENCH TERMINATIONS ENDING IN PORTUGUESE IN *O.*

*Ain* and *ien*, names of nations, *ano*; Romain, *Romano*; Italien, *Italiano*; Napolitain, *Napolitano.*

*Aire, ario*; salaire, *salario*; téméraire, *temerario.*

*Eau, eo*; chapeau, *chapeo.*

*Ent*, substantive, *ento*; sacrement, *sacramento.*

*Eux, oso*; généreux, *generoso*; gracieux, *gracioso.*

*If, ivo*; actif, *activo*; passif, *passivo.*

*C, co*; Turc, *Turco.*

FRENCH TERMINATIONS ENDING IN PORTUGUESE IN *OR.*

*Eur, or*; terreur, *terror*; humeur, *humor*; chaleur, *calor.*

CHANGE OF TERMINATIONS OF THE VERBS AND PARTICIPLES.

*Er*, in the infinitive mood of the first conjugation, makes *ar*; aimer, *amar*; chanter, *cantar.*

*Ir* makes *ir*, in the infinitive mood; as, partir, *partir*; sentir, *sentir.*

*Oir* makes *er*, in the infinitive mood; as concevoir, *conceber.*

The participles in *é* make *ado*; aimé, *amado*; parlé, *fallado.*

The participles in *i* make *ido*; dormi, *dormido*; menti, *mentido.*

The participles in *u* make *do;* as, conçu, *concebido;* entendu, *entendido.*

There are a great many Portuguese words that have no manner of analogy with the French, which prevent these rules from being general.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF PRONOUNS.

THE pronouns are personal, conjunctive, mixed, positive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, or improper.

#### OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are *eu* and *nós* for the first person; they serve for the masculine and the feminine.

*Tu* and *vós* for the second; these serve also for the masculine and feminine.

*Elle* for the third person of the masculine gender, and *elles* in the plural.

*Ella* for the third person of the feminine gender, makes in the plural *ellas.*

The pronouns personal are declined with the prepositions *de*, *a*, and *por.*

#### THE DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*First Person.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| Nom. *Eu*, I | N. *nós*, we |
| Gen. *de mim*, of me | G. *de nós*, of us |
| Dat. *a mim*, or *me*, to me | D. *a nós*, or *nós*, us |
| Acc. *me*, me | A. *nos*, us |
| Abl. *de mim*, or *por mim*, from *or* by me. | A. *de nós*, or *por nós*, from *or* by us. |

*With me* is rendered by *commigo*, and sometimes they add the pronoun *mesmo* to it: *me* is expressed by *me* in the Portuguese; as, speak to me, *fallai-me*; tell me, *dizei-me*; send me, *mandai-me*; write to me, *escrevei-me*; he told me, *elle disse-me*, &c.

*With us* is rendered in Portuguese by *comnosco*.

*Us* is rendered by *nos*.* Example: tell us, *dizei-nos*; give us, *dai-nos*; show us, *mostrai-nos*; he told us, *elle disse-nos*, &c. In these examples *us* is not a personal pronoun, but conjunctive, as you will see hereafter.

*Second Person.*

| | SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *tu*, thou | N. | *vós*, ye *or* you |
| Gen. | *de ti*, of thee | G. | *de vós*, or *vos*, you |
| Dat. | *a ti*, or *te*, to thee | D. | *a vós*, or *vos*, to you |
| Acc. | *te*, thee | A. | *vos*, you |
| Abl. | *de ti*, or *por ti*, from *or* by thee. | A. | *de vós*, or *por vós*, from *or* by you. |

*With thee* is rendered by *comtigo*; and sometimes they add to it the pronoun *mesmo*. *You*, or *yourself*, after imperatives, is rendered by *vos*, and not *vós*; as, be you contented, *contentai-vos*; show yourself, *mostrai-vos*; hide yourselves, *escondei-vos*.

*Thee*, or *thyself*, is expressed after imperatives by *te*; as, *mostra te*, show thyself.

*With you* is rendered in Portuguese by *comvosco*.

* The pronouns *nós* and *nos* are pronounced, the first with the open *ó*, as its accent indicates; the second with the *o* mute. The *o*, therefore, is mute in the conjunctive pronouns. The *c* is equally mute in the same conjunctive pronouns: this it is necessary to remember.

*Third Person* (*for the Masculine*).

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *elle*, he *or* it | N. *elles*, they |
| Gen. | *d'elle*, of him *or* of it | G. *d'elles*, of them |
| Dat. | *a elle*, or *lhe*, to him, *or* to it | D. *a elles*, or *lhes*, to them |
| Acc. | *o*, him *or* it | A. *os*, them |
| Abl. | *d'elle*, or *por elle*, from *or* by him *or* it. | A. *d'elles*, or *por elles*, from *or* by them. |

The Portuguese have no particular pronoun, as the English *it*, for things that are inanimate.

The pronoun *him*, or *to him*, when joined to a verb, is always rendered in Portuguese by *lhe ;* and *them*, or *to them*, by *lhes*.

*With him* is rendered in Portuguese sometimes by *com elle*, and sometimes by *comsigo*, to which they add the pronoun *mesmo*.

*Third Person* (*Feminine*).

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *ella*, she *or* it | N. *ellas*, they |
| Gen. | *d'ella*, of her *or* of it | G. *d'ellas*, of them |
| Dat. | *a ella*, or *lhe* to her *or* to it | D. *a ellas*, or *lhes* to them |
| Acc. | *a*, her *or* it | A. *as*, them |
| Abl. | *d'ella*, or *por ella*, from *or* by her *or* it. | A. *d'ellas*, or *por ellas*, from *or* by them. |

The pronoun *her*, or *to her*, when joined to a verb, is always rendered in Portuguese by *lhe ;* and *them*, or *to them*, by *lhes :* as will be seen in the conjunctive pronouns.

*With her* is rendered in Portuguese by *com ella*, or *comsigo*.

### OF THE PRONOUN *SI*, HIMSELF OR ONESELF.

There is another personal pronoun that serves indifferently for the masculine and feminine: this is *si*, oneself. It has no nominative.

Gen. *de si*, of oneself, himself, *or* herself
Dat. *a si*, to oneself, &c.
Acc. *se*, oneself, &c.
Abl. *de si*, *por si*, from *or* by oneself.

It is joined with the pronoun *mesmo* or *mesma;* as *de* or *por si mesmo*, by himself; *por si mesma*, or *de si mesma*, by herself; *o homem não ama senão a si mesmo*, man loves himself only; *quem não é bom senão para si, não é bem que viva*, who cares for nobody but himself, does not deserve to live; *o vicio é abominavel por si mesmo*, vice is in itself hateful; *a terra de si*, or *de si mesma é fertil*, the earth is fruitful in itself.

Observe, that they join also the pronoun *mesmo* to personal pronouns, as the French do with their pronoun *même*, viz.:—

| | |
|---|---|
| *Eu mesmo*, myself | *nós mesmos*, ourselves |
| *Tu mesmo*, thyself | *vós mesmos*, yourselves. |
| *Elle mesmo*, himself | *elles mesmos*, } themselves |
| *Ella mesma*, herself | *ellas mesmas*, } |
| *o homem mesmo*, man himself. | *a mesma virtude*, virtue itself. |

1st. Observe, that *mesmo* with the article is also an adjective, signifying *the same;* thus, *o mesmo*, *a mesma*, *os mesmos*, *as mesmas*, the same, relating to some nouns expressed or understood.

2ndly. *Note*, also, that the adjective *outro*, other, is joined to the plural of the personal pronouns, *I* and *thou*: thus, *nós outros*, we; *vos outros*, you.

3rdly. *Comsigo* may be rendered in English (as we have said above) by *with him* and *with her;* and it may be rendered also by *with them* in the plural; and sometimes by *about him*, *about her*, or *about them.* Ex. *Elle* or *ella nunca traz dinheiro comsigo*, he *or* she never has money about him, *or* about her.

### OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns conjunctive are so called, because they always come immediately before or after the verb that governs them.

The conjunctive pronouns bear a great resemblance to the personal pronouns. The personal pronouns are:

*Eu*, I; *tu*, thou; *elle*, he; *nós*, we; *vós*, ye; *elles*, they.

There are seven pronouns conjunctive, viz, *me*, to me, *or* me; *te*, to thee, *or* thee; *se*, to himself, *or* himself, to herself, *or* herself; *lhe*, to him, *or* him, to her, *or* her; *nos*, to us, *or* us; *vos*, to you, *or* you; *lhes*, to them, *or* them.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Isto me agrada*, this pleases me; *é-me necessario*, I want.

*Deus te vê*, God sees thee.

*Ella se louva*, she praises herself.

*Eu lhe direi*, I will tell him, *or* I will tell her.

*Eu lhes prometti*, I promised them: as well for the masculine as the feminine.

The pronoun conjunctive, *lhe*, is always put after the verb, when it is in the imperative mood; as *dizei-lhe*, tell him; *cortai-lhe as azas*, cut his wings: but when the verb is in some other mood, it may be put either before or after it: as, *elle lhe cortou*, or *elle cortou-lhe a cabeça*, he

has cut off his head. The same observation applies to the other conjunctive pronouns.

The conjunctive pronoun, *se*, is sometimes followed by *me*, *lhe*, &c.; as *offerece-se-me*, it is offered to me; *representou-se-lhe*, it was represented to him, &c.

1st. *Note*, that the pronouns conjuctive are very often joined to a verb, preceded or followed by the verb *haver*. Ex. *Dar-lhe-hei tanta pancada*, or *eu lhe hei de dar tanta pancada, que*, &c., I will cudgel him so much that, &c.

2ndly. *Lhe* is sometimes rendered in English by *you*. Ex. *Que lhe parece aquillo?* What do you think of that? *Assente no que lhe digo*, be persuaded, *or* believe what I tell you.

### OF MIXED PRONOUNS.

There are some pronouns in Portuguese which are composed of the pronouns personal and conjunctive, and which therefore are called mixed.

These pronouns are formed by changing the letter *e* of the pronoun conjunctive into *o* for the masculine, and *a* for the feminine; thus, *it* to *me*, instead of *me o*, or *me a*, you must say, *m'o* or *m'a*. In like manner, instead of *lhe o*, or *lhe a*, you must say, *lh'o* or *lh'a*, &c., as you may observe in the following pronouns mixed, or rather contracted.

*m'o*, m., it *or* him to me — *t'o*, it *or* him to thee
*m'a*, f., it *or* her to me — *t'a*, it *or* her to thee
*m'os*, m. / *m'as*, f. } them to me — { *t'os*, m. / *t'as*, f. } them to thee
*lh'o*, m., it to him, *or* to her
*lh'a*, f., it to him, *or* to her
*lh'os*, m., them to him *or* to them
*lh'as*, f., them to her *or* to them

| | |
|---|---|
| *nol-o*, m.<br>*nol-a*, f. | it to us |
| *nol-os*, m. pl.<br>*nol-as*, f. pl. | them to us |
| *vol-o*, m.<br>*vol-a*, f. | it to you |
| *vol-os*, m. pl.<br>*vol-as*, f. pl. | them to you |

EXAMPLES.

*Para dar-lh'o*, to give it to him, *or* to her.
*Dai-m'o*, give it to me.
*Eu t'o darei*, I will give it you.
*Entrego-t'o*, I deliver it to you.
*Dize-lh'o*, you tell it him, *or* her.
*Entrega-lh'os*, deliver them to him, *or* to her.
*Elle nol-o disse*, he told us of it.
*Eu vol-os mandarei*, I will send them to you.

If the verbs are in the infinitive, the pronouns mixed may be put either before or after the verbs; as, *para dtzerm'o*, or *para m'o dizer*, to tell me it: but if the verbs are in the gerund, the pronouns mixed must be transposed; as, *dizendom'o*, and not *m'o dizendo*, in telling me it.

You must make use of these pronouns, both masculine and feminine, according to the gender of the thing named, sent or delivered, and not of the person to whom the thing is said, sent, given, &c.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Pronouns possessive, so called because they denote that the thing spoken of belongs to the person or thing they are connected with, are of two sorts, absolute and relative. See the remarks hereafter.

The English have no article in the nominative before

the pronouns possessive ; but the Portuguese have : as, *my*, *o meu*, masc., *a minha*, fem. Plural, *os meus*, masc. ; *as minhas*, fem.

The pronouns possessive in Portuguese are the following :—

Sing. *meu*, m.; *minha*, f.
Plur. *meus*, m.; *minhas*, f. } my

Sing. *teu*, m.; *tua*, f.
Plur. *teus*, m.; *tuas*, f. } thy

Sing. *seu*, m.
Plur. *seus*, m. } his, her, *or* its

Sing. *sua*, f.
Plur. *suas*, f. } his, her, *or* its

Sing. *nosso*, m.; *nossa*, f.
Plur. *nossas*, m.; *nossas*, f. } our

Sing. *vosso*, m.; *vossa*, f.
Plur. *vossos*, m.; *vossas*, f. } your

The pronouns possessive are declined with the definite article *o* for the masculine, and *a* for the feminine.

EXAMPLE.

SINGULAR.

Nom. *o meu livro*, my book
Gen. *do meu livro*, of my book
Dat. *ao meu livro*, to my book
Acc. *o meu livro*, my book
Abl. *do* or *pelo meu livro*, from *or* by my book

PLURAL.

Nom. *os meus livros*, my books
Gen. *dos meus livros*, of my books
Dat. *aos meus livros*, to my books
Abl. *dos* or *pelos meus livros*, from *or* by my books

Decline all the other masculines after the same manner, and their feminines by the article *a;* as, my house, *a minha casa;* of my house, *da minha casa*, &c.

*Note*, you must not use the definite article when the pronouns possessive precede nouns of quality, as well as those of kindred, but the indefinite article, *de*, *a*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

*Vossa magestade*, your majesty.
*De vossa magestade*, of your majesty, &c.
*Meu pai*, my father.
*De meu pai*, of my father, &c.

From the above examples it appears that nouns declined with the definite article have no article in the nominative, in the singular number.

*Seu* is sometimes used instead of *vosso* and *vossa*, in the polite way of speaking: thus, *tenho o seu livro*, I have your book; *fallei ao seu criado*, I spoke to your servant; *os seus olhos são formosos*, your eyes are handsome.

REMARKS UPON THE POSSESSIVE.

The pronouns possessive absolute always come before the noun they belong to. We have expressed them above.

To express in Portuguese *it is mine, it is thine*, &c., we must say *é meu, é teu*, &c.

The pronouns possessive absolute do not agree in gender with the noun of the possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed: as, *a mãi ama a seu filho*, the mother loves her son; *o pai ama a sua filha*, the father loves his daughter. Thus the pronoun masculine *seu*, in Portuguese, is in this case rendered by *her* in English, and the feminine *sua* by *his.*

The same observation is to be made upon the possessives relative, according to the gender of the noun that is understood: we say of a hat (for instance) belonging to a lady, *é o seu*, it is hers; because the noun understood, viz., *chapéo*, hat is of the masculine gender.

We have already said that *seu* and *sua* are sometimes rendered into English by *your* when they are absolute: they are also sometimes rendered into English by *yours*, when they are pronouns relative, speaking politely of anything belonging to a gentleman or lady, *é o seu*, or *é a sua*, it is yours; but if the gentleman or lady is not present, or if they are not directly spoken to, though present, then the pronouns, *seu* and *sua* must be rendered into English by *his* or *hers*.

*Note*, that the pronouns possessive absolute, in Portuguese, agree also in number with the noun of the thing possessed; hence we say, *a sua historia*, its history, speaking of a kingdom, province, &c.; or, his history, speaking of any history composed by a man; or, her history, speaking of that written by a woman; or, their history, speaking of that written by several hands or by several people. From this example, it will be seen that the Portuguese have no particular pronoun possessive for things that are inanimate, corresponding with the English pronoun *its*. Hence, finally, it follows that, when the Portuguese possessives *seu* and *sua* are relative, they are rendered into English by *his* or *hers*, or *theirs*, according to the gender and number of the noun of the possessor that is understood.

The possessives absolute are left out when they are preceded by a verb, or by a pronoun conjunctive, which sufficiently denote whose thing it is they speak of; the article alone being sufficient; as, *devo-lhe a vida*, I owe my life to him, *or* to her, *or* to it.

When the pronouns possessive absolute are before nouns of different genders in the same sentence, and with which they are grammatically construed, they ought to be repeated, as, *seu pai e sua mãi*, his father and mother; not *seu pai e mãi.*

The pronoun possessive absolute is also used as in the following case, when we use the possessive relative; a friend of mine, *um dos meus amigos.*

The possessives *minha*, *tua*, *sua*, *nossa*, *vossa*, may be also relative, but with a different meaning. Examples: *Levarei a minha avante*, I will insist upon it, I will obtain it; *elle levará a sua avante*, he will insist upon it, he will do it; *levai a vossa avante*, go on with your resolution; *fazer das suas* to play tricks, to dodge.

*Os meus*, *os seus*, &c., signifying my relations or my friends, thy relations, or thy friends: as, *os seus não o querem*, his parents or relations do not like him; *deixa-o ir com os seus*, let him go with his people, his countrymen, &c.

When the pronoun possessive is accompanied by a pronoun demonstrative, we do not put the article in the nominative; we do not say, *o este meu livro*, but *este meu livro*, this book of mine. But in all other cases the indefinite article is used; as, *d'este*, or *d'este vosso livro*, &c.

### OF THE PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

They are called pronouns demonstrative, because they serve to point out or demonstrate any thing or person; as, this book, *este livro;* that man, *aquelle homem.*

There are three principal demonstratives, viz., *este*, this; *esse*, that; *aquelle*, that: *este* shows the thing or person that is just near or by us; *esse* shows the thing

that is a little further, or near the person; and *aquelle* shows what is very distant from the person who speaks, or is spoken of, and is expressed in English by *that there* or *yonder*. *Esse*, *essa*, are used in writing to any person to express the place or town wherein he dwells; as, *tenho fallado n'essa cidade com muitos amigos*, I have spoken in your city with many friends.

These pronouns are declined thus :—

| | | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | Nom. | *este* | *esta* | *isto* | this |
| | Gen. | *d'este* | *d'esta* | *d'isto* | of this |
| | Dat. | *a este* | *a esta* | *a isto* | to this |
| | Acc. | *este* | *esta* | *isto* | this |
| | Abl. | *d'este* | *d'esta* | *d'isto* | from this |
| Plur. | Nom. | *estes* | *estas* | No Neuter | these |
| | Gen. | *d'estes* | *d'estas* | | of these |
| | Dat. | *a estes* | *a estas* | | to these |
| | Acc. | *estes* | *estas* | | these |
| | Abl. | *d'estes* | *d'estas* | | from these |

| | | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | Nom. | *esse* | *essa* | *isso* | that *or* it |
| | Gen. | *d'esse* | *d'essa* | *d'isso* | of that, &c. |
| | Dat. | *a esse* | *a essa* | *a isso* | to that |
| | Acc. | *esse* | *essa* | *isso* | that |
| | Abl. | *d'esse* | *d'essa* | *d'isso* | from that |
| Plur. | Nom. | *esses* | *essas* | No Neuter | those |
| | Gen. | *d'esses* | *d'essas* | | of those |
| | Dat. | *a esses* | *a essas* | | to those |
| | Acc. | *esses* | *essas* | | those |
| | Abl. | *d'esses* | *d'essas* | | from those |

| | | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | Nom. | *aquelle* | *aquella* | *aquillo* | that |
| | Gen. | *d'aquelle* | *d'aquella* | *d'aquillo* | of that |
| | Dat. | *á quelle* | *á quella* | *á quillo* | to that |
| | Acc. | *aquelle* | *aquella* | *aquillo* | that |
| | Abl. | *d'aquelle* | *d'aquella* | *d'aquillo* | from that |
| Plur. | Nom. | *aquelles* | *aquellas* | No Neuter | those |
| | Gen. | *d'aquelles* | *d'aquellas* | | of those |
| | Dat. | *á quelles* | *á quellas* | | to those |
| | Acc. | *aquelles* | *aquellas* | | those |
| | Abl. | *d'aquelles* | *d'aquellas* | | from those |

There is an elision of the vowel of the preposition *de* in the genitive and ablative of the pronouns *este* and *esse*, both in the singular and plural; as *d'este*, *d'estas*, &c., instead of *de este*, *de estas;* so also in the neuter, as *d'isso*, *d'isto*, instead of *de isso*, *de isto*. The same observation applies to the pronoun *aquelle*, wherein you will see another elision besides in the dative case.

Both Portuguese and Spaniards have demonstratives of the neuter gender, though they do not agree with the substantives, as in Latin; they do not say *isto homem*, but *este homem*, this man. But the word *cousa*, or *coisa*, thing, is always understood, though the neuter demonstrative does not agree with it; so that it is indifferently said, *isto* or *esta coisa*, this thing; *isso* or *essa coisa*, that thing, &c. Examples: *isso é* or *essa é a coisa de que nós estamos fallando*, that is the thing we are speaking of; *aquillo é* or *aquella é a coisa que vós deveis fazer*, that is the thing you must do, &c.

When the preposition *em*, in, comes before the pronouns demonstrative, the vowel is cut off, and the consonant *m* is changed into *n;* thus, instead of *em este*, *em esta*, *em isto*, *em isso*, *em aquillo*, they write and pronounce, *n'este*, *n'esta*, *n'isto*, *n'isso*, &c., in this, in that, &c.

The words *outro, outra*, are often joined to the pronouns demonstrative, cutting off the final *e;* as *est'outro, ess'outro, aquell'outro.* Examples: *est'outro homem*, this other man; *est'outra molher*, this other woman; *ess'outro homem*, that other man.

The pronoun *mesmo*, the same, is also frequently joined to the demonstrative; as, *este mesmo homem*, this very same man; *aquillo mesmo*, that very same thing. *Aqui, ali*, and *lá* are sometimes added to the demonstrative, or to the noun that comes after it, in order to specify and particularise it still more; as, *este homem aqui*, this man here; *aquella mulher lá*, that woman there; *aqui*, denoting a near or present object; and *lá*, a distant and absent one.

The pronouns *aquelle, aquella, aquelles, aquellas*, when they relate to persons, and are followed by the relative *que*, are rendered into English by *he who* or *he that, she who* or *that, they who* or *that:* as, *aquelle que ama a virtude é feliz*, he who loves virtue is happy; *aquelles que desprezão a sciencia não conhecem o valor d'ella*, they who despise learning know not the value of it. Observe, that when *aquelle, aquella*, &c., are preceded by *este, esta*, &c., then *este* signifies the last thing or person spoken of, and *aquelle*, &c., the first; as, *Carlos foi grande, Frederico ambicioso, este valente, aquelle poderoso:* Charles was great, Frederic ambitious, the first powerful, the last courageous.

The pronoun possessive absolute *his, her, their*, construed in English with a noun followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *that* before a verb, is rendered in Portuguese by the genitive of the pronouns *aquelle, aquella, aquelles*, followed by *que*, and the possessive is left out; as, all men blame his manners who often says that which himself does not think, *todo o mundo censura o procedimento d'aquelle que tem por costume dizer o que não tem*

*no pensamento;* Providence does not prosper the labours of those that slight their best friends, *a Providencia não abençôa o trabalho d'aquelles que desprezão os seus melhores amigos.*

The English pronoun *such*, followed by *as* or *that* (but not governed by the verb substantive *to be*), is also rendered into Portuguese by *aquelle que*, or *aquelles que;* as, such as do not love virtue do not know it, *aquelle* or *aquelles que não amão a virtude não a conhecem.*

The pronouns *isso, isto, aquillo,* before *que*, are rendered into English by *what;* as, *elle diz aquillo que sabe*, he says what he knows.

*Aquelle* is also used to show contempt; as, *que quer aquelle homem?* What does that man desire?

### OF THE PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

The pronouns interrogative serve to ask questions, and are as follows: who, what, which, *quem, que, qual.*

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quem é?* | Who is it? |
| *Quem vos disse isso?* | Who told you so? |
| *Que quereis?* | What will you have? |
| *Com que se sustenta?* | What do you maintain yourself with? |
| *Que estais fazendo?* | What are you doing? |
| *De que se faz isto?* | From what is this done? |
| *Que livro é este?* | What book is this? |
| *Que negocios tendes?* | What affairs have you? |
| *Que casa é?* | What house is it? |
| *De qual fallais vós?* | Which do you speak of? |
| *Qual d'elles?* | Which of them? |
| *Quem* or *qual dos dois?* | Which of the two? |

These pronouns are thus declined :—

*Masculine and Feminine.*

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *quem* | who | N. | *que* | what |
| Gen. | *de quem* | of whom | G. | *de que* | of what |
| Dat. | *a quem* | to whom | D. | *a que* | to what |
| Acc. | *quem* | whom | A. | *que* | what |
| Abl. | *de quem* | from whom | A. | *de que* | from what |
| ,, | *por quem* | by whom | ,, | *pelo que* | by what. |

*Qual* is used in speaking both of persons and things, and is declined thus :—

*Masculine and Feminine.*

SINGULAR.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *qual* | which *or* what |
| Gen. | *de qual* | of which *or* what |
| Dat. | *a qual* | to which *or* what |
| Acc. | *qual* | which *or* what |
| Abl. | *de qual* | from which *or* what |
| ,, | *por qual* | by which *or* what. |

*Masculine and Feminine.*

PLURAL.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *quaes* | which *or* what |
| Gen. | *de quaes* | of which *or* what |
| Dat. | *a quaes* | to which *or* what |
| Acc. | *quaes* | which *or* what |
| Abl. | *de quaes* | from which *or* what |

Observe, that when the word *quer* is added to *quem*, or *qual*, it quite alters the meaning ; *quemquer* signifying whoever, or any person, and *qualquer*, any one, whether man, woman, or thing ; and sometimes they add the particle *que* to them, as *quemquer que*, &c.

### OF THE PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

Pronouns relative are those which show the relation or reference which a noun has to what follows it. They are the following: *qual*, which; *que*, that *or* which; *cujo*, whose; *quem*, who.

*Qual*, in a sense of comparison, is followed by *tal*, and then *qual* is rendered in English by *as*, and *tal* by *of*.

N.B. When *qual* is only a relative, it is declined with the definite articles *o* or *a*.

The pronoun *que* may be relative both to persons and things, and is common to all numbers, genders, and cases; as, *o livro que*, the book which; *os livros que*, the books which; *a carta que*, the letter which; *as cartas que*, the letters which; *o mestre que ensina*, the master who teaches; *a mulher que tenho*, the wife that I have; *o homem que eu amo*, the man whom I love. It is thus declined:—

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *que* | which *or* who |
| Gen. | *de que* | of which *or* of whom |
| Dat. | *a que* | to which or to whom |
| Acc. | *que* | which or whom |
| Abl. | *de que* | from which *or* from whom. |

*Que* is sometimes a conjunction; as, *creio que irei*, I believe that I shall go. See the *Syntax*.

The relative *quem*, who, is only relative to persons; but in the nominative case of the singular is rendered into English by *he who* or *who;* as *quem falla deve considerar*, &c., he who speaks ought to consider, &c.; *eu não sei quem*, I know not who.

Observe, that *quem* is common to all numbers, genders, and cases; but it has no nominative in the plural.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

*Quem* is declined thus :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Nom. | *quem* | he who, *or* she who, *or* whoever |
| Gen. | *de quem* | of whom |
| Dat. | *a quem* | to whom |
| Acc. | *quem* | whom |
| Abl. | *de quem* | from whom |
| ,, | *por quem* | by whom. |

*Quem* sometimes serves for exclamation; as, *quem me déra estar em casa!* how fain would I be at home!

*Cujo, cuja,* are declined thus :—

| | | MASC. | FEM. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | Nom. | *cujo* | *cuja* | whose |
| | Gen. | *de cujo* | *de cuja* | of whose |
| | Dat. | *a cujo* | *a cuja* | to whose |
| | Acc. | *cujo* | *cuja* | whose |
| | Abl. | *de cujo* | *de cuja* | from whose. |

The plural is formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *cujos, cujas,* whose, &c.

Observe that *cujo* must be followed by the noun or term to which it refers, and with which it agrees in gender, number, and case: as, *a pessôa cuja reputação é grande,* the person whose reputation is great; *o céo cujo soccorro nunca falta,* heaven, whose assistance never fails; *cuja bella cara,* whose fair visage; *cujas bellezas,* whose beauties; *a cujo pai,* to whose father; *de cujos irmãos tenho recebido,* from whose brothers I have received. Observe also that *cujo* is not to be repeated, though the terms to which it refers be of different number; as, *cuja valia e obras,* whose valour and deeds.

Observe, that *o, a, os, as, ló, lá,* &c., are also relative pronouns when joined to verbs. See the *Syntax,* chap. iv.

### OF THE IMPROPER PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *improper*, because indeed they are not properly pronouns, although they bear a great resemblance to pronouns as well as to adjectives. They are the following:—

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um* | one |
| *Alguem* | somebody |
| *Algum* | some |
| *Ninguem* | nobody |
| *Nenhum* | none |
| *Cadaum* | every one, each |
| *Cada* | every |
| *Outro, outra* | other |
| *Outrem* | another person. |

*Qualquer*, any one; whether man, or woman, or thing.

*Qualquer dos dois*, either of the two, *or* whichsoever of the two.

*Quemquer*, whoever, *or* any person.

*Todo*, all, *or* every. *Tal*, such, &c.

*Um* has two terminations for the two genders, viz., *um*, *uma*; and in the plural it makes *uns*, *umas*. It is declinable.

*Alguem* has only one termination, and is declinable.

*Algum* has two terminations, viz., *algum*, *alguma*; and in the plural, *alguns*, *algumas*. It is declinable.

*Ninguem* has only one termination and is declinable; *ninguem o crê*, nobody believes it.

*Nenhum* has two terminations, viz., *nenhum*, *nenhuma*, and in the plural, *nenhuns*, *nenhumas*; and is declinable: *nenhum homem*, no man; *de nenhum effeito*, of no effect.

*Cada um* has two terminations, viz., *cada um*, *cada uma*; but it has no plural and is declinable.

*Cada* has but one termination. It has no plural, and is declinable: *cada dia*, every day; *cada mez*, every month.

*Outro* has two terminations, viz., *outro*, *outra*, and in the plural, *outros*, *outras*. It is declinable.

*Outrem* has only one termination. It has no plural, and is declinable.

*Qualquer* has but one termination. It makes *quaesquer* in the plural, and is declined. *Qualquer* is said both of persons and things.

*Quemquer* has but one termination. It has no plural, and is declined. It is rendered in English by *anybody: quemquer vos dirá*, anybody will tell you. *Quemquer* is used in speaking of a person.

*Todo* has two terminations, viz., *todo*, *toda*, and in the plural *todos*, *todas*. It is declinable, and sometimes taken substantively, and then it signifies *the whole;* as, *o todo é maior que a sua parte*, the whole is bigger than its part.

*Tal* has only one termination. It makes *taes* in the plural, and it is declined with the indefinite article. It is common to the masculine and to the feminine genders; and sometimes it is joined to *qual;* as, *tal qual elle é*, such as it is.

*Tal* supplies sometimes the place of the person whose name is not specified; as, *um tal velhaco deve ser castigado*, such a rogue ought to be punished.

## CHAPTER V.

### OF VERBS.

THE verb is a part of speech which serves to express that which is attributed to the subject in denoting the *being* or *condition* of the things and persons spoken of, the *actions* which they do, or the *impressions* they receive.

The first and the most general division of Verbs is into personal and impersonal.

A verb personal is conjugated by three persons.

EXAMPLE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu amo* | I love |
| | *tu amas* | thou lovest |
| | *elle ama* | he loves |
| Plur. | *nós amamos* | we love |
| | *vós amais* | you love |
| | *elles amão** | they love |

A verb impersonal is conjugated by the third person of the singular number only; as, *chove*, it rains; *convem*, it behoves.

A verb, considered in regard to syntax, is of four sorts, viz., active, passive, neuter, and reciprocal.

Some of the verbs are regular and others irregular.

* The termination in *ão* (often found written *aõ*), in the third person plural in Portuguese verbs, is at present most generally printed *am;* whilst the form *ão* is kept for words that are not verbs, the three modes of writing this termination having the same value.

Some are also called auxiliary verbs. We shall give their definitions in their proper places.

Before you begin to learn the conjugations, it will be proper to observe, that all the verbs may be conjugated with the personal pronouns, *eu*, *tu*, *elle*, &c., or without them.

### OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

The auxiliary verbs are so called because they aid the conjugation of other verbs. They are four in Portuguese: viz., *haver*, *ter*, to have; *ser*, *estar*, to be. The auxiliary verb *ser*, to be, is also called the verb substantive, because it affirms what the subject is, and is always followed by a noun that particularises what that subject is; as, *ser rico*, *prudente*, *douto*, to be rich, wise, learned, &c.

### CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *TER* OR *HAVER*, TO HAVE.

*The Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho*, or *hei* | I have |
| | *tu tens*, or *has* | thou hast |
| | *elle tem*, or *ha* | he has *or* hath. |
| Plur. | *nós temos*, or *havemos*, or *hemos* | we have |
| | *vós tendes*, or *haveis*, or *heis* | you have |
| | *elles teem*, or *hão* | they have |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tinha*, or *havia* | I had |
| | *tu tinhas*, or *havias* | thou hadst |
| | *elle tinha*, or *havia* | he had |
| Plur. | *nós tinhamos*, or *haviamos* | we had |
| | *vós tinheis*, or *havieis* | you had |
| | *elles tinhão*, or *havião* | they had |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tive*, or *houve* | I had |
| | *tu tiveste*, or *houveste* | thou hadst |
| | *elle teve*, or *houve* | he had |
| Plur. | *nós tivémos*, or *houvemos* | we had |
| | *vós tivestes*, or *houvestes* | you had |
| | *elles tiverão*, or *houverão* | they had |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho tido* | I have had |
| | *tu tens tido* | thou hast had |
| | *elle tem tido* | he has had |
| Plur. | *nós temos tido* | we have had |
| | *vós tendes tido* | you have had |
| | *elles teem tido* | they have had |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tinha tido* | I had had |
| | *tu tinhas tido* | thou hadst had |
| | *elle tinha tido* | he had had |
| Plur. | *nós tinhamos tido* | we had had |
| | *vós tinheis tido* | you had had |
| | *elles tinhão tido* | they had had. |

This tense may also be conjugated thus : *tivéra, tivéras, tivéra, tivéramos, tivéreis, tivérão.*

FIRST FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu terei*, or *haverei* | I shall *or* will have |
| | *tu terás*, or *haverás* | thou shalt *or* wilt have |
| | *elle terá*, or *haverá* | he shall *or* will have |
| Plur. | *nós teremos*, or *haveremos* | we shall *or* will have |
| | *vós tereis*, or *havereis* | ye shall *or* will have |
| | *elles terão*, or *haverão* | they shall or will have |

SECOND FUTURE.

Sing. *eu hei de ter*, or *haver*, &c. I must have, &c.

THIRD FUTURE.

Sing. *eu haverei de ter*, or *haver*, &c. I shall be obliged to have, &c.

FOURTH FUTURE.

Sing. *eu havia de ter*, or *haver*, &c. I was to have, &c.

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *tem tu*, or *hajas tu* | have thou |
| | *tenha elle*, or *haja elle* | let him have |
| Plur. | *tenhâmos*, or *hajâmos nós* | let us have |
| | *tende*, or *havei vós* | have ye |
| | *tenhão*, or *hajão elles* | let them have |

The imperative has no first person, because it is impossible to command oneself.

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

I join them together because their tenses are similar.

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tenha*, or *haja* | that I may have |
| | *que tu tenhas*, or *hajas* | that thou mayest have |
| | *que elle tenha*, or *haja* | that he may have |
| Plur. | *que nós tenhâmos*, or *hajâmos* | that we may have |
| | *que vós tenhais*, or *hajais* | that ye may have |
| | *que elles tenhão*, or *hajão* | that they may have |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tivéra* or *tivésse, houvéra* or *houvésse*<br>*que tu tivéras* or *tivésses, houvéras* or *houvésses*<br>*que elle tivéra* or *tivésse, houvéra* or *houvésse* | that I had, should, would, could, *or* might have, &c. |
| Plur. | *que nós tivéramos* or *tivéssemos, houvéramos* or *houvéssemos*<br>*que vós tivéreis* or *tivésseis, houvéreis* or *houvésseis*<br>*que elles tivérão* or *tivéssem, houvérão* or *houvéssem* | that we had, should, would, could, *or* might have, &c. |

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu teria*, or *haveria*<br>*tu terias*, or *haverias*<br>*elle teria*, or *haveria* | I should, would, *or* could have, &c. |
| Plur. | *nós teriamos*, or *haveriamos*<br>*vós terieis*, or *haverieis*<br>*elles terião*, or *haverião* | we should, would, *or* could have, &c. |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tenha tido*, or *havido* | that I have had |
| | *que tu tenhas tido*, or *havido* | that thou hast had |
| | *que elle tenha tido*, or *havido* | that he has had |
| Plur. | *que nós tenhâmos tido* or *havido* | that we have had |
| | *que vós tenhais tido*, or *havido* | that you have had |
| | *que elles tenhão tido*, or *havido* | that they have had |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is compounded of the first preterimperfect subjunctive and the participle.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tivéra* or *tivésse* | *tido*, | if I had had, |
| | *se tu tivéras* or *tivésses* | | &c. |
| | *se elle tivéra* or *tivésse* | | |
| Plur. | *se nós tivéramos* or *tivessemos* | | |
| | *se vós tivéreis* or *tivésseis* | | |
| | *se elles tivérão* or *tivéssem* | | |

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is compounded of the second preterimperfect subjunctive and the participle.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu teria* | *tido*, I should have had, &c. |
| | *tu terias* | |
| | *elle teria* | |
| Plur. | *nós teriamos* | |
| | *vos terieis* | |
| | *elle terião* | |

FIRST FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tivér* | if I shall have |
| | *tu tivéres* | thou shalt have |
| | *elle tivér* | he shall have |
| Plur. | *se nós tivérmos* | if we shall have |
| | *vós tivérdes* | you shall have |
| | *elles tivérem* | they shall have |

The verb *Haver* is conjugated also thus: *houver, houveres, houver; houvermos, houverdes, houverem.* See Syntax *of the Auxiliary Verbs.*

SECOND FUTURE.

It is composed of the first future and the participle.

Sing. { *se eu tiver* / *tu tiveres* / *elle tiver* }
Plur. { *se nós tivermos* / *vós tiverdes* / *elles tiverem* }
} *tido*, if I shall have had, &c.

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*ter* to have

PRETERPERFECT.

*ter tido* to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

Preterit. Sing. *tido*, *tida* Plur. *tidos*, *tidas*, had.

FUTURE.

*que ha de ter* that is to have.

GERUNDS.

*tendo*, having, *or* in having *tendo tido*, having had.

SUPINE.

The supine is supplied by the prepositions *a* or *para* and the verb in the infinitive; as,

*para ter* to have.

In like manner are conjugated its compounds *contenho*, *detenho*, *mantenho*, &c.

REMARKS UPON THE AUXILIARY VERB *ter*, TO HAVE.

The verb *ter*, to have, is an auxiliary or helping verb, which serves to conjugate other verbs: examples, *ter lido*,

to have read; *nós temos feito*, we have done; *elles teem visto*, they have seen, &c.

When the verb *ter* is followed by the participle *que*, before an infinitive mood, it denotes the duty, inclination, &c., of doing anything: as, *que tendes que fazer?* what have you to do? *tenho que fazer uma visita*, I must pay a visit; *elle tem muito que dizer-vos*, he has a great many things to tell you.

### OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *haver*.

The verb *haver* is seldom used now as an auxiliary in Portuguese, since *ter* is an auxiliary to itself, as well as to all other verbs.

The verb *haver*, with the particle *de* after it, denotes a firm resolution, possibility, or necessity of doing anything, as, *eu hei de ter*, I must have; *eu hei de cantar*, I will sing; *eu havia de fallar*, I was to speak; also before the passive voice, as, *o principe ha de ser respeitado*, the prince ought to be, *or* must be respected.

The same verb *haver* implies also duty without the particle *de;* but then it is put after the verb to which it is auxiliary: thus, *dar-vos-hei*, I will give you; *dar-lhe-hei*, I will give to him, &c. In which examples you may observe, that the verb *haver* is put after the verb and the pronouns conjunctive, *te*, *lhe*, &c., and sometimes it is put after the verbs and the pronoun mixed; as, *mandar-vol-o-hei*, I will send it to you. In the foregoing examples the verb *haver* may be put before the other verb; but then it requires the particle *de*, and has a different meaning: as, in the first example, you may say, *hei de dar-vos*, I must give to you. Observe, also, that when the indicative present of the verb *haver* is auxiliary to other verbs, as in the foregoing examples, you must cut off the last

letters *ei* from the future of the verbs, and say *dar-lhe-hei*, or *hei de dar-lhe;* but not *darei-lhe-hei*, nor *hei de darei-lhe.* When the preterimperfect *havia* is to be auxiliary to any verb, and it is to be placed after it, you must make use of *hia, hias, hia, hiamos, hieis, hião;* and say, *dar-lhe-hia, hias,* &c., but not *dar-lhe-havia, havias,* &c., I should give to him, thou shouldst, &c.

To express interrogation, put the personal pronoun after the verb, as in English, thus, *terei eu?* shall I have? *temos nós?* have we? *tens tu?* hast thou? *tem elle?* has he? Sometimes the pronouns are omitted; as, *que faremos?* what shall we do? *cantaremos?* shall we sing?

*Haver* is sometimes rendered in English by *to become;* as, *que ha de ser de mim?* what will become of me?

When we speak by negation, we must use the word *não* before the verb; as, *não tenho,* I have not; *vós não conheceis,* you do not know, &c.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *SER*, OR *ESTAR*, TO BE.

### *Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu sou*, or *estou* | I am |
| | *tu és*, or *estás* | thou art |
| | *elle é*, or *está* | he is |
| Plur. | *nós somos*, or *estamos* | we are |
| | *vós sois*, or *estais* | you are |
| | *elles são*, or *estão* | they are |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu era*, or *estava* | I was |
| | *eras*, or *estavas* | thou wast |
| | *era*, or *estava* | he was |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *nós eramos*, or *estavamos* | we were |
| | *ereis*, or *estaveis* | you were |
| | *erão*, or *estavão* | they were |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu fui*, or *estive* | I was |
| | *foste*, or *estiveste* | thou wast |
| | *foi*, or *esteve* | he was |
| Plur. | *nós fomos*, or *estivémos* | we were |
| | *fostes*, or *estivéstes* | you were |
| | *forão*, or *estivérão* | they were |

PRETERPERFECT.

The preterperfect is composed of the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*, to have, and its own participle, *sido* or *estado*.

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

The tense is compounded of the preterimperfect indicative, and the participle *sido* or *estado*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tinha sido*, or *estado* | I had been |
| | *tinhas sido*, or *estado* | thou hadst been |
| | *tinha sido*, or *estado* | he had been |
| Plur. | *nós tinhamos sido*, or *estado* | we had been |
| | *tinheis sido*, or *estado* | you had been |
| | *tinhão sido*, or *estado* | they had been |

It may also be conjugated thus: *fora*, or *estivera*; *foras*, or *estiveras*; *fora*, or *estivera*; *foramos*, or *estiveramos*; *foreis*, or *estivereis*; *forão*, or *estivérão*.

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu serei*, or *estarei* | I shall *or* will be |
| | *serás*, or *estarás* | thou shalt be |
| | *será*, or *estará* | he shall be |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *nós seremos*, or *estaremos* | we shall be |
| | *sereis*, or *estareis* | you shall be |
| | *serão*, or *estarão* | they shall be |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *sê tu*, or *esta* | be thou |
| | *seja*, or *esteja elle* | let him be |
| Plur. | *sejamos*, or *estejamos nós* | let us be |
| | *sede*, or *estai vós* | be ye |
| | *sejão*, or *estejão elles* | let them be |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu seja*, or *esteja* | that I may be, *or* that I be |
| | *sejas*, or *estejas* | thou mayest be |
| | *seja*, or *esteja* | he may be, &c. |
| Plur. | *que nós sejâmos*, or *estejâmos* | that we may be |
| | *sejais*, or *estejais* | you may be |
| | *sejão*, or *estejão* | they may be |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu fôra* or *fosse*, *estivera* or *estivesse* | that I were, *or* might be |
| | *fôras* or *fosses*, *estiveras* or *estivesses* | thou wert |
| | *fôra* or *fosse*, *estivera* or *estivesse* | he were |
| Plur. | *que nós fôramos* or *fossemos*, *estiveramos* or *estivessemos* | that we were |
| | *fôreis* or *fosseis*, *estivereis* or *estivesseis* | you were |
| | *fôrão* or *fossem*, *estiverão* or *estivessem* | they were |

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu seria*, or *estaria* | I should *or* would be |
| | *serias*, or *estarias* | thou shouldst be |
| | *seria*, or *estaria* | he should be |
| Plur. | *seriamos*, or *estariamos* | we should be |
| | *serieis*, or *estarieis* | you should be |
| | *serião*, or *estarião* | they should be |

PRETERPERFECT.

It is compounded of the present conjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*, and its own participle *sido*, or *estado*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tenha sido*, or *estado* | that I have been |
| | *tenhas sido*, or *estado* | thou hast been |
| | *tenha sido*, &c. | he has been |
| Plur. | *nós tenhâmos sido*, &c. | we have been |
| | *tenhais sido*, &c. | you have been |
| | *tenhão sido*, &c. | they have been |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is compounded of the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter*, and its own participle.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tivera*, or *tivesse sido*, or *estado* | if I had been |
| | *tiveras*, &c. | thou hadst been |
| | *tivera*, &c. | he had been |
| Plur. | *nós tiveramos*, &c. | we had been |
| | *tivereis*, &c. | you had been |
| | *tiverão*, &c. | they had been |

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

Compounded of the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter*, and its own participle *sido*, or *estado*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu teria sido*, or *estado* | I should *or* would have been |
| | *terias*, &c. | thou shouldst have been |
| | *teria*, &c. | he should have been |
| Plur. | *teriamos*, &c. | we should have been |
| | *terieis*, &c. | you should have been |
| | *terião*, &c. | they should have been |

FIRST FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu fôr*, or *estiver* | when I shall be |
| | *fôres*, or *estiveres* | thou shalt be |
| | *fôr*, or *estiver* | he shall be |
| Plur. | *nós fôrmos*, or *estivermos* | we shall be |
| | *fôrdes*, or *estiverdes* | you shall be |
| | *fôrem*, or *estiverem* | they shall be |

SECOND FUTURE.

Compounded of the future subjunctive of the verb *ter* and its own participle.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu tiver sido*, or *estado* | when I shall have been |
| | *tiveres sido*, &c. | thou shalt have been |
| | *tiver sido*, &c. | he shall have been |
| Plur. | *nós tivermos sido*, &c. | we shall have been |
| | *tiverdes sido*, &c. | you shall have been |
| | *tiverem sido*, &c. | they shall have been |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*ser*, or *estar* to be

PRETERPERFECT.

*ter sido*, or *estado* to have been

*Participles.*

PRETERIT.

*sido*, or *estado* been

FUTURE.

*que ha de ser*, or *estar* that is to be

GERUNDS.

*sendo*, or *estando* being
*tendo sido*, or *estado* having been

SUPINE.

*para ser*, or *estar* to be

REMARKS UPON THE VERBS *ser* AND *estar*.

There is a considerable difference between these verbs, *ser* and *estar*, both in Portuguese and Spanish. In English there is no word to distinguish them, being both rendered into English by *to be*. *Ser* signifies the proper and inseparable essence of a thing, its quality or quantity; *ser homem*, to be a man; *ser bom*, to be good; *ser alto*, to be tall; *ser largo*, to be wide; *ser branco*, to be white, &c. But *estar* denotes a place, or any adventitious quality: as, *estar em Londres*, to be in London; *estar de saude*, to be in health; *esta frio*, to be cold;

*estar quente*, to be warm; *estar doente*, to be sick; *estar enfadado*, to be angry; *estar alegre*, to be merry, &c.

*Estar* may be used before the gerund, but not *ser;* therefore you may say, *estou fallando, lendo*, &c., I am speaking, reading, &c., but not *sou fallando*, &c.

### THE THREE CONJUGATIONS OF REGULAR ACTIVE VERBS.

A regular verb is such as is confined to general rules in its conjugation.

A verb active denotes the action or impression of the subject, and governs a noun which is the object of that action or impression; as, *amar a virtude*, to love virtue; *receber cartas*, to receive letters.

The regular Portuguese verbs have three different terminations in the infinitive; viz., in *ar, er, ir:* as, *amar*, to love; *temer*, to fear; *admittir*, to admit.

### AN EASY METHOD OF LEARNING TO CONJUGATE THE PORTUGUESE VERBS.

I have reduced all the tenses of the Portuguese verbs to eight; four of which are general, and have the same terminations in all the verbs; and the other four may be likewise made general by changing some letters, and all the conjugations reduced to one.

The general tenses are the future indicative, the first and second preterimperfect subjunctive, and the first future subjunctive.

The future indicative is terminated in all the verbs in *rei, rás, rá; remos, reis, rão.*

The imperfect subjunctive, in *ra* or *sse, ras* or *sses, ra* or *sse; ramos* or *ssemos, reis* or *sseis, rão* or *ssem.*

The second imperfect, in *ria, rias, ria; riamos, rieis, rião.*

The first subjunctive, in *es, mos, des, em.*

I have only given the termination of the second person singular of the future subjunctive, because the first and third of the same number are like their respective infinitives of the three conjugations, which, however, keep both their last consonant and vowel before the terminations I have marked for the second person singular, and for the whole plural. As to the future indicative, you have only to add *ei* to the respective present infinitive of the three conjugations, in order to form the first person singular; and if you add to the same infinitive present *as*, you will form the second person singular of it, and so of all the rest, by adding to the infinitive present *a*, *emos*, *eis*, *ão*.

The imperfect subjunctive has two terminations for every person, both in the singular and plural; but if you cut off the last consonant, *r*, of the infinitive, and then add to it the terminations above mentioned, you form the imperfect subjunctive, according to its two different terminations. Lastly, if you cut off the last consonant of the infinitive, and add to it the terminations above mentioned, you will form the second imperfect subjunctive.

The present indicative of the three conjugations is formed by changing the last letters of the infinitive, viz., *ar*, *er*, *ir*, into *o*; as *amo*, *entendo*, *admitto*, from *amar*, *entender*, *admittir*.

The preterimperfect indicative is formed in the first conjugation by changing the last consonant of the infinitive, viz. *r*, into *va*, *vas*, *va*, *vamos*, *veis*, *vão*; but in the second conjugation it is formed by changing the termination *er* of the infinitive into *ia*, *ias*, *ia*, *iamos*, *ieis*, *ião*; and in the third by changing the last consonant, *r*, of the infinitive into *a*, *as*, *a*, *amos*, *eis*, *ão*.

The perfect definite in the first conjugation is formed

by changing the termination *ar* of the infinitive into *ei, aste, ou, ámos, ástes, árão;* and in the second conjugation it is formed by changing the termination *er* of the infinitive into *i, este, eo, emos, estes, erão.* In the third conjugation, the same tense is formed by changing the termination *ir* of the infinitive into *i, iste, io, imos, istes, irão.*

The present subjunctive in the first conjugation is formed by changing the termination *ar* of the infinitive into *e, es, e, emos, eis, em;* and in the second conjugation it is formed by changing the termination *er* of the infinitive into *a, as, a amos, ais, ão.* In the third conjugation, the same tense is formed by changing the termination *ir* of the infinitive into the same terminations, *a, as, a,* &c.

As to the imperative mood, you have only to observe that the second person singular is always the same as the third person singular of the present indicative, in all the conjugations.

The participles of the preterperfect tense in the first conjugation are formed by changing the last consonant, *r,* of the infinitive into *do* of the masculine, and *da* for the feminine; and into *dos, das,* for the plural; but when you come to verbs of the second conjugation, you change the termination *r* of the infinitive into *ido, ida,* &c.

In the third conjugation, the last consonant, *r,* of the infinitive must be changed into *do* for the masculine, *da* for the feminine, &c.

## FIRST CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS IN *AR*.

### *Indicative Mood.*

#### PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *amo* | I love |
| | | *amas* | thou lovest |
| | | *ama* | he loves |
| Plur. | *nós* | *amamos* | we love |
| | | *amais* | you love |
| | | *amão* | they love |

#### PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *amava* | I did love |
| | | *amavas* | thou didst love |
| | | *amava* | he did love |
| Plur. | *nós* | *amavamos* | we did love |
| | | *amaveis* | you did love |
| | | *amavão* | they did love |

#### PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *amei* | I loved |
| | | *amaste* | thou lovedst |
| | | *amou* | he loved |
| Plur. | *nós* | *amámos* | we loved |
| | | *amástes* | you loved |
| | | *amárão* | they loved |

#### PRETERPERFECT.

This tense is composed of the participle *amado* and the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *tenho amado* | I have loved |
| | | *tens amado* | thou hast loved |
| | | *tem amado* | he has loved |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *nós temos amado* | we have loved |
| | *tendes amado* | you have loved |
| | *teem amado* | they have loved |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

This tense is composed of the participle *amado* and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter.*

N.B. It may be conjugated thus: *amára, amáras, amára, amáramos, amáreis, amárão,* or

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tinha amado* | I had loved |
| | *tinhas amado* | thou hadst loved |
| | *tinha amado* | he had loved |
| Plur. | *nós tinhamos amado* | we had loved |
| | *tinheis amado* | you had loved |
| | *tinhão amado* | they had loved |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu amarei* | I shall *or* will love |
| | *amarás* | thou shalt love |
| | *amará* | he shall love |
| Plur. | *nós amaremos* | we shall love |
| | *amareis* | you shall love |
| | *amarão* | they shall love |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *ama tu* | love thou |
| | *ame elle* | let him love |
| Plur. | *amemos nós* | let us love |
| | *amai vós* | love you |
| | *amem elles* | let them love |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu ame* | that I may love |
| | *ames* | thou mayst love |
| | *ame* | he may love |
| Plur. | *que nós amemos* | we may love |
| | *ameis* | you may love |
| | *amem* | they may love |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu amára*, or *amasse* | that I might *or* could love |
| | *amáras*, or *amasses* | thou mightest love |
| | *amára*, or *amasse* | he might love |
| Plur. | *que nós amáramos*, or *amassemos* | we might love |
| | *amáreis*, or *amasseis* | you might love |
| | *amárão*, or *amassem* | they might love |

When we find the conjunction *if* before the indicative imperfect, we must use the imperfect of the subjunctive or optative, when we speak by way of wish or desire : as, if I did love, *se eu amasse*, or *amára*, and not the preter-imperfect indicative, *se eu amava ;* if I had, *se eu tivera, tivesse*, and not *se eu tinha ;* and so in all the verbs.

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu amaria* | I should love |
| | *amarias* | thou shouldst love |
| | *amaria* | he should love |
| Plur. | *nós amariamos* | we should love |
| | *amarieis* | you should love |
| | *amarião* | they should love |

PRETERPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tenha amado* | that I have loved |
| | *tenhas amado* | thou hast loved |
| | *tenha amado* | he has loved |
| Plur. | *que nós tenhâmos amado* | we have loved |
| | *tenhais amado* | you have loved |
| | *tenhão amado* | they have loved |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tivera*, or *tivesse amado* | if I had loved |
| | *tiveras*, or *tivesses amado* | thou hadst loved |
| | *tivera*, or *tivesse amado* | he had loved |
| Plur. | *se nós tiveramos*, or *tivessemos amado* | we had loved |
| | *tivereis*, or *tivesseis amado* | you had loved |
| | *tiverão*, or *tivessem amado* | they had loved |

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu teria amado* | I should have loved |
| | *terias amado* | thou shouldst have loved |
| | *teria amado* | he should have loved |
| Plur. | *nós teriamos amado* | we should have loved |
| | *terieis amado* | you should have loved |
| | *terião amado* | they should have loved. |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu amar* | when I shall love |
| | *amares* | thou shalt love |
| | *amar* | he shall love |
| Plur. | *quando nós amarmos* | we shall love |
| | *amardes* | you shall love |
| | *amarem* | they shall love |

SECOND FUTURE.

It is composed of the participle *amado* and the future subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu tiver amado* | when I shall have loved |
| | *tiveres amado* | thou shalt have loved |
| | *tiver amado* | he shall have loved |
| Plur. | *quando nós tivermos amado* | we shall have loved |
| | *tiverdes amado* | you shall have loved |
| | *tiverem amado* | they shall have loved |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*amar* to love

PRETERPERFECT.

*ter amado* to have loved

*Participles.*

PRESENT.

*que ama*, or *amante* that loves

PRETERIT.

masc. *amado*, fem. *amada* Plur. *amados*, *amadas*, loved

FUTURE.

*que ha de amar* that is to love

GERUNDS.

*amando* loving
*tendo amado* having loved

SUPINE.

*para amar* to love

*Note*, the verbs terminating in the infinitive in *car* take *qu* in those tenses where the *c* would otherwise meet with the vowel *e ;* and those terminating in the infinitive in *gar* take an *u* in those tenses where the *g* would otherwise meet with the same vowel *e ;* that is to say, in the first person singular of the preterperfect definite, in the third person singular, in the first and third plural of the imperative, and in the whole present subjunctive, which are the tenses I shall give by way of example in the verbs *peccar* and *pagar*.

*Peccar*, TO SIN.

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*eu pequei*, I sinned, &c., instead of *peccei*.

*Imperative Mood.*

*péque elle*, let him sin ; *pequemos nós*, let us sin ; *péquem elles*, let them sin ; and not *pecce elle*, &c.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

*que eu péque, tu péques*, that I may sin ; and not *que eu pecce, pecces*, &c.

*Pagar*, TO PAY.

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*eu paguei* I paid, &c.

*Imperative Mood.*

*pague elle, paguemos nós, paguem elles*, let him pay, &c.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

*que eu pague, pagues, pague, paguemos, pagueis, paguem*, that I may pay, &c.; and not *page, pages*, &c.

The other tenses are conjugated like *amar*.

REGULAR VERBS IN *ar*.

*Abafar*, to choke, or to smother
*Abalar*, to shake
*Abanar*, to fan
*Abastar*, to satiate
*Abaixar*, to let down
*Abençoar*, to bless
*Abocanhar*, to carp
*Abominar*, to abominate
*Abotoar*, to button
*Acabar*, to finish
*Admoestar*, to admonish
*Affrontar*, to abuse
*Agarrar*, to lay hold of
*Alagar*, to overflow
*Amaldiçoar*, to curse
*Annular*, to annul
*Apressar*, to hasten
*Aquentar*, to warm
*Argumentar*, to argue
*Assoprar*, to blow
*Atar*, to tie
*Avassalar*, to subdue
*Azedar*, to sour

---

OF THE VERBS PASSIVE.

Before we proceed to the second conjugation, it is necessary to know that the passive verbs, which express the suffering of an action, are nothing more than the participles of active verbs, conjugated with the verb *ser*, to be.

EXAMPLE.

PRESENT TENSE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu sou amado* | I am loved |
| | *tu es amado* | thou art loved |
| | *elle é amado* | he is loved |
| Plur. | *nós somos amados* | we are loved |
| | *vós sois amados* | you are loved |
| | *elles são amados* | they are loved |

and so throughout the other moods and tenses.

## SECOND CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS IN *ER*.

### *Indicative Mood.*

#### PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *vendo* | I sell |
| | | *vendes* | thou sellest |
| | | *vende* | he sells |
| Plur. | *nós* | *vendemos* | we sell |
| | | *vendeis* | you sell |
| | | *vendem* | they sell |

#### PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *vendia* | I did sell |
| | | *vendias* | thou didst sell |
| | | *vendia* | he did sell |
| Plur. | *nós* | *vendiamos* | we did sell |
| | | *vendieis* | you did sell |
| | | *vendião* | they did sell |

#### PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *vendi* | I sold |
| | | *vendeste* | thou soldest |
| | | *vendeo* | he sold |
| Plur. | *nós* | *vendemos* | we sold |
| | | *vendestes* | you sold |
| | | *venderão* | they sold |

#### PRETERPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *tenho vendido* | I have sold, &c. |
| | | *tens vendido* | ,, |
| | | *tem vendido* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós* | *temos vendido* | ,, |
| | | *tendes vendido* | ,, |
| | | *teem vendido* | ,, |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *tinha vendido* | I had sold, &c. |
| | | *tinhas vendido* | ,, |
| | | *tinha vendido* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós* | *tinhamos vendido* | ,, |
| | | *tinheis vendido* | ,, |
| | | *tinham vendido* | ,, |

This tense may also be conjugated thus: *vendêra, vendêras, vendêra, vendêramos, vendêreis, vendêrão.*

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu* | *venderei* | I shall *or* will sell, &c. |
| | | *venderás* | ,, |
| | | *venderá* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós* | *venderemos* | ,, |
| | | *vendereis* | ,, |
| | | *venderão* | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *vende tu* | sell thou |
| | *venda elle* | let him sell |
| Plur. | *vendamos nós* | let us sell |
| | *vendei vós* | sell ye |
| | *vendão elles* | let them sell |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que* | *eu venda* | that I may sell, &c. |
| | | *vendas* | ,, |
| | | *venda* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que* | *nós vendamos* | ,, |
| | | *vendais* | ,, |
| | | *vendão* | ,, |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu vendêra*, or *vendesse* | that I might *or* could sell, &c. |
| | *vendêras*, or *vendesses* | ,, |
| | *vendêra*, or *vendesse* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós venderamos*, or *vendessemos* | ,, |
| | *vendêreis*, or *vendesseis* | ,, |
| | *vendêrão*, or *vendessem* | ,, |

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu venderia* | I should *or* would sell, &c. |
| | *venderias* | ,, |
| | *venderia* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós venderiamos* | ,, |
| | *venderieis* | ,, |
| | *venderião* | ,, |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tenha vendido* | that I have sold, &c. |
| | *tenhas vendido* | ,, |
| | *tenha vendido* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós tenhamos vendido* | ,, |
| | *tenhais vendido* | ,, |
| | *tenhão vendido* | ,, |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tivéra*, or *tivésse vendido* | if I had sold, &c. |
| | *tivéras*, or *tivésses vendido* | ,, |
| | *tivéra*, or *tivésse vendido* | ,, |
| Plur. | *se nós tivéramos*, or *tivéssemos vendido* | ,, |
| | *tivéreis*, or *tivésseis vendido* | ,, |
| | *tiverão*, or *tivessem vendido* | ,, |

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu teria vendido* | I should *or* would have sold, &c. |
| | *terias vendido* | ,, |
| | *teria vendido* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós teriamos vendido* | ,, |
| | *terieis vendido* | ,, |
| | *terião vendido* | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu vender* | when I shall sell, &c. |
| | *venderes* | ,, |
| | *vender* | ,, |
| Plur. | *quandó nos vendermos* | ,, |
| | *venderdes* | ,, |
| | *venderem* | ,, |

SECOND FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu tivér vendido* | when I shall have sold, &c. |
| | *tivéres vendido* | ,, |
| | *tivér vendido* | ,, |
| Plur. | *quando nós tivérmos vendido* | ,, |
| | *tivérdes vendido* | ,, |
| | *tivérem vendido* | ,, |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*vender* to sell

PRETERPERFECT.

*ter vendido* to have sold

*Participles.*

PRESENT.

*que vende* that sells

PRETERIT.

masc. *vendido*, fem. *vendida* Plur. *vendidos*, *vendidas*, sold

FUTURE.

*que ha de vender* that is to sell

GERUNDS.

*vendendo* selling
*tendo vendido* having sold

SUPINE.

*para vender* to sell

After the same manner as the verb *vender*, are conjugated all the other regular verbs of the second conjugation ending in *er;* as the following:—

*Acometer*, to attack
*Beber*, to drink
*Comer*, to eat
*Comprehender*, to perceive, *or* apprehend
*Cometer*, to commit
*Conceder*, to grant
*Correr*, to run
*Dever*, to owe
*Esconder*, to hide
*Emprender*, to undertake
*Meter*, to put in
*Offender*, to offend
*Prometer*, to promise
*Responder*, to answer
*Reprehender*, to reprove
*Temer*, to fear
*Varrer*, to sweep, &c.

## THIRD CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS ENDING IN *IR*.

### *Indicative Mood.*

#### PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu admitto* | I admit, &c. | Plur. | *nós admittimos* | |
| | *admittes* | ,, | | *admittis* | |
| | *admitte* | ,, | | *admittem* | |

#### PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu admittia* | I did admit, &c. | Plur. | *nós admittiamos* | |
| | *admittias* | ,, | | *admittieis* | |
| | *admittia* | ,, | | *admittião* | |

#### PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu admitti* | I admitted, &c. | Plur. | *nós admittimos* | |
| | *admittiste* | ,, | | *admittistes* | |
| | *admittio* | ,, | | *admittírão* | |

#### PRETERPERFECT.

This tense is composed of the participle *admittido* and the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *tenho admittido* | I have admitted |
| | *tens admittido*, &c. | thou hast, &c. |

#### PRETERPLUPERFECT.

Composed of the participle *admittido* and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *tinha admittido* | I had admitted |
| | *tinhas admittido*, &c. | thou hadst, &c. |

It may also be conjugated thus : *admittira, admittiras, admittira, admittiramos, admittireis, admittirão.*

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu admittirei* | I shall *or* will admit, &c. |
| | *admittirás* | ,, |
| | *admittirá* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós admittiremos* | ,, |
| | *admittireis* | ,, |
| | *admittirão* | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *admitte tu* | admit thou |
| | *admitta elle* | let him admit |
| Plur. | *admittâmos nós* | let us admit |
| | *admitti vós* | admit ye |
| | *admittão elles* | let them admit |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu admitta* | that I may admit, &c. |
| | *admittas* | ,, |
| | *admitta* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós admittamos* | ,, |
| | *admittais* | ,, |
| | *admittão* | ,, |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu admittira*, or *admittisse* | that I might admit, &c. |
| | *admittiras*, or *admittisses* | ,, |
| | *admittira*, or *admittisse* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós admittiramos*, or *admittissemos* | ,, |
| | *admittíreis*, or *admittisseis* | ,, |
| | *admittírão*, or *admittíssem* | ,, |

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu admittiria* | I should *or* would admit, &c. |
| | *admittirias* | ,, |
| | *admittiria* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós admittiriamos* | ,, |
| | *admittirieis* | ,, |
| | *admittirião* | ,, |

PRETERPERFECT.

Composed of the participle *admittido* and the present subjunctive of the verb *ter*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu tenha admittido* | that I may have admitted |
| | *tenhas admit-* | thou mayest have |
| | *tido*, &c. | admitted, &c. |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is composed of the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter* and the participle *admittido*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tivera admittido* | if I had admitted |
| | *tiveras admittido*, &c. | thou hadst admitted, &c. |

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is composed of the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the verb *ter* and the participle *admittido*.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu teria admittido* | I should have admitted |
| | *terias*, &c. | thou shouldst, &c. |

FIRST FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu admittir* | if I shall admit, &c. |
| | *admittires* | ,, |
| | *admittir* | ,, |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *se nós admittirmos* | if we shall admit, &c. |
| | *admittirdes* | ,, |
| | *admittirem* | ,, |

SECOND FUTURE.

It is composed of the first future subjunctive of the verb *ter* and the participle *admittido.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *se eu tiver admittido* | if I shall have admitted |
| | *tiveres*, &c. | thou shalt, &c. |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*admittir* to admit

PRETERPERFECT.

*ter admittido* to have admitted

*Participles.*

PRESENT.

*que admitte* that admits

PRETERIT.

masc. *admittido*, fem. *admittida* Plur. *admittidos*, *admittidas*, admitted

FUTURE.

*que ha de admittir* that is to admit

GERUNDS.

*admittindo* admitting
*tendo admittido* having admitted

SUPINES.

*para admittir* to admit

Conjugate after the same manner the following verbs :—

| | |
|---|---|
| *Abrir*, to open | *Luzir*, to shine |
| *Conduzir*, to conduce | *Nutrir*, to nourish |
| *Introduzir*, to introduce | *Reduzir*, to reduce, to bring to |
| *Induzir*, to induce | *Traduzir*, to translate |
| *Produzir*, to produce | *Deduzir*, to deduct, &c. |

---

### OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN *AR*.

There are, in each conjugation, some verbs which do not conform to the common rule, and on that account are called irregulars.

There are but two of the first conjugation, which in some of their tenses depart from the rule of the verb *amar*, viz., *estar* and *dar*. We have already conjugated the first, and the second is conjugated in the following manner :—

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu dou* | I give | Plur. | *nós damos* | we give |
| | *dás* | thou givest | | *dais* | you give |
| | *dá* | he gives | | *dão* | they give |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

Sing. *dava* I did give, &c. (as in regular verbs of the
*davas*, &c. first conjugation).

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu dei* | I gave | Plur. | *nós démos* | we gave |
| | *déste* | thou gavest | | *déstes* | you gave |
| | *deu* | he gave | | *dérão* | they gave |

PRETERPERFECT.

This tense is composed of the participle *dado* and the present indicative of the auxiliary *ter ;* as, *tenho dado*, &c. I have given, &c.

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

Composed of the participle *dado* and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter ;* as, *eu tinha dado*, &c., I had given, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing. { *eu derei* I shall *or* will give, &c. (as in the verb *amar*)
*darás*, &c.

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *dá tu* | give thou | Plur. | *demos nós* | let us give |
| | *dê elle* | let him give | | *dai vós* | give thou |
| | | | | *dêem elles* | let them give |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu dê* | that I may give, &c. |
| | *dês* | ,, |
| | *dê* | ,, |
| Plur | *que nós dêmos* | ,, |
| | *deis* | ,, |
| | *dêem* | ,, |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu déra*, or *désse* | that I might give, &c. |
| | *déras*, or *désses* | ,, |
| | *déra*, or *désse* | ,, |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *que nós déramos*, or *déssemos* | that we might give, &c. |
| | *déreis*, or *désseis* | ,, |
| | *dérão*, or *déssem* | ,, |

SECOND IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu daria* | I should give, &c. | Plur. | *nós dariamos* | |
| | *darias* | ,, | | *darieis* | |
| | *daria* | ,, | | *darião* | |

The preterperfect, preterpluperfect, and the second preterpluperfect are composed of the participle *dado* and the auxiliary verb *ter*, as in the regular verbs.

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu der* | when I shall give, &c. |
| | *deres* | ,, |
| | *der* | ,, |
| Plur. | *quando nós dermos* | ,, |
| | *derdes* | ,, |
| | *derem* | ,, |

SECOND FUTURE

is composed of the participle *dado*, &c., as the regular verbs.

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*dar*, to give, &c., as in the regular verbs.

## OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN *ER*.

I begin with *fazer*, *poder*, and *saber*, because they occur often in conversation.

### *FAZER*, TO DO, *or* MAKE.

#### *Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu faço* | I do | Plur. | *nós fazemos* | we do |
| | *fazes* | thou doest | | *fazeis* | you do |
| | *faz* | he does | | *fazem* | they do |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu fazia* | I did, *or* did make, &c. | Plur. | *nós faziamos* | |
| | *fazias* | ,, | | *fazieis* | |
| | *fazia* | ,, | | *fazião* | |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu fiz* | I made, &c. | Plur. | *nós fizemos* | |
| | *fizeste* | ,, | | *fizestes* | |
| | *fez* | ,, | | *fizerão* | |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho feito* | I have done, &c. |
| | *tens feito*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tinha feito* | I had done, &c. |
| | *tinhas feito*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu farei* | I shall do, &c. | (according to the |
| | *farás*, &c. | ,, | regular verbs. |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *faze tu* | do thou | Plur. | *façâmos nós* | let us do |
| | *faça elle* | let him do | | *fazei vós* | do you |
| | | | | *façâo elles* | let them do |

*Optative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu faça* | that I may do, &c. | (according to the |
| | *faças,* | ,, | regular verbs.) |
| | *faça,* &c. | ,, | |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu fizera,* or *fizesse* | that I might do, &c. |
| | *fizeras,* or *fizesses* | ,, |
| | *fizera,* or *fizesse* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós fizeramos,* or *fizessemos* | ,, |
| | *fizereis,* or *fizesseis* | ,, |
| | *fizerão,* or *fizessem* | ,, |

SECOND IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu faria* | I should do, &c. | Plur. | *nós fariamos* | |
| | *farias* | ,, | | *farieis* | |
| | *faria* | ,, | | *farião* | |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu fizer* | when I shall do, &c. |
| | *fizeres* | ,, |
| | *fizer* | ,, |
| Plur. | *quando nós fizermos* | ,, |
| | *fizerdes* | ,, |
| | *fizerem* | ,, |

SECOND FUTURE.

Sing. { *quando eu tiver feito* when I shall have done, &c.
*tiveres feito*, &c. ,,

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*fazer* to do

GERUND.

*fazendo* doing, *or* in doing.

PARTICIPLE.

*feito* made, *or* done.

After the same manner are conjugated *desfazer*, to undo; *contrafazer*, to counterfeit; *refazer*, to do again.

---

## *PODER*, TO BE ABLE.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu posso* | I can, *or* am able | Plur. | *nós podemos* | we can |
| | *podes* | thou canst | | *podeis* | you can |
| | *pode* | he can | | *podem* | they can |

IMPERFECT.

Sing. { *eu podia* I could, *or* was able, &c.
*podias*, &c. ,,

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu pude* | I could | Plur. | *nós pudémos* | we could |
| | *pudeste* | thou couldst | | *pudêstes* | you could |
| | *pôde* | he could | | *pudérão* | they could |

PRETERPERFECT.

Sing. *eu tenho podido*, &c. I have been able, &c.

FUTURE.

Sing. { *eu poderei* I shall be able, &c.
*poderás*, &c. ,,

There is no Imperative.

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

Sing. { *que eu possa* that I may be able, &c.
*possas* ,,
*possa* ,,

Plur. { *que nós possâmos* ,,
*possais* ,,
*possão* ,,

IMPERFECT.

Sing. { *que eu pudera*, or *pudesse* that I might be able, &c.
*puderas*, or *pudesses* ,,
*pudera*, or *pudesse* ,,

Plur. { *que nós puderamos*, or *pudessemos* ,,
*pudereis*, or *pudesseis* ,,
*puderão*, or *pudessem* ,,

SECOND IMPERFECT.

Sing. { *eu poderia* I should *or* would be able, &c.
*poderias*, &c. ,,

FUTURE.

Sing. { *quando eu pudér* when I shall be able, &c.
*pudéres* ,,
*pudér* ,,

Plur. { *quando nós pudermos* ,,
*pudérdes* ,,
*pudérem* ,,

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*poder* to be able

GERUND.

*podendo* being able

PARTICIPLE.

*podido* been able

---

## *SABER*, TO KNOW.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu sei* | I know | Plur. | *nós sabemos* | we know |
| | *sabes* | thou knowest | | *sabeis* | you know |
| | *sabe* | he knows | | *sabem* | they know |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu sabia* | I did know |
| | *sabias* | thou didst know |
| | *sabia*, &c. | he did know, &c. |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu soube* | I knew, &c. | Plur. | *nós soubemos* | |
| | *soubeste* | ,, | | *soubestes* | |
| | *soube* | ,, | | *souberão* | |

PRETERPERFECT.

Sing. *eu tenho sabido*, &c. I have known, &c.

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu saberei* | I shall *or* will know, &c. (according to the |
| | *saberás*, &c. | ,, regular verbs) |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *sabe tu* | know thou | Plur. | *saibamos nós* | let us know |
| | *saiba elle* | let him know | | *sabei vós* | know you |
| | | | | *saibão elles* | let them know |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu saiba* | that I may know, &c. | |
| | *saibas* | ,, | |
| | *saiba* | ,, | |
| Plur. | *que nós saibamos* | ,, | |
| | *saibais* | ,, | |
| | *saibão* | ,, | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu soubera*, or *soubesse* | that I might know, &c. | |
| | *souberas*, or *soubesses* | ,, | |
| | *soubera*, or *soubesse* | ,, | |
| Plur. | *que nós souberamos*, or *soubessemos* | ,, | |
| | *soubereis*, or *soubesseis* | ,, | |
| | *souberão*, or *soubessem* | ,, | |

SECOND IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu saberia* | I should know, &c. | Plur. | *nós saberiamos* | |
| | *saberias* | ,, | | *saberieis* | |
| | *saberia* | ,, | | *saberião* | |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu souber* | when I shall know, &c. |
| | *souberes* | ,, |
| | *souber* | ,, |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *quando nós soubermos* | when we shall know, &c. | |
| | *souberdes* | ,, | |
| | *souberem* | ,, | |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*saber* to know

GERUND.

*sabendo* knowing

PARTICIPLE.

masc. *sabido*, fem. *sabida*, known

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *TRAZER*, TO BRING.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu trago* | I bring | Plur. | *nós trazemos* | we bring |
| | *trazes* | thou bringest | | *trazeis* | you bring |
| | *traz* | he brings | | *trazem* | they bring |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu trazia* | I did bring |
| | *trazias*, &c. | thou didst bring, &c. (according to the regular verbs) |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu trouxe* | I brought | Plur. | *nós trouxemos* | |
| | *trouxeste* | thou broughtest | | *trouxestes* | |
| | *trouxe* | he brought | | *trouxerão* | |

PRETERPERFECT.

Sing. { *eu tenho trazido* I have brought, &c.
*tens trazido*, &c. ,,

FUTURE.

Sing. { *eu trarei* I shall *or* will bring, &c.
*trarás* ,,
*trará* ,,

Plur. { *nós traremos*
*trareis*
*trarão*

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. { *traze tu* bring thou
*tragã elle* let him bring

Plur. { *tragamos nós* let us bring
*trazei vós* bring you
*tragão elles* let them bring

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

Sing. { *que eu traga* that I may bring, &c.
*tragas* ,,
*traga* ,,

Plur. { *que nós tragamos* ,,
*tragais* ,,
*tragão* ,,

IMPERFECT.

Sing. { *que eu trouxera*, or *trouxesse* that I might bring, &c.
*trouxeras*, or *trouxesses* ,,
*trouxera*, or *trouxesse* ,,

Plur. { *que nós trouxeramos*, or *trouxessemos* ,,
*trouxereis*, or *trouxesseis* ,,
*trouxerão*, or *trouxessem* ,,

SECOND IMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu traria* | I should bring, &c. | Plur. | *nós trariamos* | |
| | *trarias* | ,, | | *trarieis* | |
| | *traria* | ,, | | *trarião* | |

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu trouxer* | when I shall bring, &c. | |
| | *trouxeres* | ,, | |
| | *trouxer* | ,, | |
| Plur. | *quando nós trouxermos* | ,, | |
| | *trouxerdes* | ,, | |
| | *trouxerem* | ,, | |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*trazer* to bring

GERUND.

*trazendo* bringing

PARTICIPLE.

masc. *trazido*, fem. *trazida*, brought

---

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *VER* TO SEE.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu vêjo* | I see | Plur. | *nós vêmos* | |
| | *vês* | thou seest | | *vêdes* | |
| | *vê* | he sees, &c. | | *vêem* | |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu via* | I did see, &c. |
| | *vias* | ,, |
| | *via*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu vi* | I saw, &c. | Plur. | *nós vimos* |
| | *viste* | ,, | | *vistes* |
| | *vio* | ,, | | *virão* |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho visto* | I have seen, &c. |
| | *tens visto*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu verei* | I shall see, &c. |
| | *verás*, &c. | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *vê tu* | see thou |
| | *vêja elle* | let him see |
| Plur. | *vejâmos nós* | let us see |
| | *vêde vós* | see you |
| | *vêjão elles* | let them see |

*Optative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu vêja* | that I may see, &c. | Plur. | *que nós vejâmos* |
| | *vêjas* | ,, | | *vejáis* |
| | *vêja* | ,, | | *vêjão* |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu vira*, or *visse* | that I might see, &c. |
| | *viras*, or *visses* | ,, |
| | *vira*, or *visse* | ,, |

Plur. { *que nós víramos*, or *vissemos* that we might see, &c.
*vireis*, or *visseis* ,,
*vissem* ,,

SECOND IMPERFECT.

Sing. { *eu veria* I should see, &c.
*verias* ,,
*veria* ,,

Plur. { *nós veriamos*
*verieis*
*verião*

FUTURE.

Sing. { *quando eu vir* when I shall see, &c.
*vires* ,,
*vir* ,,

Plur. { *quando nós virmos* ,,
*virdes* ,,
*virem* ,,

*Infinite Mood.*

PRESENT.

*vêr* to see

GERUND.

*vendo* seeing

PARTICIPLE.

masc. *visto*, fem. *vista*, seen.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds *antevêr*, *prevêr*, and *revêr*.

The verb *prevêr, to foresee*, is conjugated in the present indicative thus:

Sing. { *eu prevêjo* I foresee, &c.
*prevês* ,,
*prevê* ,,

Plur. { *nós prevêmos*
*prevêdes*
*prevêem*

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *DIZER*, TO SAY.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu digo* | I say, &c. | Plur. | *nós dizemos* | |
| | *dizes* | ,, | | *dizeis* | |
| | *diz* | ,, | | *dizem* | |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu dizia* | I did say, &c. |
| | *dizias*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu disse* | I said, &c. | Plur. | *nós dessémos* | |
| | *dissésteste* | ,, | | *dissésteste* | |
| | *disse* | ,, | | *dissérão* | |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho ditto* | I have said, &c. |
| | *tens ditto*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu direi* | I shall, *or* will say, &c. |
| | *dirás*, &c. | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *dize tu* | say thou |
| | *diga elle* | let him say |
| Plur. | *digâmos nós* | let us say |
| | *dizei vós* | say you |
| | *digão elles* | let them say |

*Optative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu diga* | that I may say, &c. |
| | *digas*, &c. | ,, |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu disséra*, or *dissésse* | that I might say, &c. |
| | *disséras, or dissésses* | ,, |
| | *disséra*, or *dissésse* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós disséramos*, or *disséssemos* | ,, |
| | *dissêreis*, or *disseseis* | ,, |
| | *dissérão*, or *dissessem* | ,, |

SECOND IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu diria* | I should say, &c. |
| | *dirias*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu dissér* | when I shall say, &c. |
| | *disséres* | ,, |
| | *dissér*, &c. | ,, |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*dizer* to say

GERUND.

*dizendo* saying

PARTICIPLES.

masc. *ditto*, fem. *ditta*, said

Observe that the compounds *desdizer*, to unsay, and *contradizer*, to contradict, are in all points conjugated like *dizer*.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *QUERER*, TO BE WILLING.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu quero* | I will, or am willing, &c. |
| | *queres* | ,, |
| | *quer* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós queremos* | ,, |
| | *quereis* | ,, |
| | *querem* | ,, |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu queria* | I was willing, &c. |
| | *querias*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu quiz* | I have been willing, &c. |
| | *quizeste* | ,, |
| | *quiz* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós quizémos* | ,, |
| | *quizéstes* | ,, |
| | *quizérão* | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu quererei* | I shall be willing, &c. |
| | *quererás*, &c. | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *queiras tu* | be thou willing |
| | *queira elle* | let him be willing |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *queirâmos nós* | let us be willing |
| | *queirais vós* | be you willing |
| | *queirão elles* | let them be willing |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu queira* | that I may be willing, &c. |
| | *queirás*, &c. | ,, |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu quizera*, or *quizesse* | that I were willing |
| | *quizeras*, or *quizesses* | thou wert willing |
| | *quizera*, or *quizesse* | he were willing |
| Plur. | *que nós quizeramos*, or *quizessemos* | we were willing |
| | *quizereis*, or *quizesseis* | you were willing |
| | *quizerão*, or *quizessem* | they were willing |

SECOND IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu quereria* | I would, *or* should be willing, &c. |
| | *quererias*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *quando eu quizer* | when I shall be willing, &c. |
| | *quizeres*, &c. | ,, |

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*querer* to be willing

GERUND.

*querendo* being willing

PARTICIPLE.

*querido* been willing

*Quer* is sometimes a conjunction, when repeated in a sentence, and when it is rendered into English by *whether* and *or;* as, *quer o tenhais feito, quer não,* whether you have done that or no. But when it is not repeated and is joined to the particle *se,* it is sometimes rendered into English by *at least;* as, *um se quer,* one at least: and sometimes by *however,* when joined to the particle *que;* as, *como quer que seja,* however it be. In all which cases, it is not to be confounded with the third person singular of the indicative of the verb *querer.*

The verb *querer* is sometimes used with the particle *se* instead of the verb *devèr;* as, *as cousas não se querem feitas á pressa,* things must not be done in a hurry.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *VALER,* TO BE WORTH.

I shall give no other tenses of this verb than the present indicative, the imperative, and the present of the subjunctive, none but these being irregular.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu valho* | I am worth, &c. |
| | *vales* | ,, |
| | *vale* | ,, |
| Plur. | *nós valemos* | ,, |
| | *valeis* | ,, |
| | *valem* | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *vale tu* | be thou worth |
| | *valha elle* | let him be worth |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *valhâmos nós* | let us be worth |
| | *valei vós* | be you worth |
| | *valhão elles* | let them be worth |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu valha* | that I may be worth, &c. |
| | *valhas* | ,, |
| | *valha* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós valhamos* | ,, |
| | *valhais* | ,, |
| | *valhão* | ,, |

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *PERDER*, TO LOSE.

This verb changes the *d* into *c* before the *a* and the *o*, namely, in the first person singular of the present indicative; third person singular, and first and third persons plural of the imperative; and in the whole of the present subjunctive. It is conjugated in the following manner:—

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu perco* | I lose, &c. | Plur. | *nós perdemos* |
| | *perdes* | ,, | | *perdeis* |
| | *perde* | ,, | | *perdem* |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *perde tu* | lose thou |
| | *perca elle* | let him lose |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Plur. | *percamos nós* | let us lose |
| | *perdei vós* | lose you |
| | *percão elles* | let them lose |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu perca* | that I may lose, &c. |
| | *percas* | ,, |
| | *perca*, &c. | ,, |

The compounds of the verb *ter*—as, *contenho*, I contain; *detenho*, I detain, &c—are conjugated the same as *ter*.

Some verbs of the conjugation ending in *er* are only irregular in the participle passive: as, *escrito*, from *escrever*; *absolto*, from *absolver*.

Those that have the *j* before *o* in the present indicative, change the *j* into *g* in all tenses and persons, in which the *j* would otherwise meet with the vowels *i* or *e*: as, *eleger*, to elect; *eu elejo*, *tu eleges*, &c., I elect, &c.

| IMPERFECT. | PRETERDEFINITE. |
|---|---|
| *elegia*, &c. | *elegi*, *elegeste*, &c., I elected, &c. |

The verbs ending in *eio* in the present indicative change that termination into *ia* in the imperfect, and into *i* in the preterdefinite, and are so conjugated.

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu leio* | I read, &c. | Plur. | *lêmos* |
| | *lês* | ,, | | *lêdes* |
| | *lê* | ,, | | *lêem* |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu lia* | I did read, &c. |
| | *lias*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERDEFINITE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu li* | I read, &c. |
| | *lêste*, &c. | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *lê tu* | read thou | Plur. | *leâmos nós* | let us read |
| | *lea elle* | let him read | | *lêde vós* | read you |
| | | | | *leão elles* | let them read |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu lea* | that I may read, &c. |
| | *leas* | ,, |
| | *lea*, &c. | ,, |

You must observe that they lose the *i* through all the other moods and tenses. The verb *crer*, to believe, is conjugated in the same manner.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN *IR*.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu vou* | I go | Plur. | *nós vamos* | we go |
| | *vais* | thou goest | | *ides* | you go |
| | *vai* | he goes | | *vão* | they go |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu hia* | I did go, &c. | Plur. | *nós hiamos* | |
| | *hias* | ,, | | *hieis* | |
| | *hia* | ,, | | *hião* | |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu fui* | I went | Plur. | *nós fômos* | we went |
| | *fôste* | thou wentst | | *fôstes* | you went |
| | *foi* | he went | | *fôrão* | they went |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho ido* | I have gone, &c. |
| | *tens*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tinha ido* | I had gone, &c. |
| | *tinhas*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu irei* | I shall *or* will go, &c. |
| | *irás*, &c. | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *vai tu* | go thou | Plur. | *vamos nós* | let us go |
| | *va elle* | let him go | | *ide vós* | go ye |
| | | | | *vão elles* | let them go |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu va* | that I may go, &c. |
| | *vas* | ,, |
| | *va* | ,, |
| Plur. | *que nós vâmos* | ,, |
| | *vades* | ,, |
| | *vão* | ,, |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu fôra*, or *fôsse* | that I might go, &c. |
| | *fôras*, or *fôsses* | ,, |
| | *fôra*, or *fôsse* | ,, |

Plur. { *que nós fôramos*, or *fôssemos* that we might go, &c.
*fôreis*, or *fôsseis* ,,
*forão*, or *fôssem* ,,

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

Sing. { *eu iria* I should *or* would go, &c.
*irias*, &c. ,,

PRETERPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *ido* and the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *ido* and the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *ido* and the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

FUTURE.

Sing. { *quando eu fôr* when I shall go, &c.
*fôres* ,,
*fôr* ,,
Plur. { *quando nós fôrmos* ,,
*fôrdes* ,,
*fôrem* ,,

SECOND FUTURE.

Sing. { *quando eu tiver ido* when I shall have gone, &c.
*tiveres*, &c. ,,

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*ir* to go

GERUND.

*indo* going

PARTICIPLE.

*ido* gone

---

*VIR*, TO COME.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu venho* | I come, &c. | Plur. | *nós vimos* |
| | *vens* | ,, | | *vindes* |
| | *vem* | ,, | | *vêm* |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu vinha* | I did come, &c. | Plur. | *nós vinhamos* |
| | *vinhas* | ,, | | *vinheis* |
| | *vinha* | ,, | | *vinhão* |

PRETERDEFINITE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu vim* | I came, &c. | Plur. | *nós viemos* |
| | *vieste* | ,, | | *viestes* |
| | *veio* | ,, | | *vierão* |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu tenho vindo* | I have come, &c. |
| | *tens vindo*, &c. | ,, |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu virei* | I shall come, &c. |
| | *virás*, &c. | ,, |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *vem tu* | come thou | Plur. | *venhâmos nos* | let us come |
| | *venha elle* | let him come | | *vinde vós* | come you |
| | | | | *vênhão elles* | let them come |

*Optative Mood.*

PRESENT.

*que eu venha*, &c.

IMPERFECT.

*que eu viera*, or *viesse*, &c.

SECOND IMPERFECT.

*viria*, *virias*, &c.

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*vir* to come

GERUND.

*vindo* coming

PARTICIPLE.

*vindo* come

The compounds of *vir*—as, *convir*, to be convenient; *sobrevir*, to happen unexpectedly—are conjugated in the same manner.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS *MENTIR*, TO LIE; *SENTIR*, TO FEEL; *SERVIR*, TO SERVE; *FERIR*, TO WOUND.

The verbs change the *i* of the first person singular of the present tense, indicative, into *e* in the other

persons of the same tense, as well as in the other tenses and moods, except in the imperative and the present subjunctive. They are conjugated thus:

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu minto* | *tu mentes* | *elle mente*, &c. |
| | *eu sinto* | *tu sentes* | *elle sente*, &c. |
| | *eu sirvo* | *tu serves* | *elle serve*, &c. |

*Imperative Mood.*

*mente tu, minta elle, mintamos nós, menti vós, mintão elles.*
*sente tu, sinta elle, sintamos nós, senti vós, sintão elles.*
*serve tu, sirva elle, sirvamos nos, servi vos, sirvão elles.*

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu minta* | *tu mintas*, &c. |
| | *eu sinta* | *tu sintas*, &c. |
| | *eu sirva* | *tu sirvas*, &c. |

The compounds *desmentir*, *assentir*, *consentir*, *dissentir*, *presentir*, are conjugated like *mentir* and *sentir*; *and also* the verbs *afferir*, *referir*, *conferir*, *deferir*, *differir*, *inferir*.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS *AFFLIGIR*, TO AFFLICT; *CORRIGIR*, TO CORRECT; *FINGIR*, TO FEIGN; *UNGIR*, TO ANOINT; *COMPUNGIR*, *FRIGIR*, *DIRIGIR*, *TINGIR*, *CINGIR*, &c.

These verbs change the *g* of the infinitive mood into *j* in those tenses were the *g* would otherwise meet with the vowel *o*, as in the first person singular of the present indicative, *affijo;* or *a*, as in the third person of the imperative in both numbers, in the first person plural of the same tense, and in the present subjunctive.

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *SEGUIR*, TO FOLLOW.

This verb changes the *e* of the infinitive mood into *i* in the first person singular of the present indicative, *eu sigo*, I follow; in the present subjunctive, *que eu siga*, that I may follow; and in the imperative it is conjugated thus: *segue tu, siga elle, sigamos nós, segui vós, sigão elles.*

Observe that the *u* is lost in those tenses where it would otherwise meet with the vowels *o* and *a*, as you see in the examples: and this observation applies also to the verbs *distinguir*, to distinguish; *extinguir*, to extinguish, &c.

The compounds are *perseguir*, to persecute; *conseguir*, to obtain; *proseguir*, to pursue.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *OUVIR*, TO HEAR.

This verb changes the *v* of the infinitive mood into *ç* in the first person singular of the present indicative, *eu ouço*, I hear; *tu ouves*, &c.; in the present subjunctive and in the imperative mood it is conjugated thus: *ouve tu, ouça elle, ouçamos nós, ouvi vós, oução elles*, hear thou, &c.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *DORMIR*, TO SLEEP.

This verb changes the *o* of the infinitive mood into *u* in the first person singular of the present indicative, thus: *eu durmo, tu dormes, elle dorme*, &c., I sleep, &c. In the present subjunctive, *que eu durma*, &c., that I may sleep; and in the imperative mood it is conjugated thus: *dorme tu, durma elle, durmamos nós, dormi vós, durmão elles*, sleep thou, &c.

### OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *FUGIR*, TO FLY AWAY.

This verb is irregular in the present indicative, and is thus conjugated: *fujo, foges, foge, fugimos, fugis, fogem*, I ran away, &c. It is also irregular in the imperative mood, where it is conjugated thus: *foge tu, fuja elle, fujamos nós, fugi vós, fujão elles.* Finally, it is irregular in the present subjunctive; *que eu fuja, fujas*, &c.

It keeps the *u* in all other tenses and moods, as also the *g*.

The verb *surgir*, to arrive, *or* to come to an anchor, has the same irregularity, and makes *surto* in the participle passive.

The verbs *subir, cubrir, encubrir, descubrir, acudir, bullir, sumir, consumir, cuspir, construir, tossir*, &c., have the same irregularity in regard to the letter *u*.

---

### OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *PEDIR*, TO ASK.

This verb is irregular in the first person singular of the present indicative and subjunctive, as well as in the imperative, in which it changes the *d* into *ç*.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu peço* | I ask, &c. | Plur. | *nós pedimos* |
| | *tu pedes* | ,, | | *vós pedis* |
| | *elle pede* | ,, | | *elles pedem* |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *pede tu* | ask thou | Plur. | *peçamos nós* let us ask |
| | *peça elle* | let him ask | | *pedi vós* ask you |
| | | | | *peção elles* let them ask |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu peça* | that I may ask, &c. | Plur. | *que nós peçamos* | |
| | *peças* | ,, | | *peçais* | |
| | *peça* | ,, | | *peção* | |

In like manner is conjugated the verb *medir*, to measure : *eu meço, tu medes*, &c.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *VESTIR*, TO DRESS.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu visto* | I dress, &c. | Plur. | *nós vestimos* | |
| | *vestes* | ,, | | *vestis* | |
| | *veste* | ,, | | *vestem* | |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *veste tu* | dress thou | Plur. | *vistamos nós* | let us dress |
| | *vista elle* | let him dress | | *vesti vós* | dress you |
| | | | | *vistão elles* | let them dress |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu vista* | that I may dress, &c. | Plur. | *que nós vistamos* | |
| | *vistas* | ,, | | *vistais* | |
| | *vista* | ,, | | *vistão* | |

In all other tenses and moods it keeps the letter *e*; and in like manner is conjugated the verb *despir*.

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *SORTIR*, TO FURNISH.

Feijóo says that the *o* of this verb is to be changed into *u* in those tenses where the *t* is followed by *e* or *a*; and that it is to be kept when the *t* is followed by *i*; but in the *Fabula dos Planetas* we read, *surtio effeito*, it took effect; and *Andrade*, 2. *part. Apologet.*, we read, *não sortirão effeito*, where the verb *sortirão* is in the same tense, viz., in the preterperfect definite; therefore nothing can be determined about the irregularity of this verb.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *CARPIR*, TO WEEP.

This verb is defective, and is only used in those tenses and persons where the *p* is followed by *i*; as, *carpimos*, *carpis*, we weep, you weep. Preterimperfect, *carpia*, *carpias*, &c., I did weep, &c.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *REPETIR*, TO REPEAT.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu repito* | I repeat, &c. | Plur. | *nós repetimos* |
| | *repetes* | ,, | | *repetis* |
| | *repete* | ,, | | *repetem* |

IMPERFECT.

*repetia*, *repetias*, &c.

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*repeti*, *repetiste*, &c.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. { *repete tu* repeat thou, &c. / *repita elle* ,, } Plur. *repitamos nós*, &c.

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

Sing. { *que eu repita* that I may repeat, &c. / *repitas*, &c. ,, }

IMPERFECT.

*que eu repetira*, or *repetisse*, &c. that I might repeat, &c.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS *SAHIR*, TO GO OUT, AND *CAHIR*, TO FALL.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

Sing. { *eu saio* I go out, &c. / *sahes* ,, / *sahe* ,, } Plur. { *nós sahimos* / *sahis* / *sahem* }

PRETERIMPERFECT.

*sahia*, *sahias*, &c.

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*sahi*, *sahiste*, &c.

*Imperative Mood.*

Sing. { *sahe tu* / *saia elle* } Plur. { *saiamos nós* / *sahi vós* / *saião elles* }

*Subjunctive Mood.*

*que eu saia, saias,* &c.

This is the common way of writing the irregular tenses of the verb *sahir*, as well as those of the verb *cahir*, viz., *eu caio, tu cahes,* &c., I fall, &c., according to Feijóo.

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *ORDIR*, TO WARP IN A LOOM.

Feijóo says that this verb changes the *o* into *u* in those persons where it would otherwise meet with the syllables, *da, de, do.*

---

OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *ADVERTIR*, TO WARN.

*Advertir* is irregular in the following tenses, only by changing *vir* into *ver.*

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu advirto* | I warn, &c. | Plur. | *nós advertimos* |
| | *advertes* | ,, | | *advertis* |
| | *adverte* | ,, | | *advertem* |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *adverte tu* | warn thou, &c. | Plur. | *advirtamos nós* |
| | *advirta elle* | ,, | | *adverti vós* |
| | | | | *advertão elles* |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu advirta* | that I may warn, &c. | Plur. | *que nós advirtamos* |
| | *advirtas* | ,, | | *advirtais* |
| | *advirta* | ,, | | *advirtão* |

---

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB *PÔR*, TO PLACE, OR PUT.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *en ponho* | I put, &c. | Plur. | *nós pômos* |
| | *pões* | ,, | | *pondes* |
| | *põe* | ,, | | *põem* |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu punha* | I did put, &c. | Plur. | *nós punhamos* |
| | *punhas* | ,, | | *punheis* |
| | *punha* | ,, | | *punhão* |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu puz* | I put, &c. | Plur. | *nós puzémos* |
| | *puzéste* | ,, | | *puzéstes* |
| | *pôz* | ,, | | *puzérão* |

PRETERPERFECT.

It is composed of the present indicative of the auxiliary verb *ter*, and the participle *posto*.

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

Composed of the participle *posto*, and the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

FUTURE.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu porei* | I shall *or* will put, &c. | Plur. | *nós porêmos* |
| | *porás* | ,, | | *poreis* |
| | *porá* | ,, | | *porão* |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *põe* | put thou, &c. | Plur. | *ponhâmos nós* |
| | *ponha elle* | ,, | | *ponde vós* |
| | | | | *ponhão elles* |

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu ponha* | that I may put, &c. |
| | *tu ponhas*, &c. | ,, |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu puzera*, or *puzesse* | that I might put, &c. |
| | *tu puzeras*, or *puzesses*, &c. | ,, |

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu poria* | I should *or* would put, &c. |
| | *tu porias*, &c. | ,, |

PRETERPERFECT.

It is composed of the participle *posto*, and the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

Composed of the participle *posto*, and the first preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

Composed of the participle *posto*, and the second preterimperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

FUTURE.

Sing. { *quando eu puzer* — when I shall put, &c.
*tu puzeres*, &c. — ,,

SECOND FUTURE.

Composed of the participle *posto*, and the future subjunctive of the auxiliary verb *ter*.

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*pôr* — to put

GERUND.

*pondo* — putting

PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

*posto* — put

After the same manner are conjugated the verbs derived from *pôr:* as, *compôr*, to compose; *dispôr*, to dispose; *propôr*, to propose, &c.

Some verbs are irregular only in the participle passive: as, *aberto*, from *abrir; escrito*, from *escrever*, &c.

---

## OF NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are those which make a complete sense of themselves, and do not govern any case after them, like the active verbs: as, *dormir*, to sleep; *andar*, to go; *tremer*, to tremble, &c. There are, however, some neuter verbs which may govern an accusative: as, *dormir um somno profundo*, to sleep soundly; *eu fui andando meu caminho, e não disse uma palavra*, I went my way and said

not a word. Neuter verbs may also be defined as those which, in their compound tenses, are seldom conjugated with the verb *ser*, to be; as, I sleep, I tremble, I speak, &c. We may indeed say, *eu tenho dormido*, I have slept, *eu tenho tremido*, I have trembled; but not, I am slept, &c. I said *seldom*, because sometimes neuter verbs may be conjugated with the verb *ser;* as, *ser bem fallado*, to have a good name.

It is necessary to be acquainted with the nature of a neuter verb, to avoid mistakes in the participle, as may be seen in the Syntax of Participles.

---

## OF RECIPROCAL VERBS.

The term Reciprocal is given to such verbs as reflect the action upon the agent, and are conjugated through all their tenses with the conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, &c.

EXAMPLE.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me arrependo* | I repent, &c. |
| | *tu te arrependes* | ,, |
| | *elle se arrepende*, &c. | ,, |

IMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me arrependia*, &c. | I did repent, &c. |

and so of the rest.

Yet it is to be observed that the conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, &c., may be placed either before or after the verb in the indicative, and consequently we may say, *eu me*

*lembro*, or *eu lembro-me*, I remember; *me lembrei*, or *lembrei-me*, I remembered, &c. But in the imperative they should be placed after the verb, as in the following

EXAMPLE.

Sing. { *lembra-te tu* remember thou, &c. / *lembre-se elle* ,, } Plur. { *lembremo-nos nós* / *lembrai-vos vós* / *lembrem-se elles* }

In which example you will observe, also, that the first person plural, which in the other verbs is like the first person plural of the present subjunctive, has the last consonant, *s*, cut off: and so from *lembrêmos*, we cut off the *s* to make *lembrêmo-nos*; and from *arrependâmos*, we make *arrependâmo-nos*, &c. In regard to the infinitive, we may say, *é necessario arrepender-se dos peccados*, it is necessary to repent of sins; *é necessario lembrar-se*, it is necessary to remember; and not *se arrepender*, or *se lembrar*. In like manner we may say *lembrando-me*, remembering, and not *me lembrando*. But the present infinitive may be preceded by the particle *para* (which forms the Portuguese supine), and then the conjunctive pronoun may be placed either before or after it; and we may say *para lembrar-se*, or *para se-lembrar*, to remember, *or* in order to remember.

In the subjunctive mood, you must put the conjunctive pronoun before the present; but you must carefully observe that the conjunctive pronouns must be placed before it when preceded by the particles *se*, if, *que*, that: thus we may say, *que eu me lembrasse*, *se eu me lembrasse*, that I might remember, &c.; but not *que eu lembrasse me*, &c. But when the first preterimperfect is not preceded by any particle, then you must place the conjunctive pronoun after it; as, *arrependera-me eu disso*, I wish I repented it.

In the second preterimperfect we may place the conjunctive pronouns either before or after it, therefore you may say *arrependeria-me se*, &c., or *eu me arrependeria se*, &c., I should repent if, &c.

In the future you must always place the conjunctive pronouns before it: thus, *quando eu me lembrar*, when I shall remember; but not *quando eu lembrar-me.*

*Note.* All the verbs active may become reciprocals.

EXAMPLE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me amo* | I love myself |
| | *tu te amas* | thou lovest thyself |
| | *elle se ama* | he loves himself |
| Plur. | *nós nos amamos*, &c. | we love ourselves, &c. |

---

CONJUGATION OF THE RECIPROCAL VERB, *IR-SE*, TO GO AWAY.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me vou* | I go away |
| | *tu te vais*, &c. | thou goest away, &c. |

PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me ía* | I did go away |
| | *tu te ías*, &c. | thou didst go away, &c. |

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me fui* | I went away |
| | *tu te fôste*, &c. | thou wentest away, &c. |

PRETERPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me tenho ido* | I am gone away |
| | *tu te tens ido*, &c. | thou hast gone away, &c. |

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me tinha ido* | I was gone away, *or* I had gone away |
| | *tu te tinhas ido*, &c. | thou hadst gone away, &c. |

FUTURE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me irei* | I shall *or* will go away |
| | *tu te irás*, &c. | thou shalt go away, &c. |

*Imperative Mood.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *vai-te* | go thou away |
| | *va-se* | let him go away |
| Plur. | *vamo-nos* | let us go away |
| | *ide-vos* | go away, get away, *or* get you [gone |
| | *vão-se* | let them go away |

*Subjunctive Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *que eu me vá* | that I may go away |
| | *que tu te vas*, &c. | that thou mayest go away, &c. |

FIRST PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me fôra*, or *me fôsse* | that I might go away |
| | *tu te fôras*, or *te fôsses*, &c. | that thou mightest go away, &c. |

SECOND PRETERIMPERFECT.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *eu me iria* | I would go away |
| | *tu te irias*, &c. | thou wouldst go away, &c. |

PRETERPERFECT.

*que eu me tenha ido*, &c. that I have gone away, &c.

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

*que eu me tivera*, or *me tivesse ido*, &c. that I had gone away, &c.

SECOND PRETERPLUPERFECT.

*eu me teria ido*, &c. I should have gone away, &c.

FUTURE.

*quando eu me fôr*, &c. when I shall go away, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

*quando eu me tiver ido*, &c. when I shall have gone away, &c.

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*ir-se* to go away

PRETERPERFECT.

*ter-se-ido* to have gone away

*Participles.*

PRESENT.

*que se vai* that goes away

PRETERIT.

*ido* gone away

FUTURE.

*que ha de ir-se* that is to go away

GERUNDS.

*índo-se* going away

*tendo-se ido* having gone away

SUPINE.

*para ir-se* to go, *or* in order to go away

Observe, that in the compound tenses the pronouns *me*, *te*, &c., are placed before the auxiliary verb.

2ndly. This verb is also used in speaking of vessels to signify their being leaky; as, *vái-se a cuba*, the tub leaks. It is also used before the gerunds: as, *o inverno vai-se acabando*, the winter is drawing to an end; *elles vão-se preparando*, they are preparing themselves: in which examples the verb is to be rendered into English by *to be*, and without the addition of the adverb *away*. Sometimes it is placed before the present infinitive: as, *ir-se deitár*, to go to bed.

---

OF THE RECIPROCAL VERB *VIR-SE*, TO COME AWAY.

This verb is to be conjugated like the verb *vir;* but you must place the conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, &c., according to the observations made above.

---

OF THE RECIPROCAL VERB *AVIR-SE*, TO AGREE.

This is a compound verb, which is to be conjugated by putting the particle *a* before the verb *vir* in all its tenses and moods, attending to the observations already made concerning the conjunctive pronouns, and also in regard to the reciprocal verb *haver-se*, to behave, in the conjugation of which no more is necessary than to add the conjunctive pronouns to the verb *haver*.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

There are three sorts of impersonal verbs, which have only the third person singular.

The first are properly impersonals of themselves; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *succede* | it happens |
| *basta* | it is enough, *or* it suffices |
| *chove* | it rains |
| *troveja* | it thunders |

The second are derived from the active verbs, followed by the particle *se*, which renders them impersonal; as, *ama-se*, they love; *diz-se*, they say; *nota-se*, it is noted. They are also called passive impersonals.

The third, which have a great affinity with reciprocal verbs, are conjugated with the conjunctive pronouns, *me*, *te*, *lhe*, *nos*, *vos*, *lhes*; as, *doe-me*, *doe-te*, *doe-lhe*, &c.

THE IMPERSONAL VERBS OF THEMSELVES ARE:

*convêm*, it is convenient
*succede*, it happens, *or* it falls out
*está-me bem*, it becomes me
*basta*, it is enough
*chovisca*, it mizzles
*chove*, or *cahe pedra*, it hails
*gea*, it freezes
*neva*, it snows
*fuzila*, or *relampeja*, it lightens
*importa*, it matters, it concerns
*parece*, it seems

and the like, which are conjugated with the third person singular of each tense; as,

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

*chove* it rains

IMPERFECT.

*chovía* it did rain

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*choveo* it rained

PRETERPERFECT.

*tem chovido* it has rained

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

*tinha chovido* it had rained

FUTURE.

*choverá* it shall *or* will rain

*Imperative Mood.*

*chôva* let it rain

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

*que chôva* that it may rain

IMPERFECT.

*que chovêra*, or *chovêsse* that it might rain

SECOND IMPERFECT.

*chovería* it should rain

FUTURE.

*quando chover* when it shall rain

SECOND FUTURE.

*quando tiver chovido* when it shall have rained

*Infinitive Mood.*

PRESENT.

*chover* to rain

The particle *se*, which composes the second sort of impersonal verbs, may be placed either before or after them: as, *diz-se*, they say; *sabe-se*, it is known; *sabia-se*, it was known; *logo se soube*, it was immediately known; *se diz*, it is said, &c., but sometimes they make no use of the particle *se*, and only puts the verb in the third person plural; as, *dizem*, instead of *se diz*, they say.

In like manner all the active verbs may become impersonal.

In regard to these verbs, observe, when the noun that follows them is in the singular number, you must put the verb in the singular; if the noun be in the plural, you must put the verb in the plural.

EXAMPLES.

*Louva-se o capitão*, they praise the captain.
*Louvão-se os capitães*, they praise the captains.
*Vê-se um homem*, they see a man.
*Vêem-se homens*, they see men.

When *lhe* is used after the word *se*, then *lhe* must be rendered into English by *his* or *her*; as, *louva-se-lhe o valor*, they praise his or her courage.

The third sort of impersonal verbs are such as are conjugated with the personal pronouns, *me*, *te*, *lhe*, &c., with the third person singular.

EXAMPLES.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

| | |
|---|---|
| *desagrada-me* | I am displeased, *or* it displeases me |
| *desagrada-te* | thou art displeased |
| *desagrada-lhe* | he *or* she is displeased |
| *desagrada-nos* | we are displeased |
| *desagrada-vos* | you are displeased |
| *desagrada-lhes* | they are displeased |

IMPERFECT.

*desagradava-me*, &c. I was displeased, &c.

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*desagradou-me*, &c. I was displeased, &c.

FUTURE.

*desagradar-me-ha*, &c. I shall be displeased, &c.

*Optative Mood.*

PRESENT.

*que me desagrade*, &c. that I may be displeased, &c.

IMPERFECT.

*que me desagradára*, or *desagradasse*, &c. } that I were displeased, &c.

SECOND IMPERFECT.

*desagradar-me-hia*, &c. I should be displeased, &c.

Conjugate after the same manner—

*succede-me*, it happens to me, &c.
*doe-me*, it grieves, *or* it pains me, &c.
*parece-me*, it seems to me, &c.
*he-me preciso*, it behoves me, &c.
*agrada-me*, it pleases me, &c.
*lembro-me*, I remember, &c.

Many of these impersonal verbs have the third person singular and plural ; as,

*doe-me a perna*, my leg pains me
*doem-me os olhos*, I have sore eyes
*o vosso vestido parece-me novo*, your coat appears new to me
*os vossos sapatos me parecem muito compridos*, your shoes seem to me too long.

OF THE VERB *SER*, TO BE.

The verb *ser* is also used as an impersonal, as will be seen in the following examples : *é tempo de levantar-se*, it is time to get up ; *era tempo de ir*, it was time to go, &c., and particularly when it is conjugated with the adjectives *preciso* or *necessario:* as, *é preciso*, or *necessario, fazer isto*, this must be done ; *era preciso*, or *necessario, escrever*, it was necessary to write ; *eu iria se fosse preciso*, I would go if it should be necessary ; *é preciso que eu va*, I must go ; *é preciso que eu leia*, I must read ; *é preciso que elle coma*, he must eat ; *seria preciso que eu fosse*, I should go. You see by the last examples, that when the verb *ser* and the adjective are before the conjunctive mood with the particle *que*, the conjunctive is rendered in English by the infinitive ; but if the verb *ser* is followed by the relative pronoun *quem*, it must then be rendered in English in the following manner : as, *eu sou quem tem feito aquillo*, it is I who have done that ; *tu és quem tem*, &c., it is thou who hast, &c.; *elle é quem tem*, &c., it is he who, &c.; *nos somos quem temos*, &c., it is we who have, &c.; *vós soís quem tendes*, &c., it is you who have, &c.; *elles são quem têm*, &c., it is they who have, &c.; *el Rei é quem o manda*, it is the King who orders it ; *ella é quem o crê*, it is she who believes it ; *elles são quem o fizerão ?* is it they who have done it ? *eu sou quem o fiz*, it was I who did it ; *então é quando eu tomo as minhas medidas*, it is then I take my measures ; *então é quando eu vi*, it was then I saw, or *only* then I saw. You may observe that *quando*, when, must be made use of in the last examples, although it is not required in English.

OF THE VERB *HAVER*, WHEN IT IS IMPERSONAL.

It is to be thus conjugated—

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

*ha*, or *não ha*, there is *or* there is not, *or* there are *or* there are not.

IMPERFECT.

*havia* there was *or* there were

PRETERPERFECT DEFINITE.

*houve* there was *or* there were

PRETERPERFECT.

*tem havido* there has been *or* there have been

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

*tinha havido* there had been

FUTURE.

*haverá* there shall be

*Imperative Mood.*

*haja* let there be

*Optative and Subjunctive Moods.*

PRESENT.

*que haja* that there may be

IMPERFECT.

*que houvera*, or *houvesse* that there were

SECOND IMPERFECT.

*haveria* there would be

PRETERPERFECT.

*que tenha havido* if there has been

PRETERPLUPERFECT.

*se tivesse havido* if there had been

FUTURE.

*quando houver* when there will, *or* shall be

SECOND FUTURE.

*quando tiver havido* when there shall have been

*Infinitive Mood.*

*haver* there to be

PRETERIT.

*ter havido* there to have been

GERUNDS.

*havendo* there being
*tendo havido* there having been

Those who learn Portuguese are greatly at a loss how to render the following expressions, *there is not ; is there ?* although there is nothing more easy. I have explained them at large in the following conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB, *there is, HA*, WHEN IT MARKS THE PLACE, THROUGH ALL ITS TENSES.

| | |
|---|---|
| There is (of it) | *ha lá d'isso* |
| There is not (of it) | *não ha lá d'isso* |
| Is there (of it ?) | *ha lá d'isso ?* |
| Is there not (of it?) | *não ha lá d'isso ?* |
| There was (of it) | *havia lá d'isso* |
| There was not (of it) | *não havia lá d'isso* |
| Was there (of it ?) | *havia lá d'isso ?* |
| Was there not (of it ?) | *não havia lá d'isso ?* |

| | |
|---|---|
| There was (of it) | *houve lá d'isso* |
| There was not (of it) | *não houve lá d'isso* |
| Was there (of it?) | *houve lá d'isso?* |
| Was there not (of it?) | *não houve lá d'isso?* |
| There shall be (of it) | *haverá lá d'isso* |
| There shall not be (of it) | *não haverá lá d'isso* |
| Shall there be (of it?) | *haverá lá d'isso?* |
| Shall there not be (of it?) | *não haverá lá d'isso?* |
| That there may be (of it) | *que haja lá d'isso* |
| That there may not be (of it) | *que não haja lá d'isso* |
| That there were (of it) | *que houvera*, or *houvesse lá d'isso* |
| That there were not (of it) | *não houvera* or *houvesse lá d'isso* |
| There would be (of it) | *haveria lá d'isso* |
| There would not be (of it) | *não haveria lá d'isso* |
| Would there not be (of it?) | *não haveria lá d'isso?* |
| If there had been (of it) | *se tivesse havido lá d'isso* |
| If there had not been (of it) | *se não tivesse havido lá d'isso* |
| There would have been (of it) | *teria havido lá d'isso* |
| There would not have been (of it) | *não teria havido lá d'isso* |
| Would there have been (of it?) | *teria havido lá d'isso?* |
| Would there not have been (of it?) | *não teria havido lá d'isso?* |
| When there will be (of it) | *quando houver lá d'isso* |
| When there will not be (of it) | *quando não houver lá d'isso* |

| | |
|---|---|
| When there will have been (of it) | *quando tiver havido lá d'isso* |
| When there will not have been (of it) | *quando não tiver havido lá d'isso* |
| Will there have been (of it?) | *terá havido lá d'isso?* |
| Will there not have been too much (of it?) | *não terá havido demasiado lá d'isso?* |
| Through there having been too much (of it) | *por ter havido lá demasiadamente d'isso* |
| There having been too little (of it) | *tendo havido lá muito pouco d'isso* |

When to *there is* or *there is not, there are* or *there are not, there was* or *were,* or *there was* or *were not,* &c., follows, *is there not? is there? are there not? are there? was,* or *were there not? was, or were there?* it is rendered in Portuguese by *é verdade? não é verdade?* or, *é assim? não é assim?* Examples: there is some, is there not? *ha lá d'isso, não é verdade?* there was not any, was there? *não houve lá d'isso, não e assim?* &c.

Most sentences beginning with the word *some* and the verb *to be* are expressed in Portuguese by the impersonal *ha:* as, some friends are false, *ha amigos falsos;* some Christians are unworthy of that name, *ha Christãos que não são dignos de tal nome.*

Observe that *ha* comes before a substantive even of the plural number.

The impersonal *ha* is besides used to denote a quantity of time, space, and number: as, *ha dez annos que morreo,* he has been dead these ten years, *or,* he died ten years ago; *ha trinta milhõens d'almas em França,* there are thirty millions of souls in France; *de Paris a Londres ha* 120 *legoas,* Paris is 120 leagues from London.

The question of space is asked thus, *quanto ha de Paris a Londres?* how far is Paris from London?

---

### OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB *HA-SE*, IT IS NECESSARY, *or* MUST.

This verb answers to the Italian *bisogna* and to the French *il faut*, and always requires to be intercepted with the preposition *de*, thus:—present, *ha-de-se;* preterite, *havia-de-se*—being then followed by the infinitive. It denotes the necessity of doing something, and is rendered in English by *must*, and sometimes by the verb *to be*, through all its tenses, with the words *necessary*, *requisite*, *needful*, &c.; and as it denotes the necessity of doing something in general, without specifying who *must*, therefore the agent coming before *must* is *anybody*, according to the subject of the sentence; as,

*Ha-de-se fazer aquillo*, one, *or* somebody, must do that.
*Ha-de-se ir*, one, *or* somebody must go.

Sometimes the verb coming after this impersonal is rendered in English by the passive voice; as, *ha-de-se fazer isto*, this must be done.

In the conjugation of this verb, you must use the verb *to be* with the word *necessary*, as I have already said.

EXAMPLE.—Present, *ha-de-se*, it is necessary. Imperfect, *havia-de-se*, it was necessary; and so through all the tenses and moods.

Sometimes the infinitive that follows the particle *de* is placed between the impersonal and its particle *se;* as, *ha-de-achar-se*, it must be found: and sometimes the infinitive precedes the impersonal and this follows the particle

*se ;* as, *achar-se-ha*, it will be found : in this case you must not join the particle *de* to it. Observe that the infinitive may be also placed between the imperfect tense of this impersonal verb and its particle *se ;* as, *havia de achar-se*, it was to be found : but when the infinitive precedes both the impersonal and its particle *se*, then you must put the particle *se* before the impersonal, and make use of the imperfect *hia*, and not *havia* ; thus we must say *achar-se-hia*, and not *achar-se havia*.

---

### OF THE DEFECTIVE VERBS *CARPIR*, TO WEEP, AND *SOER*, TO BE WONT.

The verb *carpir* is used only in those tenses and persons where the *p* is followed by an *i ;* as, *carpimos*, *carpis*, we weep, you weep. Preterimp. *carpia*, *carpias*, &c., I did weep, &c.

The verb *soer* is only used in the third persons of the present indicative, of the preterimperfect of the same mood, and in the gerund : as, *elle soe*, he is wont ; *elles soem*, they are wont. Imperf. *elle soía*, he was wont ; *elles soião*, they were wont. Gerund, *soendo*, being wont.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### OF THE PARTICIPLES.

THE participle is a tense of the infinitive, which serves to form the preterperfects and preterpluperfects of all the verbs: as, *tenha amado*, I have loved; *tinha amado*, I had loved.

*Amado* is a participle, and all the verbs in *ar* form the participle in *ado;* as, *amado*, *cantado*, &c.

Such participle is likewise a noun adjective. Examples: *Homem amado*, *mulher amada; livros amados*, *letras amadas.*

Some participles are frequently abridged; as, *envolto* or *envolvido*, *corrupto* or *corrompido*, *enxuto* or *enxugado*, and several others, which the use of authors will point out to you.

The regular verbs ending in *er* or *ir* form the participle in *ido;* as, *vendido*, *recibido*, *luzedo*, *nutrido*, &c.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### OF THE ADVERBS.

THE adverb is that which gives more or less force to the verb or the adjective.

The adverb has the same effect with the verb as the adjective with the substantive: it explains the accidents and circumstances of the action of the verb.

There are a great many sorts; as, adverbs of time, place, quantity, &c.

Adverbs of time: as, at present, *presentemente;* now, *agora;* yesterday, *hontem;* to-day, *hoje;* never, *nunca;* always, *sempre;* in the meantime, *entretanto.*

Adverbs of place: as, where, *onde;* here, *aqui;* from whence, *donde;* there, *ali;* from hence, *daqui;* above, *em cima;* below, *em baixo;* far, *longe;* near, *perto.*

Adverbs of quantity: as, how much, *quanto;* how many, *quantos,* or *quantas;* so much, *tanto;* much, *muito;* little, *pouco.*

A great many adverbs are formed from adjectives, changing *o* into *amente: santo, santamente,* holily; *rico, ricamente,* richly; *douto, doutamente,* learnedly.

From adjectives in *e* or *l* we likewise form adverbs, by adding *mente* to them; as,

*Constante, constantemente,* constantly.
*Diligente, diligentemente,* diligently.
*Prudente, prudentemente,* prudently.
*Fiel, fielmente,* faithfully.

In order to assist the memory of those who are learning the Portuguese language, I have here collected a large number of adverbs, which, by frequent repetition, may be easily retained, especially those terminating in *mente.*

A COLLECTION OF ADVERBS.

*Abundantemente,* abundantly
*Com razão, justamente,* justly
*Absolutamente,* absolutely
*Antigamente,* anciently
*De proposito,* purposely
*Adeus,* farewell
*Admiravelmente, Maravilhosamente, ás mil maravilhas,* admirably
*Astutamente,* cunningly
*Agora,* or *por hora,* now at this time
*Já, para já,* now, immediately

*Com condição*, upon condition
*De parte*, aside
*De travéz*, askance, askew; as, *olhar de travéz*, to look askew, *or* askance
*Actualmente*, at present
*Quasi*, pretty near, almost
*Então*, then
*Desde então*, since that time
*Desde quando?* since when
*De quando ha?* from what time? how long?
*De quando em quando*, now and then, ever and anon
*Quando bem*, or *ainda quando*, albeit, although it should be
*Quando muito*, at the most
*Quando menos*, at least
*Cá*, here *or* hither
*Lá*, there
*Ali*, there in that place
*Ahi*, there, expresses the place where stands the person spoken to; as, *ahi onde éstas*, there where you are
*Acolá*, there
*Atraiçoadamente*, treacherously
*De maravilha*, very seldom
*A miudo*, often
*Assim*, so
*Tão*, so
*A' pressa*, in haste
*Facilmente*, easily
*Ao avesso*, or *ás avessas*, the wrong side outward
*De improviso*, or *improvisamente*, unawares
*Livremente*, freely
*Muito*, much
*Depressa*, quickly
*Aqui*, here
*Até aqui*, as far as here, *or* till now, *or* hitherto
*D'aqui em diante*, henceforward *or* hereafter
*Bem*, well
*A'manhã*, to-morrow
*A'manhã, pela manhã*, to-morrow morning
*Depois d'ámanhã*, after to-morrow
*Ultimamente*, lastly
*Como*, as
*Como?* how?
*Cedo*, soon
*Tarde*, late
*Primeiro que*, before that
*Primeiro que tudo*, before all, *or* in the first place
*Traz*, or *detraz*, behind
*Para traz*, backward
*Isto é*, to wit
*Em vez*, instead
*Tambem*, also

*Tanto que*, so much so
*Logo que*, as soon as
*De pensado*, wilfully
*Acaso*, by chance
*Fixamente*, stedfastly
*Finalmente*, finally
*Muito*, very
*Atrevidamente*, boldly
*Feliçemente*, happily
*Vergonhosamente*, shamefully
*Nunca*, never
*Nunca mais*, never since
*Logo*, immediately
*Ainda*, yet; as, *ainda não veio*, he has not come yet
*Ainda*, even; as, *seria vergonha ainda fallar d'isso*, it were a shame even to speak of it
*Nem se quer*, even
*Vilmente*, basely
*Fóra*, abroad, out
*Já*, already
*D'um salto*, at one jump
*De quando em quando*, from time to time
*Antes*, before
*Depois*, afterwards
*Juntamente*, together
*Inteiramente*, entirely
*Ao redor*, or *em tôrno*, about
*De balde*, in vain
*Loucamente*, madly
*Mal*, ill
*Mais*, *more*
*Menos*, *less*
*Até*, until, *or* even
*Sim*, yes
*Não*, no, not
*Onde*, where
*De cór*, by heart
*A's vezes*, sometimes, from time to time
*Quando*, when
*Nada*, nothing
*Verdadeiramente*, truly
*Dentro*, within
*Devagar*, softly

## CHAPTER VIII.

### OF THE PROPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS are indeclinable, and most commonly set before a noun, a pronoun, or verb.

Every preposition requires some case after it, as you will see in the following collection :—

GENITIVE.

*Antes do dia*, before daybreak
*Diante de Deus*, before God
*Dentro da igreja*, within the church
*Detraz do palacio*, behind the palace
*Debaixo da mesa*, under the table
*Em cima da mesa*, upon the table
*Alem*, besides
*Alem dos mares*, on that side of the seas
*Alem d'isso*, besides that, moreover
*Alem de que*, idem
*A'quem*, or *d'a'quem dos mares*, on this side of the seas
*Ao redor*, or *em contorno da cidade*, round about the city
*Perto de Londres*, near London
*A'cerca d'aquelle negocio*, concerning that affair
*Fóra da casa*, out of the house
*Fóra de perigo*, out of danger
*Fóra de si*, out of one's wits

*Note.* This preposition governs also a nominative ; as, *fóra seu irmão*, except his brother, *or* his brother excepted.

*De fronte da minha casa*, over against my house
*De fronte da igreja*, facing the church
*Depois da cêa*, after supper

DATIVE.

*Quanto áquillo*, with respect to that
*Pegado á muralha*, close to the wall
*Desde o bico do pé até á cabeça*, from top to toe

ACCUSATIVE.

*Perante o juiz*, before the judge
*Entre*, between, among, *or* amongst
*Entre os homens*, among men
*Sobre a mesa*, upon the table
*Conforme*, or *segundo a lei*, according to the law
*Por amor de Deus*, for God's sake
*Pelo mundo*, through the world
*Pela rua*, through the streets
*Pellas terras*, through the lands
*Por grande que seja*, let it be ever so great
*Contra elles*, against them
*Durante*, during; as, *durante o inverno*, during the winter

We shall be more particular about prepositions when we examine their construction.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable part of speech which serves to join the members and parts of speech together, in showing the dependency of relation and coherency between the words and sentences.

Some conjunctions are copulative, which join, and, as it were, couple two terms together; as, *Portuguezes e Inglezes*, Portuguese and English.

Some are disjunctive, which show separation or division: as, *nem*, nor, neither; *ou*, either, or. Examples: *nem este, nem aquelle*, neither this nor that; *ou este, ou aquelle*, either this or that; *nem mais, nem menos*, neither more nor less; *quer o faça, quer não, tudo para mim é o mesmo*, it is all one to me whether he does it or no; *quer seja verdade, quer não*, whether it be true or not; *nem se quer um*, not even one.

The adversative denote restriction or contrariety: as, *mas*, or *porêm*, but; *comtudo*, yet, however; *mas antes*, or *pelo contrario*, nay.

The conditional conjunctions suppose a condition, and serve to restrain and limit what has just been said: as, *se*, if; *com condição que, dado o caso que*, provided that, or upon condition that, or in case that, &c.

The concessive, which show the assent we give to a thing: as, *embora*, or *seja embora*, well and good; *está feito*, done, agreed.

The casual show the reason of something; as, *porque*, what for, or because, or why.

The concluding denote a consequence drawn from what is before; as, *logo*, or *por consequencia*, therefore, then, or consequently.

The transitive, which serve to pass from one sentence to another: as, *álem disso*, moreover, or besides that; *sobretudo*, or *em summa*, after all, upon the whole, in the main *a proposito*, now I think of it, *or* by the by.

There are others of a different sort: as, *se quer*, or *ao menos*, at least; *ainda que*, although; *de sorte que*, so that; *antes quero pedir que furtar*, I will rather beg than steal;

*antes morrerei que dizer-vol-o*, I will rather die than tell you; *já que*, since, &c.

To the above-mentioned parts of speech, grammarians have added *Interjections*, which are particles serving to denote some passion or emotion of the mind: but there is another sort, which may be called demonstrative; as, *cá* and *lá*, and *aqui* and *ali*. Examples: *este homem aqui*, this man here; *aquella mulher lá*, that woman there, &c.: and some others continuative, because they denote continuation in the speech; as, *com effeito*, in effect; *álem disso*, besides; *ora vejâmos*, now let us see; *finalmente fômo-nos embora*, and so we went away. To which we may add those invented to imitate the sound of dumb creatures, and the noise which is occasioned by the clashing of bodies against one another; as, *zaz*, *traz*, &c.

## INTERJECTIVE PARTICLES.

### OF JOY.

*Ha, ha, ha!* Ha, ha, ha!
*Oh que prazer!* Oh joy!

### OF GRIEF.

*Ay!* Alas! ah!
*Ay de mim!* Poor me!
*Meu Deus!* My God!

### OF PAIN.

*Ay!* Ay!
*Oh!* Oh!

### TO ENCOURAGE.

*Animo!* Courage!
*Ora vamos!* Come, come on!

TO CALL.

*Oh! oh lá!* Ho! hey! hip!

OF ADMIRATION OR SURPRISE.

*Oh, oh lá, ahi!* Oh my! Oh dear me!
*Apre!* Heyday!

OF AVERSION.

*Irra!* Away!
*Nada!* Away with! By no means!
*Fora!* Fie!

FOR MAKING PEOPLE GO OUT OF THE WAY, OR STAND AWAY.

*Guardem-se* or *arredem-se!* Out of the way, *or* stand away!

FOR SHOUTING.

*Viva!* Hurrah!

OF SILENCE.

*Caluda* or *Calai-vos!* Hush! Silence!

OF CURSING AND THREATENING.

*Maldito sejais!* May you be cursed!

FOR DERISION.

*Ah!* Ah! oh! oh! oh!

OF WISHING.

*Oh prouvéra a Deus!* Would to God!
*Oxalá!* Oh that!
*Oh se!* Would!

The interjection *Oh!* serves for different emotions of the mind, as admiration, grief, wish, &c., and sometimes is used ironically, but differently uttered, according to the emotion which it expresses.

## SOME ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ant$^{o}$ | *Antonio* | Anthony |
| Seb$^{m}$ | *Sebastiam* | Sebastian |
| B$^{mo}$ P$^{e}$ | *Beatissimo Pâe* | The most blessed Father |
| Cap$^{m}$ | *Capitão* | Captain |
| Comp$^{a}$ | *Companhia* | Company |
| Corr$^{o}$ | *Correio* | Post |
| D. *or* D$^{a}$ | *Dom* or *Dona* | Don *or* Dona |
| D$^{r}$, D$^{or}$ | *Doutor* | Doctor |
| D$^{o}$ D$^{a}$ | *Ditto, ditta* | Said |
| Ex$^{mo}$, Ex$^{ma}$ | *Excellentissimo,ma* | Most excellent |
| V. Ex$^{a}$ | *Vossa excellencia* | Your Excellency |
| V. S$^{a}$ | *Vossa senhoria* | Your Lordship |
| V. A. | *Vossa alteza* | Your Highness |
| V. M. *or* V$^{ce}$ | *Vossa mercê* | You |
| V. P. | *Vossa paternidade* | Your Paternity |
| V. M$^{de}$ | *Vossa Magestade* | Your Majesty |
| S. | *Santo* | Saint |
| Fran$^{co}$ | *Francisco* | Francis |
| G$^{de}$ | *Guarde* | Save |
| Snr. Snr$^{a}$ | *Senhor, ora* | Sir, Lady |
| Rev$^{mo}$ | *Reverendissimo* | Most Reverend |
| P$^{a}$ | *Para* | For |
| Q$^{do}$ | *Quando* | When |
| Q$^{m}$ | *Quem* | Who |
| Q$^{to}$ | *Quanto* | How much |
| Supp$^{e}$ | *Supplicante* | Petitioner |
| Gen$^{l}$ | *General* | General |
| Ten$^{te}$ | *Tenente* | Lieutenant |
| V. G. | *Verbi gratia* | For example |

And many others that must be learned by use.

# PART II.

## CHAPTER I.

### OF THE DIVISION OF SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is a Greek word, by the Latins called *construction;* it treats of the agreement and construction of words in a sentence. It is divided into three sorts: the first, of Order or Arrangement; the second of Concordance; the third of Government. The Syntax of Order or Arrangement is the proper placing of words in a sentence. The Syntax of Concordance is when the parts of speech agree with one another, as the substantive with the adjective, or the nominative with the verb. The Syntax of Government is when one part of speech governs another.

For the sake of those who, perhaps, have not a grammatical knowledge of their own language, I shall lay down some general rules for the Portuguese construction.

#### I.—OF THE ORDER OF WORDS.

1. The nominative denotes the subject, and is usually placed before the verb or attribute; it may be either a noun or pronoun: as, *Francisco escreve*, Francis writes; *eu fallo*, I speak.

2. When the action of the verb is attributed to many persons or things, these all belong to the nominative,

and are placed before the verb together with their conjunction: as, *Pedro e Paulo lêm*, Peter and Paul read.

3. The adjectives belonging to the nominative substantive, to which the action of the verb is attributed, are put after the substantive and before the verb: as, *os estudantes morigerados e diligentes estudão*, the obedient and diligent scholars study.

4. If the nominative has an article, this article is always placed before it.

5. Sometimes an infinitive is put for a noun, and stands for a nominative; as, *o dormir faz bem*, sleeping does one good: and sometimes a verb with its case; as, *é acto de humanidade ter compaixão dos afflictos*, to have compassion on the afflicted is an act of humanity.

6. The nominative is sometimes understood; as *amo*, where *eu* is understood: and so of the other persons of the verb.

7. After the nominative comes the verb; and if there is an adverb, it is to be placed immediately after the verb whose accident and circumstances it explains: as, *Pedro ama com extremo a gloria*, Peter is extremely fond of glory.

8. The cases governed by the verb are put after it; they may be one, or many, according to the nature of the action: as, *eu amo a Pedro*, I love Peter; *faço presente de um livro a Paulo*, I make a present of a book to Paul.

9. The preposition is always placed before the case it governs; as, *perto de casa*, near the house.

10. The relative is always placed after the antecedent; as, *Pedro o qual estuda*, Peter who studies.

## II.—OF CONCORDANCE.

1. The adjectives agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case: as, *um homem virtuoso*, a virtuous man; *uma bella mulher*, a handsome woman; *sumptuosos palacios*, &c., sumptuous palaces, &c.

2. When two or more substantives singular come together, the adjectives belonging to them must be put in the plural; as, *tanto el rei como a rainha montados a cavallo parecem bem*, both the king and the queen look well when they ride.

3. If the substantives happen to be one in the singular and the other in the plural, or to be of different genders, the adjective common to both agrees in number and gender with the last: as, *elle tinha os olhos e a boca aberta*,* or *elle tinha a boca e os olhos abertos*, his eyes and mouth were opened; *as lagôas e rios estavão congelados*, the ponds and rivers were frozen.

4. But when there is one or many words between the last noun and the adjective, that adjective (common to all) agrees with the masculine noun, though the last noun be feminine; and if the nouns are in the singular, then the adjective must be put in the plural number and masculine gender: as, *o rio e a lagôa estavão congelados*, the pond and river were frozen; *o trabalho, a industria, e a fortuna unidos*, pains, industry, and fortune joined together.

5. Every personal verb agrees with its nominative, expressed or understood in number and person.

* Use has made it allowable that the adjective common to both substantives of different genders or numbers may agree only with the last; but the best grammar and practice is to put, in such instances, the adjective in its masculine plural, the same as directed in the 4th rule.

6. The relative *qual* with the article agrees entirely with the antecedent; but without the article and denoting an absolute quality, it agrees with what follows: as, *aquelle coração o qual*, &c., that heart which, &c.; *considerando quaes serão as condiçôens*, &c., considering which would be the conditions, &c.

7. Questions and answers always agree in everything; as, *a que serviço pertence vm^ce ? elle respondeo, pertenco ao da rainha*, at whose service are you, sir? he answered, I am at the queen's service.

## III.—ON THE DEPENDENCE OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH ON ONE ANOTHER.

1. The nominative being the basis of the sentence, the verb depends on it, as the other cases depend on the verb. The adjective depends on the substantive to which it refers; and the adverb on the verb whose accidents it explains.

2. The genitive depends upon a substantive, expressed or understood, by which it is governed.

3. The accusative depends either on an accusative verb, or on a preposition.

4. The ablative depends on a preposition by which it is governed; as, *parto de Roma*, I go from Rome.

5. The dative and vocative have, strictly speaking, no dependence on the other parts: the dative is common, as it were, to all nouns and verbs; the vocative only points out the person to whom you speak.

I now come to the Construction of the several parts of speech.

## CHAPTER II.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

BEFORE we come to the syntax of the articles, remember that *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, are articles only when they precede the nouns or pronouns, but not when joined to the verbs.

Those who understand Latin will quickly perceive the difference, if they take notice that every time they render *o*, *a*, by *illum*, *illam*, *illud;* or by *eum*, *eam*, *id;* and *os*, *as*, by *illos*, *illas*, *illa;* or by *eos*, *eas*, *ea*, they are relative pronouns.

1. The article is used before the names of things which can be spoken of; therefore nouns of substances, arts, sciences, plays, metals, virtues, and vices, having no article before them in English, require the article in Portuguese; as,

*O oiro e a prata não podem fazer feliz ao homem*, gold and silver cannot make the happiness of man.

*A virtude não é compativel com o vicio*, virtue cannot agree with vice.

*A philosophia é uma sciencia muito nobre*, philosophy is a very noble science.

*Joguemos as cartas*, let us play at cards.

2. The article is not placed before a substantive which is followed by the adjective of number that stands for a surname; as, *Joseph Primeiro*, Joseph the First.

3. When a book, or some part of it, as chapter, page, &c., is quoted, the adjective of number may come either before or after the substantive: but if it comes after, the two words are construed without the article; as, *livro*

*primeiro, capitulo segundo*, &c., book I., chapter II. If the adjective of number comes before the substantive, it takes the article; as, *o primeiro livro*, the first book.

4. *O* placed before *que* signifies *what* or *which;* as, *faça o que quizer*, let him do what he likes; *o que eu fiz*, which I did.

5. The article is never made use of before proper names of men, women, gods, goddesses, saints.

6. The article is not used in Portuguese before the possessive relative pronouns; as, *de quem é esta casa? é minha, é tua*, &c., whose house is this? it is mine, it is thine, &c.

7. When a mount, mountain, or hill's name is preceded by the word *monte*, it takes neither article nor preposition; as, *o Monte Atlante*, Mount Atlas; *os Montes Pireneos*, the Pyrenees: but after the word *serra*, a ridge of hills, it takes the article; as, *a Serra da Estrella*, Mount Estrella; *a Serra do Potosi*, Mount Potosi; however, they say also, *Serra Liôa.**

8. The noun of measure, weight, and the number of the things that have been bought, requires the article; as, *o trigo vende-se a tanto o alqueire*, wheat is sold so much a-peck.

*A manteiga vende-se a tanto o arratel*, butter costs so much a-pound.

*Os ovos vendem-se a tanto a duzia*, eggs are sold so much -dozen.

9. No article is used with proper names of persons and planets, except *a terra*, the earth; *o sol*, the sun; *a lua*, the moon.

* When *Serra Liôa* is used without the article, it is because it then expresses the district or territory where that ridge of mountains is situate; but, speaking of the ridge or mountain itself, a Portugu se would say, *a Serra Liôa*, with the article.

10. When proper names are used in a determinate sense, that is, when they are applied to particular objects, then they take the article : *o Deus dos Christãos*, the God of Christians ; *o Archimedes de Inglaterra*, the Archimedes of England. The proper names of renowned poets and painters keep also the article ; as, *o Camoens*, *o Pope*, *o Tasso*, *o Ticiano*, &c.

11. The preposition *de* is used before nouns following one of these, *sorte*, *especie*, *genero*, and any other noun of which they express the *kind*, *character*, *quality*, and *nature*, which sort of nouns are usually rendered into English by an adjective, or even by the substantive itself placed adjectively, and making together, as it were, but a compound word : as, *Dôr de cabeça*, the headache ; *uma sorte de terra*, a sort of land ; *fallar de ignorante*, an ignorant speech.

Sometimes the English adjective may be made an adjective in Portuguese, as in the last example, *um fallar ignorante*, an ignorant speech ; but not unfrequently the Portuguese express the English adjective by a substantive of the same signification with *de* before the other noun, though they have an adjective of the same nature as the English ; as, *o diabo da perseguição*, the devilish persecution : and sometimes the adjective is used by them substantively, or the substantive is understood ; *o preguiçoso de meu filho*, my lazy son ; *a velha de sua mãi*, his *or* her old mother. Finally they also make use of the definite article : as, *o monstro do homem*, or *da mulher*, the monstrous man, *or* women ; *a pobre da rapariga*, the poor girl, &c.

12. Nouns are used without an article in the following cases :—

1st. In the title of a performance, and in the middle of sentences, where they characterise in a peculiar manner

the person or thing spoken of, in which case the English use the particle *a ;* as,

*Discurso sobre as obrigaçõens da religião natural*, a discourse concerning the obligations of natural religion.

*Primeira parte*, the first part.

*O Conde de Clermont, principe do Sangue, morreo*, &c., the Count of Clermont, a prince of the blood, died, &c.

*O S^to^ Antonio, navio de noventa peças*, the St. Anthony, a ninety-gun ship.

2ndly. In sentences of exclamation : as,

*As mais bellas flores são as que menos durão ; qualquer chuva as desmaia, o vento as murcha, o sol as queima, e acaba de secar ; sem fallar d'uma infinidade de insectos que as perseguem e deitão a perder : natural e verdadeira imagem da belleza!* the most beautiful flowers last but a very short time ; the least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the sun scorches them, and completes the drying of them up ; without mentioning an infinite number of insects that spoil and hurt them : a natural and true image of beauty !

3rdly. When nouns of number are used in an indefinite sense ; as, *mil soldados de a cavallo contra cem infantes*, a thousand horse against a hundred foot.

*Tenho lido dous poetas*, I have read two poets, that is, any two out of all that ever existed.

But before a noun of number, in a definite sense, it would take an article ; as,

*Tenho lido os dous poetas*, I have read both poets ; because this plainly indicates a definite two, of whom some mention has been already made.

*Os cem infantes que combateram contra os mil de a cavallo, que*, &c., the hundred foot that fought with the thousand horse that, &c.

4thly. After the verb *ser*, when it signifies *to become*,

and after *ser tomado por*, to be accounted ; *passar por*, to pass for : as, *elle será doutor com o tempo*, he will become a doctor in time ; *elle passa por marinheiro*, he passes for a sailor.

When the adjective is used substantively, it must have the neuter article *o* before it :

*O verde offende menos a vista que o vermelho*, green hurts the eye less than red.

There are also some adverbs preceded by the neuter article *o ;* as the following : *o melhor que eu puder*, the best I could ; *o menos que for possivel*, the least possible.

Articles are repeated in Portuguese before as many nouns (requiring the article) as there are in the sentence ; as,

*O ouro, a prata, a saude, as honras, e os deleites não podem fazer feliz ao homem que não tem sciencia nem virtude*, gold, silver, health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a happy man without wisdom and virtue.

The article *o* is put before the word *senhor*, sir, *or* my lord ; as,

*O senhor duque*, my lord duke ; *o senhor presidente*, my lord the president ; *os senhores*, the gentlemen ; *dos senhores*, of the gentlemen.

The feminine article *a* must be prefixed to *senhora*, my lady, *or* madam ; as, *a senhora duqueza*, or *condessa de*, &c., my lady duchess, *or* countess of, &c.

The article is never used in Portuguese as it is in English, before *mais*, more, or *menos*, less, in the following sentences : *quanto mais vivemos, tanto mais aprendemos*, the longer we live, the more we learn ; *quanto mais um hydropico bebe, tanto mais sêde tém*, the more a dropsical man drinks the more thirsty he is ; *quanto mais pobre é o homem, tanto menos cuidados tém*, the poorer a man is, the less care he has, &c.

Sometimes the English particle *to*, before infinitives, is rendered in Portuguese by the article *o*; as, *é facil o dizer*, *o ver*, &c., it is easy to say, to see, &c.

In a word, *the natural associators with articles* are those *common appellatives* which denote the several genera and species of beings, or those words which, though indefinite, are yet capable, through the article, of becoming definite. Therefore *Apollonius* makes it part of the pronoun's definition, to refuse coalescence with the article: and it would be absurd to say, *o eu*, the I; or, *o tu*, the thou; because nothing can make those pronouns more definite than they are.

*Note.* When the adjective *um*, *uma*, is used as an article in Portuguese, it denotes individuals as unknown; but the articles *o*, *a*, denote individuals as known. Example: Seeing an object pass by which I never saw till then, a beggar with a long beard, for instance, I say: *Ali vai um pobre com uma barba comprida*, there goes a beggar with a long beard. But the man departs and returns a week after; then I must say, *Ali vai o pobre da barba comprida*, there goes the beggar with the long beard.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

#### AND FIRST, OF THE SUBSTANTIVES.

When two or more substantives come together, without a comma between them, they all govern each the next in the genitive, the first governing the second, the second the third in the same case, and so on (that is, the

first is always followed by the preposition *de*, or by the article before the next noun); but that genitive can never come in Portuguese before the noun that governs it as in English.

*A philosophia de Newton*, Newton's philosophy.

*As guardas do principe*, the prince's guards.

*A porta de casa*, the house-gate.

*Eis aqui a casa do companheiro do irmão de minha mulher*, here is my wife's brother's partner's house.

When two substantives singular are the nominative of a verb, the verb must be put in the plural; as, *meu irmão e meu pai estão no campo*, my brother and my father are in the country.

If the nominative is a collective substantive, the verb is always put in the singular; as, *toda a cidade assistió*, all the city was present.

## OF THE SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Of adjectives, some are put before the noun, and some after; and others may be put indifferently, either before or after.

The possessive pronouns, *meu*, *teu*, *seu*, &c., and adjectives of number, come before the substantive, as in English. Examples: *Meu pai*, my father; *a sua casa*, his house; *duas pessoas*, two persons; *o primeiro homem*, the first man.

But when an adjective of number stands for a surname, or is joined to a proper or Christian name, it comes after the substantive, without the article; as, *João V.*, John the Fifth.

### THE FOLLOWING ADJECTIVES COME AFTER THE SUBSTANTIVE.

1st. Verbal adjectives and participles : as, *um homem divertido*, a comical, a merry man ; *uma mulher estimada*, a woman esteemed.

2ndly. Adjectives referring to nations : as, *um mathematico Inglez*, an English mathematician ; *um alfaiate Francez*, a French tailor ; *musica Italiana*, Italian music.

3rdly. Adjectives of colour : as, *um vestido negro*, a black suit of cloths ; *um capote vermelho*, a red cloak, &c.

4thly. Adjectives of figure : as, *uma mesa redonda*, a round table ; *um campo triangular*, a triangular field, &c.

5thly. Adjectives expressing some physical or natural quality : such are, *quente*, hot ; *frio*, cold ; *humido*, wet ; *corcovado*, hunchbacked, &c.

Most other adjectives are placed before or after the substantive : as, *santo*, holy ; *verdadeiro*, true, &c.

If the substantive has three or more adjectives belonging to it, they must be placed after it with the conjunction *e* before the last, which must likewise be observed, even when there be but two adjectives. The Portuguese do not say, *uma desagradavel enfadonha obra*, but, *uma obra desagradavel e enfadonha*, a disagreeable tedious work, &c.

Of adjectives, some always require either a noun or verb after them, which they govern ; as, *digno de louvor*, praiseworthy ; *digno de ser amado*, worthy to be loved ; *capaz de ensinar*, capable to teach ; and these have always the particle *de* after them.

Some will be used in an absolute sense without being attended by any noun or verb ; as, *prudente*, wise *incuravel*, incurable, &c.

Others may be construed both with or without a noun, which they govern : *ella é uma mulher insensivel*, she is a woman without any sensibility ; *ella é insensivel ao amor*, she is insensible to love.

The following adjectives, which require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive, govern the genitive case. Observe, that some of them require, in English, the preposition *at* or *with* after them.

*Digno*, worthy ; as, *elle é digno de louvor*, he is worthy of praise. This adjective is sometimes followed by *que ;* as, *digno que seu nome fosse*, &c., her name deserved to be, &c.

*Indigno*, unworthy ; as, *indigno da estimação que faço d'elle*, unworthy of the esteem which I have for him.

*Capaz*, capable ; *incapaz*, incapable : as, *capaz* or *incapaz de servir a propria patria*, capable *or* incapable of serving one's country.

*Notado*, charged ; as, *notado de avareza*, charged with avarice.

*Contente*, glad ; as, *estou contente do successo que elle teve*, I am glad *or* overjoyed at his success.

*Cançado*, tired ; as, *cançado de estudar*, tired of studying.

*Dezejoso*, greedy ; as, *dezejoso de gloria*, greedy of glory, &c. And likewise adjectives signifying fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, or forgetting.

All adjectives signifying inclination, advantage and disadvantage, profit or loss, pleasure or displeasure, due submission, resistance, likeness, govern the dative case : as, *insensivel ás affrontas*, insensible to affronts ; *ser inclinado á alguma cousa*, to be inclined to something ; *nocivo á saude*, hurtful to health.

Adjectives signifying dimensions : as, *alto*, high, tall ;

*largo*, wide, broad; and *comprido*, long, come after words of the measure of magnitude, both in English and Portuguese; but they are preceded by *de* in Portuguese: as, *dez pés de largo*, ten feet broad; *seis pés de comprido*, six feet long, &c. They also turn the adjective of dimension into its corresponding substantive, with the preposition *de*, and preceded by the measure: as, *seis pés de altura*, six feet high; *dez pés de largura*, ten feet broad.

Adjectives signifying experience, knowledge, or science, require *em*, or *no*, *na*, *nos*, *nas*, after them: as, *versado nos livros*, versed in books; *experto na medicina*, expert in medicine.

Cardinal nouns require the genitive case after them; as, *um dos dois*, one of the two.

The ordinal nouns, as well as collective and proportional nouns, likewise require the genitive after them: as, *o primeiro dos réis*, the first of the kings; *uma duzia de ovos*, a dozen of eggs, &c.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

The comparative is not made of the positive in Portuguese, as in Latin and English, but by adding *mais*, more, or *menos*, less, which govern *que*, signifying *than*: as, *o todo é mais que a parte*, the whole is greater than a part; *o seu amante é mais bello, mais moço, e mais rico que ella*, her lover is handsomer, younger, and richer, than she is; *eu acho-o agora menos bello do que quando o comprei*, I now find it less handsome than when I bought it.

The simple comparatives *mais* and *menos*, followed by a noun of number, have *de* after them: as, *ainda que elle tivesse mais de cem homens*, though he had above a hundred men; *elle tem mais de vinte annos*, he is above twenty.

When the comparison is made by *so as*, *as much as*, they must be rendered by *como*.

EXAMPLES.

*O meu livro é tão bello como o vosso*, my book is as handsome as yours; *um principe não é tão poderoso como um rei*, a prince is not so powerful as a king.

They put sometimes *muito* and *pouco* before the simple comparatives *mais* and *menos* : as, *elle é muito mais grande*, he is taller by much; *elle é pouco mais grande*, he is taller by little, &c.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

We have sufficiently explained the pronouns in the First Part; and, to avoid any further repetition, shall only observe that,

1st. The English make use of the verb *to be*, put impersonally through all its tenses in the third person, before the personal pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *we*, *you*, *they*; it it I, it is he, &c. In Portuguese the verb *to be*, on this occasion, is not impersonal; as they express, it is I, by *sou eu ;* it is thou, *es tu;* it is he, *é elle ;* it is we, *somos nós ;* it is ye, *sois vós ;* it is she, *é ella ;* it is they, masc., *são elles ;* it is they, fem., *são ellas:* and in like manner through all the tenses; as, it was I, *era eu ;* it was we, *eramos nós*, &c.

2ndly. The Portuguese seldom make use of the second

person singular, except when through a great familiarity among friends; or a father and mother to their children; or to servants.

Observe here, that when an adjective comes after *vm^ce*, *v. s.*, *v. e.*, &c., it does not agree in gender with *vm^ce*, *v. s.*, &c., but with the person we speak to, or we speak of: thus we say to a lady, *vm^ce é muito bella*, you are very beautiful; and to a man, *vm^ce é muito bom*, you are very good.

3rdly. *Nós* is generally used by a king, a governor, or a bishop, in their writings, and then it signifies in English, *we;* as, *nós mandamos*, or *mandamos*, we command: but *nos* before or after a verb in Portuguese signifies *us* in English; as, *elle nos disse*, he told us; *dai nos tempo*, give us time.

4thly. *Vós* is applied when speaking to God or to a multitude.

5thly. The conjunctive pronouns are joined to verbs, and stand for the dative and accusative cases; as, *deu-me*, he gave me; *ama-me*, love me: but the personal pronouns are used instead of them when they are preceded by a preposition, and not immediately followed by a verb; *elle fallou contra mim*, he spoke against me.

6thly. When *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, are joined to the present tense, infinitive mood, they change the last *r* of it into *lo*, *la*, &c., thus: *para ama-lo*, to love him; *para ve-la* or *ve-las*, to see her *or* them, &c.; and when they are joined to the preterperfect tense, indicative mood, of the verb *fazer*, and some others that have that tense ending in *iz;* they change the last *z* of them into *lo*, *la*, &c.; as, *fi-lo*, I did it; *elle fe-lo*, he did *or* made it, &c.: but when they are joined to the future tense, indicative mood, of any verb with the auxiliary verb *haver*, then they change the terminations *rei*, *rás*, &c., of the futures into *lo*, *la*,

&c.; as, *fa-lo-hei*, I will do it; *ama-lo-hei*, I will love him, &c.*

### REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS.

1st. *Him* or *it*, which follows the verb in English, must be expressed in Portuguese as in the following examples:—

When *him* or *it* in English follows the verb in the first person of the singular number, it must be expressed in Portuguese by *o* before or after the verb. Example: I call him *or* it, *eu o chamo.*

When *him* or *it* in English follows the verb in the first person of the singular number, it may be expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or after it, omitting the last consonant of the verb. Example: thou callest him *or* it, *tu o chamas*, or *cháma-lo-tu.*

When *him* or *it* is joined with the third person singular of a verb, it may be expressed by *o* before or after the verb. Example: he calls him *or* it, *elle o chama*, or *elle chama-o.*

When *him* or *it* is with a verb in the first person plural, it may be expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb or *lo* after it; omitting the last consonant, as in the second case. Example: we call him *or* it, *nós o chamamos*, or *nós chamamo-lo.*

* In regard to all that is said concerning the change of terminations into *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, we beg to observe that the modern and best writing in such cases, where the relatives *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, are to be appended to verbs ending in *r*, *s*, or *z*, is to change, for the sake of harmony, all those letters into *l*, and then add the relative, connecting by an -. The *l* being then but the substitute for those three letters is thus better placed where they stood: so the forms *chámal-o*, thou callest him *or* it; *fazel-a*, to make it; *fal-os*, makes them; *nomeail-as*, you name them, &c., are only better sounding transformations for *châmas-o*, *fazer-a*, *faz-os*, *nomeais-as.*

When *him* or *it* is after a verb in the second person plural, it is expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or *lo* after it, omitting the last consonant, &c. Example: you call him *or* it, *vós o chamais*, or *vós chamai-lo.*

When *him* or *it* follows the verb in the third person plural, it may be expressed in Portuguese either by *o* before the verb, or *no* after it. Example: they call him *or* it, *elles o chamão*, or *elles chamão-no.**

2ndly. *Her* or *it* after a verb in English is expressed in Portuguese by *a*, according to the rules given above.

3rdly. *Them* after a verb is expressed in Portuguese by *os* for the masculine, and by *as* for the feminine, according to the gender and the rules proposed.

4thly. The words *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, must always be put after the gerunds, but not before the infinitives. Examples: seeing him, we must not say *o vendo*, but *vendo-o*, because *vendo* is a gerund.† To see him, instead of saying *para*

* Let the student remark that the *no*, *na*, *nos*, *nas*, in cases like this, are not the same as the combination of the preposition *em* with the articles, which assumes the like forms; the *n* is here employed only to avoid hiatus, nearly as the Greeks, for the same purpose, used sometimes their *ν*, corresponding to our *n*. The best writing, therefore, is that now used by some writers for the sake of distinction, of marking the *n* with an ', thus, *chamão-n'o*; or, as others do, isolating it by hyphens, thus, *chamão-n-o*, in like manner as the French add their *t* in *l'a-t-il vu ?*

† When, however, *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, and the gerund are to be used, preceded by the preposition *em*, in the acceptations of *as soon as*, *immediately after*, *the moment*, then those pronouns are placed before the gerund and after the said preposition: as, *em o vendo*, as soon as I (*or* thou, *or* he, *or* she, *or* you, *or* they) see (seest, sees, &c., *or* saw, sawest, &c., *or* have seen, hast seen, &c., *or* shall see, shalt see, &c., *or* shall have seen, &c.) him; *em a encontrando*, immediately after I (*or* thou, *or* he, &c.) meet (meetest, met, have met, shall meet, shall have met, &c.) her; *em os comendo*, the moment I (*or* thou, &c.) ate (*or* have eaten, shall eat, &c.) them.

*ver-o*, you must say *para o ver*, or *para vê-lo*, because it is in the infinitive.

5thly. The words *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, must always be put after the verbs. Example: to see him, you must say *para vel-o*, or *para o ver*, and not *para lo ver*. The same words must follow also the adverb *ei*: as, *ei-lo aqui*, here he is; *ei-lo ali*, there he is; *ei-las aqui*, here they are; *ei-la ali*, there she is; *ei-las ali*, there they are. They follow likewise the persons of the verbs: *eu fi-lo*, *tu fizeste-lo*, *elle fe-lo*, *nós fizemo-lo*, &c., I made it, &c.

I have been speaking of the words *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, and not of the articles, *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*; because when those words precede, and sometimes when they follow the verbs, they are not articles, but relative pronouns. They are articles only when they precede nouns or pronouns.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS.

The verbs through every tense and mood (except the infinitive) ought to be preceded by a nominative case, either expressed or understood, with which they must agree in number and person. The nominative is expressed when we say *eu amo*, *tu cantas*; understood when we say *canto*, *digo*, &c.

The Portuguese, as well as English, use the second person plural, though they address themselves but to a single person.

EXAMPLES.

*Meu amigo, vós não tendes razão,* my friend, you are in the wrong.

And if we would speak in the third person, we must say, *vm^ce tem razão,* sir, you are in the right.

The verb active governs the accusative; as, *amo a virtude,* I love virtue.

The passive verb requires an ablative after it; as, *os doutos são envejados pelos ignorantes,* the learned are envied by the ignorant.

There is in Portuguese another way of making the passive, by adding the relative *se* to the third person singular or plural; as, *ama-se a Deus,* God is loved.

Where there are two nominatives singular before a verb, it must be put in the plural.

When a noun is collective, the verb requires the singular, not the plural; as, *a gente está olhando,* the people are looking.

## SYNTAX OF THE AUXILIARY VERB.

The verb *ter* is made use of to conjugate all the compound tenses of verbs; as, *tenho amado, tinha amado,* I have loved, I had loved.

*Ter* signifies also to possess, to obtain; as, *tenho dinheiro,* I have money; *têm muita capacidade,* he has a great deal of capacity.

*Haver,* in account-books and trade, expresses credit, or discharge.

*Haver* is also taken impersonally in Portuguese, and signifies in English *there be;* as, *ha muito ouro no Mexico,* there is a great quantity of gold in Mexico.

*Haver se,* made reciprocal, is the same as *to behave, to*

*act;* as, *houve-se o governador com tal prudencia, que,* &c., the governor behaved with such wisdom, that, &c.

We have already observed the difference between *ser* and *estar.*

The verb *estar* is also used to conjugate the other verbs, chiefly expressing action; as, *estou lendo, estou escrevendo,* I am reading, I am writing.

*Estar* with the preposition *em,* in, or with *no, na, nos, nas,* signifies, *to be present in a place;* as, *estou no campo,* I am in the country.

*Estar* with the preposition *para* denotes the inclination of doing what the following verb expresses, but without a full determination; as, *estou para me ir para Londres,* I have a mind to go to London.

*Estar* with the preposition *por,* and the infinitive mood following, means, that the thing expressed by the verb is not yet done: as, *isto está por escrever,* this is not yet written; *isto está por alimpar,* this is not yet cleaned. *Estar por alguem* signifies to agree with one, or to be of his opinion.

*Note.* See, in the Third Part, the different significations of the verbs *estar* and *haver.*

When *ser* signifies the possession of a thing, it governs the genitive: as, *a rua é d'el-rei,* the street belongs to the king; *esta casa é de meu pai,* this house belongs to my father.

*Em ser* is taken for a thing to be whole or entire, without any alteration or mutilation; as, *as fazendas estão em ser,* the goods are not sold.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS ACTIVE, PASSIVE, ETC.

When two verbs come together, with or without any nominative case, then the latter must be in the infinitive

mood; as, *quer vm^ce aprender a fallar o Inglez?* will you learn to speak English?

All verbs active govern the accusative; but if they are followed by a proper name of God, man, or women, or any noun expressing their qualities or title, then they govern the dative case: as, *conheço a seu pai*, I know his father; *Acharão a João no caminho*, they found John in the road.

All verbs of gesture, movement, going, remaining, or doing, as also the verbs that have the word that goes before and the word that comes after, both belonging to one thing, require the nominative after them: as, *Pedro vai errado*, Peter goes on wrong; *o pobre dorme descançado*, the poor sleep without care. Also the verb in the infinitive mood has the same case, when verbs of wishing and the like come after them: as, *todos dezejão ser ricos*, everybody wishes to be rich; *antes quisera ser douto que parecel-o*, I had rather be learned than be accounted so.

After verbs the Portuguese express *yes* and *no* by *que sim* and *que não*. Examples: *creio que sim*, I believe yes; *creio que não*, I believe not; *digo que sim*, I say yes; *cuido que não*, I think not; *aposto que sim*, I lay yes; *queireis apostar que não?* have you a mind to lay not?

Verbs signifying grief, compassion, want, remembrance, forgetting, &c., must have the genitive: as, *pêsa-me muito da morte de seu irmão*, I am very sorry for the death of your brother; *elle morre de fôme*, he perishes of hunger; *lembre-se do que me disse*, remember what you said to me; *compadeçi-me das suas desgraças;* I pitied him for his misfortunes; *esqueci-me de tudo isto*, all this I forgot.

The reciprocals of jeering, boasting, and distrusting, govern also the genitive; as, *jactar-se, gloriar-se, picar-se, envorgonhar-se*, &c.

All verbs active govern the dative when the substan-

tive represents a person; as, *eu conheço a vm^ce*, &c., I know you, &c.

The following verbs belong to this rule:—

*Jogar*, to play: as, *jogar as cartas*, to play at cards; *jogar aos centos*, to play at piquet; *jogar ao xadrez*, to play at chess, &c.

*Obedecer*, *desobedecer*, *agradar*, *comprazer*: as, *eu obedeço a Deus e a el-rei*, I obey God and the king; *comprazeó em tudo aos soldados*, in all he pleased the soldiers.

*Mandar*, when it signifies to command an army, company, &c., requires the accusative, but, when anything else, the dative: as, *elle mandava a cavallaria*, he commanded the horse; *o governador mandou a todos os moradores que se retirassem para suas casas*, the governor ordered all the inhabitants to retire into their houses.

*Ir*, to go; as, *vou a Paris*, I go to Paris.

*Assistir*, *ajudar*, *soccorrer*, to help; *assistir ao officio divino*, to assist at divine service.

*Saudar*, to salute *or* greet; as, *elle sauda a todos*, he salutes everybody.

*Fallar*, to speak; *satizfazer*, to satisfy; *servir*, to serve; *favorecer*, to favour; *ameaçar*, to threaten.

The verbs of pleasing, displeasing, granting, denying, pardoning, govern the dative case.

The impersonals *acontecer*, *succeder*, *importar*, *pertencer*, and the like to these, often have two personal datives: as, *a mim me succedeo*, it happened to me; *a elle lhe convem*, it suits him, *or* it is convenient for him; *a elle não lhe importa*, it does not concern him, &c.

All active verbs require the accusative; and the Latin verbs which govern the accusative of the thing, and the dative of the person, govern generally the same in Portuguese: as, *escreve o que digo a teu irmão*, write to your brother what I say.

Verbs of asking, teaching, arraying, must have an

accusative of the doer or sufferer, and sometimes neuter verbs will have an accusative of the thing: as, *gozar saude*, to enjoy health; *peço este favor*, I ask this favour; *elle toca muito bem a flauta*, he plays very well on the flute; *curar uma doença*, to cure a sickness.

Passive verbs, and the greatest part of the reciprocal verbs, require the ablative, with, *de*, *do*, *da*, *dos*, *das*, *por*, or *pelo*, *pela*, *pelos*, *pelas*: as, *fui chamado por el-rei*, I was called by the king; *reterei-me da cidade*, I retired from the city; *elle foi amado do povo*, he was loved by the people. Except *acostar-se*, which requires a dative, preceded by *a*; *encostar-se*, which sometimes will have a dative and sometimes an ablative, preceded by *em*, *no*, *na*, *nos*, or *nas*; *meter-se*, *sentar-se*, *introduzir-se*, &c., which must have the ablative with the preposition *em*, *no*, *na*, *nos*, *nas*.

Verbs joined to a noun which they govern must have the infinitive with *de*; as, *tenho vontade de rir*, I am inclined to laugh.

The price of anything bought, or sold, or bartered, must have the accusative with *por*.

The verb *pôr-se*, when it signifies *to begin*, requires the infinitive, with the particle *a*; as, *pôr-se a chorar*, to begin to cry.

Verbs of plenty, filling, emptying, loading, unloading, require the ablative: as, *esta terra abunda de trigo*, this country abounds with corn; *elle está carregado de miserias*, he is loaded with calamities.

Verbs denoting custom, help, beginning, exhortation, invitation, require the infinitive with the particle *a*: as, *ajudar a semear*, to help to sow; *convidou-me a cear*, he invited me to supper.

Verbs that signify distance, receiving, or taking away, will have the ablative; as, *a Madeira dista de Marrocos 320 milhas*, Madeira lies 320 miles from Morocco

Verbs signifying receiving, or taking away, generally require the ablative of the person; but they sometimes require an accusative, particularly the verb *receber*, when it signifies *to welcome* or *to entertain:* as, *elle recebe todos com muito agrado*, he gives his company a hearty reception, he makes them very welcome.

Verbs denoting obligation govern the infinitive with the preposition *a;* as, *eu o obrigarei a fazer isto*, I will oblige him to do it.

Verbs of arguing, quarrelling, fighting, &c., must have the ablative with *com;* as, *pelejou mais de uma hora com seu irmão*, he quarrelled more than one hour with his brother.

After the verb *ser*, to be, *para* is made use of as well as *a:* the first is employed to denote the use or destination of anything; as, *esta penna é para escrever*, this pen is to write with. But the particle *a* is used to denote only the action; as, *elle foi o primeiro a fugir*, he was the first to run away.

Verbs of motion to a place always govern the dative; as, *vou á comedia*, I go to the play; though the verb *voltar*, to return, may also have an accusative, with the preposition *para*. But verbs of motion from a place govern the ablative with, *de*, *do*, *da*, *dos*, *das;* as, *venho do campo*, I come from the country. If the motion is through a place, then they govern the accusative, with *por;* as, *passarei por Londres*, I will come by the way of London.

### OF THE USE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE TENSES.

Although I have spoken at large upon the tenses in the First Part, I would further observe—

1. That the infinitive of the auxiliary verb *haver* is

used together with the pronouns *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, instead of the future indicative ; as, *ouvil-o-hei*, I will hear him : and then the *r* of the infinitive is changed into *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*.* Sometimes the infinitive of the auxiliary verb *haver* is used with the pronouns conjunctive, *me*, *te*, *se*, &c., instead of the same future : as, *dar-lhe-hei*, I will give him ; *enfadar-se-ha*, he will be angry.

2. That when we find the particle *if*, which in Portuguese is expressed by *se*, before the imperfect indicative, we must generally use the imperfect subjunctive in Portuguese. Examples : *se eu tivesse*, if I had ; *se eu pudesse*, if I could. But sometimes the imperfect indicative is used ; as, *disse-lhe que se queria*, &c., he told him that if he was willing, &c.

3. That the first imperfect subjunctive in Portuguese is also used in a sense that denotes the present, especially in sentences of wishing ; as, *quizera que Domingo fizesse bom tempo*, I wish it would be fine weather on Sunday. But if the same tense is preceded by *ainda que*, although, then it must be rendered into Portuguese by the second imperfect subjunctive, or by the imperfect indicative ; as, *eu não a quizera, ainda que ella tivesse milhoens de seu*, though she were worth several millions, I would not have her ; *ainda que elle consentisse n'isso, não se podia fazer*, although he would consent to it that could not be done. Lastly, when the first imperfect subjunctive is preceded by *se*, it is sometimes rendered into Portuguese by the second imperfect subjunctive ; as, *se elle viesse*, if he should come.

The English are apt to put the first imperfect of the subjunctive where the Portuguese make use of the second ;

* At present the form used in such cases is to change the fina *r* of the verb into *l*, and add the articles or pronouns, *o*, *a*, *os*, *as* &c., connecting them by an -, so, *ouvil-o-hei*, &c.

as, I had been in the wrong, *não teria tido razão:* and though they may say, *não tivera tido razão*, they may not say, *não tivesse tido razão*, to express the English of *I should have been in the wrong*, or *I had been in the wrong*.

*Note*, that to express in Portuguese, *though that should be*, we must say *quando isso fosse*, and not *seria*.

The Portuguese use the future tense subjunctive after the conjunction *if*, when they speak of a future action, but the English, the present indicative. Examples: to-morrow, if I have time, *amanhã se tiver tempo*, and not *se tenho;* if he come we shall see him, *nós o veremos se elle vier*.

A conjunction between two verbs makes the last of the same number, person, and tense as the first. Examples: the king wishes and commands, *el-rei quer e ordena;* I see and I know, *eu vejo e conheço*.

Sometimes the present is made use of instead of the preterdefinite in narrations; as, *ao mesmo tempo que hía andando o encontra, o despoja, e o ata a uma arvore*, as he was going, he meets him, strips him, and ties him to a tree.

When the Portuguese use the infinitive with the third person plural, they add *em* to it, and it is generally preceded by *por*, for, and *para*, in order to, that, *or* to the end that: as, *elles forão enforcados por furtarem*, they were hanged for robbing; *para serem informados*, to the end that they may be informed; *para poderem dizer*, that they may be able to say.

Observe that when the Portuguese put *por* before the first future subjunctive, they speak of a time past; as, *por fallardes*, because you have spoken. But when they put *para* before it, then they speak of a time to come; as, *para fallarmos*, to give us an opportunity for speaking, in order to speak.

OF MOODS.

All the tenses of the indicative mood may be employed without any conjunction before them; although they admit of some. Besides the conjunction *que*, those that may be made use of are *se*, *como*, and *quando;* with some distinction in respect to *se*, because this conjunction is seldom used before the future tense, and then it is governed by a verb signifying ignorance, doubt, or interrogation: as, *não sei se hão de vir*, I do not know whether they will come; *estou em duvida, se os inimigos passarão o rio*, I doubt whether the enemy will pass the river; *não pergunto se partirá*, I do not ask whether he will set out.

The optative or subjunctive in Portuguese has always some sign annexed: as, *oxalá, prouvera a Deus, ó se!* would to God, God grant, &c.; *que para, que*, &c., that, &c.

The particle *que* is not expressed in the present tense of this mood, but it is understood in sentences of wishing or praying; as, *Deus o faça bom*, let God amend him.

When *que* is between two verbs, the last is not always put in the subjunctive, because, though some say, *créio que venha*, I believe he comes, I think it is better to say, *creio que vem;* but when there is a negative, the verb following *que* must be put in the subjunctive: as, *não creio que venha*, I do not believe he will come; *não creio que venha tão cedo*, I do not believe he will come so soon.

When the verbs *crer*, to believe, *saber*, to know, are use interrogatively, and followed by the particle *que*, the next verb is put in the indicative, when the person who asks the question makes no doubt of the thing which is the object of the question; as if, knowing that peace is made, I want to know if the people whom I converse with know it too, I should express myself thus: *sabeis vós que está feita a paz?* do you know that peace is made? But

if I have it only by a report, and doubt of it, and want to be informed of it, I must ask the question thus: *sabeis vós que a paz esteja feita?* and not *sabeis vós que está feita a paz?*

Observe also, that the present subjunctive of *saber* is elegantly used when it is attended by a negative and the particle *que* in this phrase, *não, que eu saiba*, not that I know of.

All the verbs used impersonally with the particle *que* require the subjunctive: as, *é preciso que elle venha*, he must come; *convem que isto se faça*, it is convenient that this be done. You must only except such sentences as express any positive assurance, or certainty; as, *é certo que vem*, it is certain that he comes; *sei que está em casa*, I know he is at home.

From these observations it follows that all the verbs not expressing a positive assurance, or believing, but only denoting *ignorance, doubt, fear, astonishment, admiration, wishing, praying, pretension*, or *desire*, govern the subjunctive mood after *que*: as, *duvido que possa*, I doubt if it be in his power; *temo que morra*, I am afraid he will die; *admiro-me que consinta n'isso*, I wonder he agrees to it, &c.; to all which they add *oxalá*,* signifying *God grant*, which is used in Portuguese before all the tenses of the optative or conjunctive, as well as *praza a Deus*, may it please God, or *prouvera a Deus*, might it please God.

When *que* is relative, and there is a verb in the imperative or in the indicative, with a negative or interrogation before it, it likewise governs the subjunctive: as, *não ha cousa que mais me inquiete*, there is nothing that disturbs me more; *ha cousa no mundo que me possa dar tanto gosto?* is there anything in the world that could give me more pleasure? *allegai-lhe tantas razoens que o possão per-*

* An Arabic word derived from *Oh, Allah!*

*suadir*, give him so many reasons that he may be persuaded.

The present subjunctive is sometimes rendered into English by the second preterimperfect subjunctive, when it is followed by a verb in the future tense; as, *ainda que eu trabalhe, nunca hei de me cançar*, though I should work, I never should be tired.

The Portuguese use specially the same present subjunctive for the future; as in those sentences and others, like :—

*Não duvido que venha*, I do not doubt but he will come.

*Duvido que o faça*, I doubt that, *or* whether he will do it.

Therefore carefully avoid those faults which foreigners are so apt to make, in considering rather the tense which they want to turn into Portuguese, than the mood which the genius of the language requires.

The present indicative is also used for the future, the same as in English. Example : *jantais hoje em casa?* do you dine at home to-day ?

### OF THE PARTICLES GOVERNING THE OPTATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.

The conjunction *que*, that, generally requires the subjunctive after it; but *antes que*, *primeiro que*, before that, always require it.

*Que* makes all the words to which it is joined become conjunctives; as, *para que*, to the end that; *bem que*, *ainda que*, &c. *Posto que*, although ; *até que*, till ; *quando*, *como quer que*, commonly govern the subjunctive. But *com que assim* governs the indicative; as, *com que* or *com que assim virá amanhã*, so he will come to-morrow.

In Portuguese, to express *though* or *although*, if it is by

*ainda que*, you may put either the subjunctive or indicative after it. Examples: *ainda que seja homem honrado*, though he is an honest man; *ainda que elle faz aquillo*, though he does that. But if you render *although* or *though* by *não obstante*, then you must use the infinitive. Examples: though he is an honest man, *não obstante ser elle homem honrado;* though he does this, *não obstante fazer elle isto.*

The impersonal verbs generally govern the subjunctive with *que;* but with this distinction, when the impersonal is in the present tense, or future, of the indicative mood, then it requires the present subjunctive mood: but when the impersonal, or any other verb taken impersonally, is in any of the preterites indicative, then it governs the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive, according to the meaning of the sentence; as, *importa muito que el-rei veja tudo*, it is of great moment that the king may see all; *foi conveniente que o principe fosse com elle*, it was convenient that the prince should go with him.

The present subjunctive is likewise construed when the particle *por* is separated from *que* by an adjective; as, *por grande, por admiravel, por douto que seja*, though he be great, admirable, learned.

An imperative often requires the future of the subjunctive; as, *succeda o que succeder*, or *seja o que fôr*, happen what may.

The imperfect subjunctive is repeated in this phrase, and others, like *succedesse, o que succedesse*, happen what may.

The future of the subjunctive mood follows generally these, *logo que, quando, se, como*, &c.: as, *logo que chegar iremos a passeiar*, as soon as he comes, we will go and take a walk; *quando viér estaremos promptos*, when he comes we shall be ready.

Observe, that *quando* and *logo que* may also be construed with the indicative mood: as, *quando el-rei vê tudo não o enganão*, when the king sees everything, he is not deceived; *logo que chegou, fallei com elle*, as soon as he came, I spoke with him.

### OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

In Portuguese there is not a general sign before the infinitive, as in English the particle *to;* but there are several particles used before the infinitive, denoting the same as *to* does in English, and they are governed by the preceding verbs or nouns. These particles are the following: *a, para, de, com, em, por, até, depois de;* and the article *o*, when the infinitive serves as a nominative to another verb; as, *o dizer e o fazer são duas coisas*, saying and doing are two different things.

*A* coming between two verbs denotes the second as the object of the first: as, *a tardança das nossas esperanças nos ensina a modificar os nossos dezejos*, the delay of our hopes teaches us to modify our desires; *elle começa a discorrer*, he begins to reason.

*Para* denotes the intention or usefulness; as, *a adversidade serve para experimentar a paciencia*, adversity serves to try one's patience. *Para* after an adjective denotes its object; as, *está prompto para obedecer*, he is ready to obey.

*De* is put between two verbs, if the first governs the genitive or ablative; and when the substantive or adjective governs either of these two cases, *de* must go before the following verbs, or infinitive: as, *venho de ver a meu pai*, I have just seen my father; *é tempo de hir-se*, it is time to go away; *el-rei foi servido de mandar*, the king has been pleased to order.

The infinitive is on several occasions governed by prepositions or conjunctions; as, *sem dizer palavra*, without speaking a word; where you may observe it is expressed in English by the participle present: as, *nunca se cança de jogar*, he is never weary of playing; *diverte-se em caçar*, he delights in hunting; *elle está dôente por trabalhar demasiado*, by working too much he is sick; *perde o seu tempo em passeiar*, he loses his time in walking; *hei-de ir-me sem me despedir?* shall I go away without taking my leave?

The infinitive is also used passively; as, *não ha que dizer, que ver*, &c., there is nothing to be said, seen, &c.

The gerund of any verb active may be conjugated with the verb *estar*, to be, after the same manner as in English: as, *estou escrevendo*, I am writing; *elle estava dormindo*, he was asleep, &c.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### OF THE SYNTAX OF PARTICIPLES AND GERUNDS.

The participle in the Portuguese language generally ends in *do* or *to*; as, *amado, visto, dito*, &c.

The active participles that follow the verb *ter*, to have, must end in *o*; as,

*Tenho visto el-rei*, I have seen the king.
*Tenho visto a rainha*, I have seen the queen.
*Eu tinha amado os livros*, I had loved books.
*Eu tinha levado as cartas*, I had carried the letters.

We meet with authors who sometimes make the parti-

ciples agree with the thing of which they are speaking; as, in *Camoens*, canto 1, stanza xxix.:

*E porque como vistes, tem* passados.
*Na viagem tão asperos perigos,*
*Tantos climas e céos* exprimentados, &c.

And canto 2, stanza lxxvi.:

*São offerecimentos verdadeiros,*
*E palavras sinceras não dobradas,*
*As que o rei manda aos nobres cavaleiros,*
*Que tanto mar e terras tem* passadas.

If it be a neuter verb, the participle ought always to end in *o*. Example:

*El-rei tem jantado*, the king has dined; *a rainha tem cêado*, the queen has supped; *os vossos amigos tem rido*, your friends have laughed; *minhas irmãs tem dormido*, my sisters have slept.

When the active participle appears to precede an infinitive, it must be terminated in *o*; as, *o juiz lhe tinha feito cortar a cabeça*, the judge has caused his head to be cut off.

The passive participles which are joined with the tenses of the verb *ser*, to be, agree with the substantive that precedes the verb *ser*; as, *o capitão foi louvado*, the captain was praised; *a virtude é estimada*, virtue is esteemed; *os preguiçosos são censurados*, the lazy are blamed; *as vossas joias forão vendidas*, your jewels were sold.

The Portuguese generally suppress the gerunds *having* and *being* before the particles: as, *dito isto*, having said so; *acabado o sermão*, the sermon being ended. This manner of speaking is called by grammarians the ablative absolute.

The participle of the present tense in Portuguese has

singular and plural, but one termination serves for both genders: as, *um homem temente a Deus*, a man fearing God; *uma mulher temente a Deus*, a woman fearing God; *homens tementes a Deus*, a people fearing God.

There are many participles which are used substantively; as, *ignorante*, *amante*, *ouvinte*, *estudante*, &c., an ignorant, a lover, an auditor or hearer, a scholar, &c.

It is better to place the nominative after the gerund than before; as, *estando el-rei na comedia*, the king being at the play.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

I. A PREPOSITION is a part of speech which is put before nouns, and sometimes before verbs, to explain some particular circumstance.

Prepositions may be divided into separable and inseparable. An inseparable preposition is never found but in compound words, and signifies nothing of itself. A separable preposition is generally separated from other words, and signifies something of itself.

The inseparable prepositions are:

*Ab* and *abs;* as, *abrogar*, to abrogate; *abster-se*, to abstain.

*Arce*, or *archi;* as, *arcebispo*, an archbishop; *archiduque*, an archduke.

*Ad;* as, *adventicio*, adventitious.

*Am;* as, *ambiguo*, ambiguous; *amparo*, protection, shelter.

*Circum ;* as, *circumstancia*, circumstance.

*Co ;* as *cohabitar*, to live together, to cohabit.

*Des* serves to express the contrary of the word it is joined to ; as, *desacerto*, mistake ; *desfazer*, to undo ; *desenganar*, to undeceive, are the contrary of *acerto*, *fazer*, and *enganar*.

*Dis ;* as, *dispôr*, to dispose ; *distinguir*, to distinguish ; *distribuir*, to distribute.

*Ex ;* as, *extrahir*, to extract.

*In* has commonly a negative or privative sense, denoting the contrary of the meaning of the word it precedes ; as, *incapaz*, unable ; *infeliz*, unhappy ; *inacção*, inaction, &c. : but sometimes it is affirmative, as in Latin.

Observe that *in* before *r* is changed into *ir ;* as, *irregular*, irregular, *irracional*, irrational : before *l* into *il ;* as *illegitimo*, illegitimate : before *m*, *in* is changed into *im ;* as *immaterial*, immaterial.

*Ob ;* as, *obviar*, to obviate.

*Pos ;* as, *pospôr*, to postpone.

*Pre ;* as, *preceder*, to go before ; *predecessor*, an ancestor.

*Pro ;* as, *propôr*, to propose ; *prometter*, to promise.

*Re* is a particle borrowed from the Latin, which generally denotes iteration, or backward action : as, *reedificar*, to rebuild ; *repercutir*, to strike back.

*So ;* as *socorrer*, to help, to succour.

*Sor ;* as *sorrir*, to smile.

*Sos ;* as, *soster*, to support.

*Soto ;* as, *sotopôr*, to put or lay under.

*Sub* or *sob ;* as, *subalterno*, subaltern ; *subscrever*, to subscribe ; *sobpena*, *sobcolor*, &c.

The Arabic article *al*, which is common to all genders and both numbers, is found in the beginning of almost

all the words that remain in the Portuguese language from the Arabic, and it is the surest way to distinguish them. But the Portuguese articles are added to the Arabic nouns, without taking off their article, *al* : as, *a almofada*, the cushion ; *o Alcorão*, the Koran, &c.

The Greek preposition *anti* enters into the composition of a great many Portuguese words, which cannot be set down here. It is enough to observe that it signifies generally opposite ; as in *Antipodas*, Antipodes ; *antipapa*, anti-pope. And sometimes it signifies before ; as in *antiloquio*, a preface, introductory remarks ; but in this last sense it is derived from the Latin preposition *ante*.

### OF SEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

II. It is absolutely impossible ever to attain to the knowledge of any language whatever, without thoroughly understanding the various relations denoted by the prepositions, and the several cases of nouns which they govern ; both which relations and cases being arbitrary, vary and differ much in all languages. This only instance will evince it : the English say, *to think of a thing ;* the French, *to think to a thing ;* the Germans and Dutch, *to think on* or *upon a thing ;* the Spaniards and Portuguese, *to think in a thing*, &c. Now, it will avail an Englishman but little to know that *of* is expressed in Portuguese by *de*, if he does not know what relations *em* and *de* denote in the language ; since the Portuguese say, to think *in* a think, and not *of* a thing: therefore we will treat here of each of them, and of their construction separately.

1st. *A*, or rather *ao*, *ás*, *aos* (at, in, on, &c.), deno the place whither one is going ; as,

*Eu vou a Londres*, I go to London.

*Voltar a Portugal*, to return or go to Portugal.

*A*, in this sense, is a preposition, but in the following observations it is a particle.

2ndly. *A* denotes time: as, *chegar a tempo*, to arrive in time; *a todo hora*, at all hours.

3rdly. *A* denotes the mode of being or of doing of people; as also their posture, gesture, or action: as,

*Estar á sua vontade*, to be at one's ease.

*A direita*, on the right hand; *á esquerda*, on the left hand.

*Viver á sua vontade* to live to one's mind, as one likes.

*Andar a pé, ou a cavallo*, to go on foot or on horseback.

*Montar a cavállo*, to ride on horseback.

*Correr á redea sôlta*, to ride full speed.

*Trajar á Franceza*, to dress after the French mode.

*Viver á Ingleza*, to live after the English fashion.

*Andar a grandes passos*, to walk at a great rate.

*Andar a passos lentos*, to walk very slowly.

4thly. *A* denotes the price of things; as, *a oito xelins* at eight shillings. It denotes also the weight: but as the nouns signifying weight are generally used in the plural number, *s* is added to *a*, when it is placed before nouns of the feminine gender, and *os* when it precedes nouns of the masculine gender: thus, *ás onças*, by the ounce; *aos arrateis*, by the pound, &c. *A* denotes also the measure: as, *medir a palmos*, to span or measure by the hand extended.

When *a* is preceded by *d'aqui*, and followed by a noun of time, it denotes the space of time after which something is to be done; as, *el-rei partirá d'aqui a tres dias*, the king will set out three days hence.

5thly. *A* denotes the tools used in working, as likewise the games one plays at: as, *abrir ao buril*, to grave: where *o* is added to *a*; *trabalhar á candea*, to do anything by candle-light; *á agulha*, with the needle.

*Andar á vela*, to sail *or* to be under sail.

*Jogar a pella*, to play at tennis.

*Jogar as cartas*, to play at cards; here *s* is added to *a*; the noun being of the feminine gender and plural number.

*Jogar aos centos*, to play at piquet; here *os* is added to *a*, as preceding a noun signifying a game, of the masculine gender and plural number.

6thly. *A* signifies sometimes *as*. Example: *está isto a seu gosto?* is this as you like it? And sometimes it signifies *after*: as, *a seu modo*, after his *or* her way. It signifies also *in*; as, *ao principio*, in the beginning; but then *o* is added to it.

7thly. *A* is also put before infinitives, preceded by another verb; as, *ensinar a cantar*, to teach to sing. It is also placed between two equal numbers, to denote order; as, *dois a dois*, two by two; *quatro a quatro*, four by four: and sometimes it is preceded by a participle or adjective, and followed by an infinitive mood.

8thly. *A* is a particle of composition, with many nouns, verbs, and adverbs, of which it often increases the meaning; as, *adinheirado*, very rich, that has a great deal of money: but it generally expresses in verbs the action of the nouns they are composed of; as, *ajoelhar*, to kneel down, which is formed from *a* and *joelho*, knee; *abrandar*, to appease; *alargar*, to enlarge; from *brando*, soft; *largo*, wide, &c.

9thly. *A*, when it is preceded by the verb *ser*, and followed by the personal pronouns, signifies *in the stead of*; as, *se eu fosse a vós, faria aquillo*, if I were you (in your place), I would do that.

10thly. When *a* is placed before *casa*, and the sense implies *going to*, it is rendered into English by *to*, but the word *casa* is left out; as, *elle foi á casa do governador*, he went to the governor's. You must observe that *a* in this sense is a preposition.

11thly. *Ao pé* signifies *near;* as, *ponde um ao pé do outro*, place, put, *or* set them near one another. Sometimes *mesmo* comes before *ao pé*, to express still more the nearness of a thing, and *mesmo ao pé* is rendered into English by *hard by, just by*, &c.; as, *a sua casa está mesmo ao pé da minha*, his house is just by mine.

12thly. When the noun *respeito* is preceded by *a* it is used in the same sense as *em comparação*, but requires one of these particles, *do, da, dos, das*, after it, and signifies *in comparison of, in regard to, in respect of;* as, *isto é nada a respeito do que posso dizer*, this is nothing to other things that I can say.

13thly. When *a* comes before a neuter verb, it marks a dative; and after an active verb, an accusative case.

*A* before the word *proposito* is used in familiar discourse; as, *a proposito, esquecime de dizer-vos o outro dia*, now I think of it, I forgot to tell you the other day.

14thly. *Ao revez*, or *ás avessas*, are also used as prepositions, attended by *de, do, da*, &c., and it signifies *quite the reverse*, or *contrary;* as, *elle faz tudo ao revez*, or *ás avessas, do que houvera de ser, ou do que lhe dizem*, he does everything quite the reverse of right, or contrary to what he is bid.

15thly. *A* before *troco* signifies *provided that.* It is also used before the word *tiro;* as, *a tiro de peça*, within cannon-shot.

16thly. *Cara a cara, corpo a corpo*, signify face to face, body to body. *Tomar uma cousa a boa ou a má parte*, signifies *to take a thing well or ill.*

Such are the chief relations denoted by the particle *a*, The others must be learned in construing and reading good Portuguese books.

1st. *De*, or rather *do*, *da*, *dos*, *das* (of, from, &c.) denote, first, the place one comes from: as, *sahir de Londres*, to go out of London; *vir de França*, *das Indias*, &c., to come from France, from the Indies, &c.

2nd. *De* between two nouns denotes the quality of the person expressed by the first noun; as, *um homem de honra*, a man of honour: or the matter which the thing of the first noun is made of; as,

*Uma estatua de marmore*, a statue of marble.

*Uma ponte de madeira ou de pedra*, a wood or stone bridge.

Observe, that two nouns so joined with *de* are commonly rendered into English by two nouns likewise, but without a preposition, or rather by a compound word, whose first noun (whether substantive or adjective) expresses the matter and quality, manner, form, and use of the other: as, a stone bridge, *uma ponte de pedra*; a dancing-master, *um mestre de dança*.

3rd. *De*, *do*, *da*, *dos*, *das*, are used after the participles of the preterite, with *ser*; as, *ser amado*, *ou bem visto do povo*, *dos sabios*, &c., to be loved by the people, by the learned, &c.

*Do* serves for the masculine, *da* for the feminine, and *de* for both.

4th. *De* sometimes signifies *by*; as, *de noite*, by night; *de dia*, by day.

5th. *De* before *em* and many nouns of time denotes the regular interval of the time after which something begins again; as, *eu vou vel-o de dois em dois dias*, I go to see him every other day: and before nouns of place and adverbs repeated with *em* or *para* between, *de* denotes the

passing from one place or condition to another; as, *correr de rua em rua*, to run from street to street; *de mal para peor*, from bad to worse.

6th. *De* after some verbs signifies *after* or *in;* as, *elle portou-se d'esta sorte*, he behaved in *or* after this manner.

7th. *De* is used before an infinitive, and is then governed by some preceding noun and verb: as, *capaz de ensinar*, capable of teaching; *digno de ser amado*, worthy to be loved, &c.; *procurar de fazer*, to endeavour to do; *authoridade de prégar*, the power *or* authority of preaching, &c.

8th. *De* is sometimes rendered into English by *on;* as, *pôr-se de joelhos*, to kneel down on one's knees.

9th. *De* between two nouns denotes the use which a thing is designed for: as, *azeite de candea*, lamp-oil; *arma de fogo*, a fire-arm; *moinho de vento*, a windmill.

This relation is expressed in English by two nouns, making a compound word; the first of which signifies the manner, form, and use, denoted by the Portuguese preposition: as, *cadeira de braços*, an arm-chair *or* elbow-chair; *vela de cera*, a wax-candle, &c.

10th. *De* denotes sometimes the qualities of things; as, *meias de tres fios*, stockings with three threads. Sometimes it denotes also the price; as, *panno de dezoito xelins*, eighteen-shilling cloth.

11th. *De* is sometimes rendered into English by *upon;* as, *viver* or *sustentar-se de peixe*, to live upon fish. Sometimes it is rendered into English by *with;* as, *morrer de frio*, to starve with cold.

12th. *De* sometimes signifies *for* or *out of;* as, *saltar de alegria*, to leap for joy; *de modesto*, out of modesty.

13th. *De* signifies sometimes *at;* as, *zombar de alguem*, laugh at one.

14th. *De* is sometimes left out in English; as, *gozar de uma cousa*, to enjoy a thing.

15th. *De*, followed by two nouns of number and the preposition *até* between them, is rendered into English by *between;* as, *um homem de quarenta até cincoenta annos*, a man between forty and fifty.

16th. *De*, preceded by the preposition *diante*, is left out in English: as, *diante de mim*, before me; *diante de Deus*, before God.

17th. *De*, when it is placed before *casa*, and the sense implies *coming from*, is rendered into English by *from;* but the word *casa* sometimes is left out in English, and sometimes not; as, *venho de casa* (meaning my house), I come from home, from my house: but *venho da casa da Senhora C.* must be rendered into English thus, *I come from Mrs. C.'s.*

Finally, *de* is used before several words: as, *de bruços*, lying all along on the ground; *de madrugada*, early in the morning; *de veras*, in earnest, seriously; *de verão*, in summer; *homem de palavra*, a man as good as his word; *de costas*, backwards, *or* on one's back; *andar de pé*, to be sickly without being bed-ridden; and many others which must be learned by use.

ANTES.

III. *Antes*, before, shows a relation of time, of which it denotes priority; and is always opposite to *depois*, after; as, *antes da creação do mundo*, before the creation of the world.

*Primeiro* is also used as a preposition; as, *elle chegou primeiro que eu*, he arrived here before me.

DIANTE.

IV. *Diante*, before, shows a relation of place, and it is always opposite to *detraz*, behind. It signifies also some-

times *em* or *na presença :* as, *ha arvores diante de sua casa,* there are trees before his house ; *ponde aquillo diante do fogo,* set *or* put that before the fire ; *prégar diante d'el-rei,* to preach before the king.

*Diante* is also sometimes an adverb, and may be used instead of *adiante ;* as, *ir diante,* or *adiante,* to go before ; but in the following phrase you must say, *não vades tão adiante,* and not *diante,* do not go so far ; *por diante* is to be rendered into English by *on* in the following phrase, *ide por diante,* go on.

DEPOIS.

V. *Depois,* after, denotes posteriority of time, and is used in opposition to *antes :* as, *depois do diluvio,* after the deluge ; *depois do meio dia,* afternoon.

*Depois* is also used with an infinitive ; as, *feito aquillo,* or *tendo feito aquillo,* or *depois de fazer aquillo,* after having done that : and it is also made a conjunction with *que,* governing the indicative ; as, *depois que teve feito aquillo,* after he had done that.

DETRAZ.

VI. *Detraz,* behind, denotes posteriority both of place and order, and it is said in opposition to *diante :* as, *a sua casa está detraz da vossa,* his house is behind yours ; *elle vinha detraz de mim,* he walked after me.

EM.

VII. *Em,* or *no, na, nos, nas* (in, into, within, &c.), denote a relation both of time and place. The many various significations in which these prepositions are used must be accurately observed, and much regard had to them in practice.

*No* and *na* are sometimes rendered into English by *a ;* as, *duas vezes no dia, na semana,* &c., twice a-day, a-week, &c.

*No*, *na*, &c., are always used before nouns denoting the place wherein something is kept; as, *está no gabinete*, it is in the closet; *na papeleira*, in the bureau; *nas gavetas*, in the drawers; *na rua*, in the street, &c.; but sometimes they are rendered into English by *upon*; as, *cahir no chão*, to fall upon the ground.

*Em*, *no*, *na*, &c., signify commonly *in*; as, *em Londres*, in London; *está na graça d'el-rei*, he is in favour with the king: but in some cases it has a very particular meaning; as, *estar em corpo*, which signifies literally *to be in body*, but the true sense of it is *to be without a cloak*, so that the body is more exposed to view without an upper garment. *Estar em pernas*, litterally *to be in legs*, signifies *to be bare legged*; that is, the legs exposed without stockings. *Estar em camisa* is said of one that has only the shirt on his back.

When this preposition *em* is before an infinitive, then it is an English gerund; as, *consiste em fallar bem*, it consists in speaking well: but when it is found before a gerund, it signifies *as soon as*; as, *em acabando irei*, as soon as I have done, I will go.

*Nos nossos tempos* is rendered into English by *now-a-days*.

*Em* is used in sentences that imply a general sense; as, *elle está em miseravel estado*, he is in a wretched condition; and not, *no miseravel*: but if the sentence implies a particular sense, you must make use of *no*, *na*, &c.; as, *no miseravel estado em que elle está*, in the wretched condition wherein he is; and not *em miseravel*. You must observe in this last example and the like, that *em* is to be used before *que*, and not *no*, *na*, &c., which are to be placed only before *qual*: therefore you must not say, *no miseravel estado no que elle está*; but *no miseravel estado no qual elle está*.

*Em*, construed with pronouns without an article, makes a sort of adverb, rendered into English by a preposition and a noun ; thus, in this sentence, *nós iremos em coche*, we shall go in a coach, *em coche* is an adverb of manner, which shows how we shall go ; but *no coche* denotes something besides : as, if a company were considering how they shall ride to a place, somebody would say, *vós ireis na cadeirinha, e nós no coche*, you shall go in a chair, and we in a coach ; *no coche* would be said in opposition to *na cadeirinha*, and both respectively to some specified chair and coach ; or else they should say, *vós ireis em cadeirinha, e nós em coche.* But in this other sentence, *eu deixei o meu chapeo no coche*, I left my hat in the coach, it would be improper to say *em coche*, because some particular coach is meant, and that which has driven me here or there, or which has been spoken of.

We say *de verão, no verão*, or *em o verão ; de inverno, no inverno*, &c., in summer, in winter, &c.

*Em* is also rendered into English by *at ;* as, *em todo tempo*, at all times.

*Em* is used, and never *no, na*, &c., before proper names of cities and authors : as, *elle está em Londres*, he is in London ; *nós lêmos em Cicero*, we read in Cicero. But they say, *no Porto*, in Oporto.

*Em*, and *no, na*, &c., are construed with the names of kingdoms ; as, *em* or *na Inglaterra*, in England : but *no, na*, is most commonly construed with names of provinces ; as, *no Alentejo, na Beira*, &c., in Alentejo, in Beira, &c.

*Em* is sometimes rendered into English by *into ;* as, *Narciso foi transformado em flor*, Narcissus was metamorphosed into a flower : and sometimes by *to ;* as, *de rua em rua*, from street to street.

*No, na*, are sometimes rendered into English by

*against;* as, *dar com a cabeça na parede,* to dash one's head against the wall.

*No, na,* &c., are also rendered into English by *in,* and sometimes by *into;* as, *ter um menino nos braços,* to hold a child in one's arms; *entregar alguma coisa nas mãos de alguem,* to deliver a thing into somebody's hands.

*Em* is used before the word *travez;* as in this phrase, *pôr-se de mal em travez com alguem,* to fall out together.

*Em,* before a noun of time, denotes the space of time that elapses in doing something; as, *el-rei foi a Hanover em tres dias,* the king went to Hanover in three days that is, he was no longer than three days in going.

*Em* is sometimes used after the verb *hir,* to go; as, *vai em graça de Deus,* he goes with the blessing of God.

*Em* before *quanto,* and sometimes without it, is rendered into English by *while* or *whilst;* as, *em quanto vós fazeis aquillo, eu farei isto,* while you do that, I shall do this: but if they are followed by a noun of time with an interrogation, then they must be rendered into English by *in how much,* or *many;* as, *em quanto tempo?* in how much time? Observe, that *em quanto a mim, a ti, a elle,* &c., are rendered into English by *for what concerns me, thee, him,* &c.

*No* serves for the masculine, *na* for the feminine, and *em* for both.

*Em* signifies *as:* as, *em sinal da sua amizade,* as a token of his friendship; *em premio,* as a reward.

The prepositions *em, no, na,* &c., and *dentro,* have very often the same signification, therefore they may sometimes be used one instead of the other: as, *está na gaveta,* or *dentro da gaveta,* it is in the drawer; *está na cidade,* or *dentro da cidade,* he is in town.

*Em* before the words *favor, utilidade, consideração, razão,* and the like, signifies *in behalf of, on account of,*

&c., as, *em razão das bellas acçoens que elle tem feito*, in consideration of the great things he has performed.

Observe, that they very often make an elision of the last vowels, *o*, *a*, of the preposition *no*, *na*, where there is a vowel in the beginning of the next word; as, *n' agoa*, instead of *na agoa*: they also cut off the *e* of the preposition *em*, and change the *m* into *n*, as you may see in *Camoens*, canto 2, stanza xxxii., *n'algum porto*, instead of *em algum porto*, wherein you must observe that *n'* is to be rendered into English by *to* or *into*.

COM.

VII. This preposition signifies *with*, and it denotes conjunction, union, mixing, assembling, keeping company: as, *casar uma donzella com um homem honrado*, to marry a maid with an honest man; *hir com alguem*, to go with some one; *com a ajuda de Deus*, by God's help, &c.

Observe, that most of the adverbs formed of the adjectives are turned into Portuguese by the preposition *com* and the substantive: as, *atrevidamente*, boldly; *com atrevimento*, with boldness; *elegantemente*, elegantly; *com elegancia*, with elegance; *cortezmente*, politely; *com cortezia*, with politeness, &c.

The last consonant, *m*, is very often cut off, even before the noun of number, *um*, one; and so they say *c'um*, instead of *com um*, as may be seen in *Camoens*, canto 2, stanza xxxvii.

*With me*, *with thee*, *with himself*, &c., are rendered into Portuguese by *commigo*, *comtigo* or *comvosco*, *comsigo*, *com nosco*, *comvosco*, *comsigo*.

When *com* is preceded by *para*, it signifies towards, and sometimes *over* in English: as, *sejamos piedosos para com os pobres*, let us be merciful towards the poor; *ter*

*grande poder para com alguem*, to have great influence over somebody's mind.

*Com* before the word *capa* is used metaphorically, and then it signifies *under colour*, or *pretext.*

### PARA.

VIII. *Para* is rendered into English by *for;* but it signifies also to, when it is found before the infinitive, and denotes the intention, or purpose in doing something: as, *este livro é para meu irmão*, this book is for my brother; *esta penna é para escrever*, this pen is to write; *Deus nos fez para amal-o*, God made us for to love him; *o comer é necessario para conservar a vida*, eating is necessary for preserving life.

*Para que* is rendered into English by *for what;* as, *para que é isto?* for what is this? and sometimes by *that*, or *in order that;* as, *para que venha ver-me*, that he may come and see me. But *porque* signifies *why*, *for what*, *upon what account;* as, *porque não vindes?* why do you not come? but when it is not followed by an interrogation, it signifies *because.*

*Para* serves likewise before the verbs, to denote what one is able to do in consequence of his present disposition: as, *elle é bastante forte para andar a cavallo*, he is strong enough to ride; *elle tem bastante cabedal para sustentar-se*, he has means enough to maintain himself; *a occasião e muito favoravel para nos não servirmos della*, the occasion is too favourable to let it slip.

*Para* expresses also the capacity or incapacity of doing anything: as, *elle é homem para tudo*, he is a man fit for anything; *é homem para pouco*, he is good for little; *é homem para nada*, he is good for nothing.

This preposition is also used to denote the end or

motive of doing anything: as, *trabalho para o bem publico*, I work for the public good; *um hospital para os pobres*, an hospital for the poor.

*Para* is a preposition of time: as, *isto me basta para todo o anno*, this is sufficient for me for all the year; *estão unidos para sempre*, they are united for ever; *para dois meses era muito pouco*, for two months it was too little.

*Para* is sometimes preceded by the adverb *lá*, and followed by a noun of time, and then it is rendered into English by *against* or *towards;* as, *lá para o fim da semana*, against the end of the week, *or* towards the end of the week.

*Para* is sometimes rendered into English by *considering*, or *with respect to:* as, *este menino está muito adiantado para o idade que tém*, or *para o pouco tempo que estuda*, this child is very forward for his age, *or* considering the little time he has learned; *para ser Inglez falla muito bem*, he speaks very well considering that he is an Englishman.

*Para* signifies sometimes *just* or *ready to;* as, *elle está para partir*, he is just going away, he is ready to go.

*Para* is also used before the word *graças*: as, *elle não é para graças*, he takes no jest; *elle não está para graças*, he is out of humour, *or* he is in an ill-humour.

*Para onde?* signifies *whither? to what place?*

*Para que?* or *para que fim?* signifies *to what end* or *purpose? Para cima* signifies *upward.*

*Para uma e outra parte* signifies *to both sides, places*, or *parts.*

*Para* is also rendered into English by *towards*, and is said of places; as, *para o oriente*, towards *or* to the east.

*Para onde quer que* signifies *whither* or *to what place thou wilt, anywhere.*

*Para outra parte* signifies *towards another place.*

*Para commigo*, towards me.

*Para o diante* signifies *for the time to come.*

*De mim, para mim*, signifies *for what concerns me.*

*Para* is used by *Camoens*, canto 2, stanza xxiv., before the preposition *detraz*, and signifies *backwards.*

*Para* between two nouns of number is rendered into English by *or*, and sometimes by *and :* as, *um homem de quarenta para cincoenta annos*, a man between forty and fifty ; *dista de quatro para cinco legoas*, it is about four or five leagues distant.

POR.

IX. *Por, pelo, pela, pelos*, or *pelas*, signifies *for :* as, *por amor de vós*, for your sake ; *por seis semanas*, for six weeks ; *palavra por palavra*, word for word.

*Polo* and *pola*, instead of *pelo* and *pela*, are out of use.

*Por* sometimes denotes that the thing is not yet done : as, *esta obra está por acabar*, this work is not yet done.

*Por*, by, for, over, through : as, *alcancei-o por empenho*, I obtained it by protection ; *eu vou por dinheiro*, I am going for money ; *passeio pelos campos*, I walk through the fields ; *por tudo o reino*, all over the kingdom.

When *por* is before an infinitive, and followed by a negative, in the latter part of the sentence, it is rendered into English by *although* or *though :* as, *por ser devota*, or *por devota que seja, não deixa de ser mulher*, though she is a religious woman, yet she is a woman ; *por ser pobre*, or *por pobre que seja, não deixa de ser soberba*, though she has no fortune, she is nevertheless, *or* for all that, proud. Here the negative together with the verb *deixar* are rendered into English by the verb *to be*, and the particles *nevertheless, yet*, &c. Sometimes the words *nem por isso* are used before the verb *deixar*, but the sense is the same.

*Por* followed by an adjective and the particle *que*, with a verb in the subjunctive mood, is rendered into English by *ever so:* as, *por grande que elle seja*, let him be ever so great; *por pouco que seja*, ever so little.

*Por* before *menos* signifies *far less than*, or *under;* as, *vm^ce não o terá por menos de vinte libras*, you shall not have it under twenty pounds.

*Por* before *quanto*, with an interrogation, signifies, *for how much, at what rate?* But if there be no interrogation, as in the following and the like sentences, then it is to be rendered into English by *for ever so much;* as, *não o faria por quanto me dessem*, I would not do it for ever so much.

*Por* before *cima* signifies *upwards*, and before *baixo* is rendered into English by *downwards;* as, *o remedio obra por cima e por baixo*, the medicine operates, *or* works, upwards and downwards.

*Por* before *pouco, muito, bem*, &c., and followed by *que*, makes a sort of conjunction governing the subjunctive, and is rendered into English by *if*, followed by *ever* or *ever so little, much, well*, &c., as, *por pouco que erreis*, if you do amiss ever so little; *por bem que eu faça*, if I do ever so well, &c.

*Por* before *mim* signifies sometimes *as for* or *for my part:* as, *por mim estou prompto*, as for me, *or* for my part, I am ready; *por mim podeis dormir se quizerdes*, as for me, you may sleep.

*Por, pelo, pela*, &c., denote the efficient cause of a thing, as also the motive and means, or ways of doing it; in all which significations they are rendered into English by *by, through, out of, at*, &c.; as,

*A Asia foi conquistada por Alexandre*, Asia was conquered by Alexander.

*Vós fallais d'isso só por inveja*, it is out of envy only you speak of it.

*Elle entrou pela porta, mas sahio pela janella,* he got in at the door, but he got out at the window, &c.

*Por* denotes place, after the verbs *ir* and *passar;* as, *por onde ireis vós?* which way shall you go?

*Eu passarei por França,* I will go through France; *por onde passou elle?* which way did he go?

*Por* construed with nouns without an article, denotes most times *distribution of people, time,* and *place;* and it is rendered into English by *a,* or *every,* before the noun: as,

*Elle deu tanto por cabeça,* he gave so much a-head.

*Tanto por soldado, por anno, por mez, por semana,* &c., so much a-soldier, a-year, a-month, a-week; *a razão de vinte por cento,* at the rate of twenty per cent.

*Elle pede tanto por legoa,* he asks so much a league, *or* every league.

*Por* between two nouns without an article, or between two infinitives without a preposition, denotes the choice which one makes between two things, alike in their nature, but different in their circumstances; as,

*Casa por casa antes quero esta que aquella,* since I must have one of these two houses, I like this better than that; *morrer por morrer, melhor é morrer combatendo que fugindo,* when a man must die it is better to die fighting than running away.

*Pelo meio* is rendered into English by *through;* as, *pelo meio dos campos,* through the fields.

*Por meio* is rendered into English by *by;* as, *elle alcançou o seu intento por meio de astucias,* he has compassed his ends by devices.

*Por turno* signifies *in one's turn.*

*Por* before the infinitive is used instead of *para* by the best Portuguese writers, and *porque* instead of *para que;* as may be seen particularly in *Camoens,* canto 2, stanzas vii. and viii., and in the following example: *por não* or

*para não repetir o que já temos dito*, not to repeat what we have already said.

*Por* is sometimes rendered into English by *for*, *upon the account of*, *for the sake*, &c.: as, *elle fará isto por amor de vós*, he will do this upon your account, *or* for your sake; *deixarão-o por morto*, he was left for dead; *eu tenho-o por meu amigo*, I take him to be my friend; *todos os homens de bem são*, or *estão*, *por elle*, all honest people are for him, *or* are on his side; *por quem me tomais vós?* for whom do you take me?

We have already observed that *porque*, without an interrogation, signifies *because*; but it has the same signification in the following sentence, and the like: *porque elle é mentiroso segue-se que tambem eu o seja?* because he is a liar, does it follow therefore that I am one?

*Por isto*, or *por ista razão*, signifies *therefore*.

*O porque* signifies the reason, the cause, or the subject; as, *sabe-se o porque?* is it known upon what account?

*Por modo de dizer* signifies *as one may say*, *if I* or *we may say*, &c.

*Por diante* signifies *before*; and *por detraz* signifies *behind*.

*Por ventura* signifies *perhaps*.

*Pelo passado* signifies *formerly*, *in time past*, *heretofore*.

*Por nenhum caso*, by no means.

*Por mar e por terra*, by sea and land.

*Um por um* signifies *one by one*.

*Por* is sometimes rendered into English by *in*; as, *elles são vinte por todos*, they are twenty in all.

When the verb *passar* is followed by *por* then the word *alto* signifies *to forget*; as, *passou-lhe aquillo por alto*, he forgot that: but speaking of goods it signifies *to smuggle*.

*Por* joined with the verb *ir* signifies *to fetch* and *to go*

*for:* as, *vai por vinho*, go fetch some wine; *vai pelo medico*, go for the physician.

*Por* is commonly used before substantives: as, *por exemplo*, for example; *por commodidade*, for conveniency; *por costume*, for custom's sake: and many others, that may be learned by use.

You must observe that *pelo* serves for the masculine, *pela* for the feminine, and *por* for both.

### CONTRA.

X. *Contra*, against, contrary to, denotes opposition; as, *que diz vm^ce contra isto?* what do you say against this? It signifies also, *over against*, *opposite to.*

*Prô e contra* signifies in English *pro and con.*

### DESDE.

XI. *Desde* denotes both time and place and enumeration of things, and is commonly followed in the sentence by the preposition, *até*, to; then *desde* denotes the term *from whence*, and *até*, that of *hitherto*: as,

*Desde o principio até o fim*, from the beginning to the end.

*Elle foi a pé desde Windsor até Londres*, he walked from Windsor to London.

*Eu tenho visto todos desde o primeiro até o ultimo*, I have seen them all from the first to the last; *fôrão todos mortos desde o primeiro até o ultimo*, they were all slain to a man.

*Desde a creação do mundo*, from *or* since the creation.

*Desde o berço, ou infancia*, from the cradle, from a child.

*Desde já*, even now; as, *desde já prevejo*, I even now foresee.

*Desde agora*, from this time forward.

*Desde então*, from that time ever since.

*Desde que*, as soon as, since.

*Desde quando?* how long since, *or* ago?

*Rio navegavel desde a sua nascente*, a river navigable at its very rise.

ATÉ.

XII. *Até* signifies *till*, *even*, *to*, &c., as you may see in the following examples :—

*Até onde?* how far?

*Até Roma*, as far as Rome.

*Até quando?* till when, *or* how long?

*Até que eu viva*, as long as I live.

*É um homem de tanta bondade, que até os seus inimigos são obrigados a estimal-o*, he is so good a man that even his enemies have a value for him.

*Até os mais vís homens tomavão a liberdade de*, &c., the very worst of men took such a liberty as to, &c.

*Até que*, until, till.

*Até ás orelhas*, up to the ears.

*Elle vendeo até a camisa*, he has sold the very shirt off his back.

*Até agora*, or *até aqui*, till now, *or* hitherto.

*Até aqui* (speaking of a place), to this place, hither, so far.

*Até la*, to that place, so far.

*Até que isto se faça*, till it be done.

*Até então*, till then, till that time.

*Até* is also used before an infinitive; as, *gritar até enrouquecer*, to bawl oneself hoarse.

*Rir até não poder mais*, to split one's sides with laughing.

*Dar de comer a alguem até o fartar*, to fill *or* cram one with food till he bursts.

*Até á primeira*, till our next meeting, till we meet again.

### POR CIMA.

XIII. *Por cima*, above, over, denotes superiority of place; as,

*Morar por cima de alguem*, to live *or* lodge above somebody.

*A balla lhe passou por cima da cabeça*, the ball went over his head.

*Por cima de tudo*, upon the whole.

### PARA CIMA.

XIV. *Para cima*, above, denotes superiority of age, and is sometimes put at the end of the sentence; as,

*Elles alistaram todos os que tinhão de dez annos para cima*, they enlisted everybody above ten.

### ACIMA.

XV. *Acima*, above, denotes rank, and some moral subjects; as,

*Acima d'elle*, above him, *or* superior to him.

*Estar acima de tudo*, to be above the world.

*Uma mulher que está acima de tudo, não se lhe dá do que o mundo diz d'ella*, a woman who is above the public censure, does not care what people say of her.

### EM CIMA.

XVI. *Em cima*, upon; as, *em cima da mesa*, upon the table.

*Em cima de tudo isto*, or only *em cima*, signifies *and besides all that, over and above all that.*

### DE CIMA.

XVII. *De cima*, when it is an adverb, signifies *from above;* but when a preposition, it is rendered into English by *from*, *off*, or *from off;* as,

*Tira aquillo de cima da mesa*, take that from off the table.

*Elle nunca apartou os seus olhos de cima d'ella*, he never turned his eyes from her.

*Cahir de cima das arvores*, to fall off the trees.

### DEBAIXO.

XVIII. The preposition *debaixo*, under, below, *or* from under, signifies subjection to a sway or government, and an epoch; as, *debaixo do imperio de Augusto*, under the empire of Augustus.

*Debaixo*, as a preposition of place, marks out inferiority of position; as,

*Tudo o que ha debaixo dos céos*, all there is under heaven.

*Ter uma almofada debaixo dos joelhos*, to have a cushion under the knees.

*Estar debaixo de chave*, to be under lock and key.

*Debaixo* is sometimes rendered into English by *upon;* as, *affirmar uma cousa debaixo de juramento*, to swear a thing, to declare upon oath.

### ABAIXO.

XIX. This preposition is rendered into English by *under*, *inferior*, or *next:* as, *assentou-se abaixo d'elles*, he sat inferior to *or* under them; *assentou-se abaixo de mim*,

he sat next inferior to me ; *abaixo d'el-rei elle é o primeiro*, he is the next man to the king.

This preposition is sometimes put at the end of the following phrases : *de telhas abaixo*, here below in this lower world ; *de cabeça abaixo*, headlong.

### FÓRA.

XX. *Fóra*, out, without, except, but, denotes exclusion and exception. It requires generally a genitive before a noun of time or place ; but it governs also the nominative : as,

*Fóra do reino*, out of the kingdom.

*Fóra da cidade*, out of town.

*Fóra de tempo*, out of season.

*Procura-o fóra de casa*, look for him without doors.

*Elles sahiram todos, fóra dous ou tres*, they all went out, except *or* but two or three.

*Elle lhe permite tudo, fóra o ir ás assembleas*, he indulges her in everything but in going to assemblies.

*Elle tem todos os poderes, fóra o de concluir este negocio*, he has full powers except of concluding this business.

*Fóra* is sometimes preceded by *tão*, and then it is to be rendered into English by *so far ;* as, *elle está tão fóra de soccorrer os seus alliados, que se declara contra elles*, he is so far from assisting his allies, that he declares himself against them.

*Fóra* is sometimes rendered into English by *besides ;* as, *fóra d'aquelles que*, &c., besides those that, &c. : and sometimes by *beyond ;* as, *fóra de medida*, beyond measure.

*Fóra de horas*, signifies *beyond the hour*, or *very late.*

*Pôr alguem fóra da porta*, or *mandar alguem pela porta fóra*, to turn one out of doors.

### DE FRONTE.

XXI. This preposition governs the genitive, and signifies *over against.* It is followed by *de, do, da,* &c. ; as,

*De fronte da sua casa está um outeiro,* over against his house is a hill.

*Eu estava de fronte d'elle,* I was over against him.

### SEM.

XXII. *Sem* signifies *without ;* as,

*Sem dinheiro,* without money.

*Sem duvida,* without doubt.

*Sem dar a entender,* or *sem fazer conhecer,* without giving to understand.

*Sem mais nem menos,* without any reason, *or* provocation.

*Estar sem amo,* to be out of place.

*Sem que algum acto precedente possa derrogar o presente,* any former act to the contrary of the present notwithstanding.

*Sem* governs also the infinitive, which is rendered into English with the participle ; *fallar sem saber,* to speak without knowing.

It is also a conjunction with *que,* governing the subjunctive ; as,

*Enfada-se sem que lhe digão nada,* he is angry without anybody saying anything to him.

*Não era eu já bastantemente infeliz, sem que procurasseis de acrescentar a minha infelicidade ?* was I not miserable enough before, but you must still labour to make me more so ?

*Lembro-me sem que me digais,* I remember without your telling.

*Elle virá sem que mandem por elle*, he will come without sending for him.

### CONFORME, *or* SEGUNDO.

XXIII. *Conforme*, or *segundo*, according to, conformable to, govern the nominative, and never the dative, as in English ; as,

*Elle foi tratado conforme o seu merecimento*, he was treated according to his deserts.

*Conforme o meu parecer*, in my judgment, in my opinion.

In common conversation *conforme* is used adverbially, and rendered into English as follows :

*Isso é conforme*, or only *conforme*, that is right, may be, that is according.

*Conforme a occasião o pedir*, according as there may be need.

### SOBRE.

XXIV. *Sobre* signifies *upon :* as, *sobre a mesa*, upon the table ; *sobre o rio*, upon the river.

*Sobre tudo*, or *sobre todas as coisas*, over all, above all, above all things, above anything, especially ; as, *sobre tudo tende cuidado na saude*, but, above all things, mind your health.

*Pôr alguem sobre si*, or *dar-lhe o primeiro lugar*, to place one above himself.

*Ir sobre uma cidade*, to march against a town.

*Ir sobre alguem*, to fall, *or* to rush upon one.

*Ir sobre seguro*, to go upon sure grounds.

*Sobre a noite*, about *or* towards the evening.

*Sobre o verde*, somewhat green.

*Sobre a minha palavra*, upon my word.

*Sobre palavra*, upon parole.

*Mandar carta sobre carta*, to send letter upon letter.

*Elle recebeo a carta sobre o jantar*, he had just dined when he received the letter.

*Elle dorme sobre o jantar*, he sleeps immediately after dinner.

*Sobre isto*, or *sobre estas coisas*, is sometimes rendered into English by *more than that*, or *besides that*; as,

*Elle o roubou, e sobre isto matou-o*, he robbed him, and more than that, he killed him.

*Sobre que* is rendered into English by *though*, or *although*; as,

*Este negocio sobre que é difficultoso não é impossivel*, although this is a hard affair, yet it is not impossible.

*Sobre* is rendered into English sometimes by *besides*; as,

*Sobre as miserias da guerra, elle teve a desgraça*, &c., besides the miseries of the war, he had the misfortune of, &c.

*Estar sobre si*, or *andar sobre si*, signifies *to stand upon one's guard.*

*Eu vos escreverei sobre esta materia*, I will write to you about this matter.

### ÁCERCA.

XXV. *Ácerca* signifies *about:* as, *ácerca d'isto lhe disse*, about this I told him; *ácerca de lá ir lhe respondi*, about going there I answered him.

### PERTO, JUNTO, AO PÉ, PEGADO.

XXVI. *Perto*, near, by, about, denotes proximity of place and time, and governs the genitive case; as, *aquillo está muito perto do lume*, that is very near the fire; *perto das oito horas*, about eight o'clock.

*Perto do rio*, near the river.

*Estamos perto do Natal*, we are near Christmas.

*Ao pé* requires also the genitive case; as,

*Assentai-vos ao pé de mim*, sit down by me, *or* near me; *ao pé do rio*, near the river, &c.

*Note*, that *junto*, near *or* near by, and *pegado*, hard by, require the dative case; as,

*Junto á cidade*, near the town.

*Pegado ao palacio*, hard by the palace.

### LONGE.

*Longe*, far, a great way off, governs the genitive, and the particle *de*, or *do*, *da*, &c.; as,

*Longe de casa*, far from home.

*Longe d'aqui*, far from hence.

### DE LONGO, *or* AO LONGO.

This preposition requires the genitive case; as,

*Ao longo da praia*, along the coast.

*Ao longo da costa*, *do prado*, &c., along the coast, the meadow, &c.

---

## OF FURTHER PARTICLES.

### AINDA, AINDA QUE, POSTOQUE *or* QUANDO BEM, AINDA ASSIM *or* COMTUDO.

*Ainda* signifies *yet;* as, *elle ainda não veio*, he is not come yet. It signifies also *even;* as, *seria vergonha ainda fallar d'isso*, it were a shame even to speak of it; *nem ainda por cem libras*, not even for a hundred pounds.

*Ainda que* signifies though *or* although: as, *ainda que vós sois mais velho do que elle*, though you be older than he; *ainda que assim fosse*, though it were so.

*Ainda que* is very often followed by *comtudo*, yet for all that; as, *ainda que elle não tivesse necessidade d'isso, comtudo*, &c., though he had no need of it, yet, &c.

*Ainda assim*, or *comtudo*, is sometimes rendered into English by *nevertheless*, or *for all that;* as, *ainda assim sempre elle foi louvavel*, he was praiseworthy for all that.

### JÁ DESDE, JÁ QUE, *and* JÁ POR QUE.

*Já desde* is rendered into English by *even from;* as, *já desde o principio*, even from the beginning.

*Já que* signifies *since;* as, *já que isso assim é*, since it is so.

The particle *que* sometimes is not placed immediately after *já;* as, *já ha dois annos que morreo*, he died two years since *or* ago.

*Já ha muito tempo que sahistes de casa*, it is a long time since you went from home.

*Já por que* is repeated in the same sentence, and then the first is rendered into English by *first, because;* and the second by *secondly, because;* as, *já por que era cego, já por que era coixo*, first, because he was blind, and secondly, because he was lame.

### DEPOIS QUE.

*Depois que* is rendered into English by *after;* as, *depois que eu tinha entrado*, after I was gone in.

### COM QUE.

*Com que* is only a note either of introduction or connexion; as,

*Com que havia um homem doente*, &c., now a certain man was sick; sometimes they add to it the particle

*assim*, and then it is to be rendered into English by *and so*.

### OU.

*Ou* signifies *or* or *either*: as, *ou bom, ou máo*, either good or bad; *mais ou menos*, more or less; *ou elle queira ou não*, whether he will or not,

### QUER.

*Quer*, when a particle, must be repeated, and the first is rendered into English by *either* or *whether*, and the second by *or*: as, *quer elle queira quer não*, whether he will or not; *quer vós o tenhais feito, quer não*, whether you have done that, or not.

### SE QUER, *or* AO MENOS.

*Se quer*, or *ao menos*, &c., signifies *at least, however*: as, *se vós não quereis ser por elle não sejais se quer contra elle*, if you do not choose to be for him, at least do not oppose him; *dai-lhe se quer com que sustentar-se*, give him, however, a subsistence; *o nosso primeiro fim é livrar-nos de todos os males, ao menos dos maiores*, our chief end is to be freed from all evils, at least the greatest.

*Nem se quer um* is rendered into English by *not even one*; as, *forão todos mortos, e nem se quer um escapou*, they were all slain to a man.

### QUANDO MUITO.

*Quando muito*, at most, at furthest, is generally used before the nouns of time and price: as, *elle estará aqui dentro em um mez quando muito*, he will be here in a month at furthest; *dez libras quando muito*, ten pounds at most.

### TANTO.

*Tanto*, so much, is sometimes followed by *como*, and then it is rendered into English by *as well as*, *as much as*, &c.

*Amo-te tanto como a mim mesmo*, I love thee as well as myself.

*Elle teme tanto como qualquer de vós, que lhe resulte algum dano*, he is afraid of harm as much as any of you.

*Cuidei que a estimasse tanto como a si mesmo*, I thought he esteemed her as much as he did himself.

*Elles vêem tanto de dia como de noite*, they can see as well by day as by night.

*Eu tive tanto como vós*, I had as much as you.

*Outro tanto* is rendered into English by *the double*, *twice as much*, or *as much ;* as,

*Eu alcancei outro tanto mais por isso*, I had as much more for it ; *eu posso fazer outro tanto*, I can do as much.

*Tanto mais* is followed by *que*, and rendered into English by *and the more so as ;* as,

*Eu estou prompto para ir com vm^ce um dia d'estes á comedia se vm^ce quizer ; tanto mais que se deve representar uma nova peça ;* I am ready to go with you some day or other to the play, if you will give me leave ; and the more so, as a new piece is to be acted.

*Tanto que*, or *logo que*, is rendered into English by *as soon as ;* as, *tanto que eu o vi*, as soon as I saw him.

*Tanto melhor* is rendered into English by *so much the better.*

*Tanto* is sometimes preceded by *com*, and followed by *que*, and is rendered into English by *so, provided that :* as, *com tanto que o façais*, provided that you do it ; *com tanto que me não faça mal*, so he does me no harm.

*Tanto quanto* is rendered into English by *as much as;* as, *tanto quanto posso*, as much as I can.

### TÃO.

*Tão*, so, is generally followed by *como;* as,

*Este não é tão bom como o outro*, this is not so good as the other; *eu sei isso tão bem como vós*, I know it as well as you.

*Tão* is sometimes followed by *que*, and is rendered into English by *so, such, to that degree;* as,

*Elle é tão prudente que não tem igual*, he is so wise that he has not his equal; *não sou tão louco que o creia*, I am not so simple as to believe it; *faz tão grande vento que*, &c., the wind is so high that, &c., *or* the wind blows to that degree, &c.

### COMO.

*Como* is rendered into English by *as, like, how*, &c., as may be seen in the following expressions:—

*Como?* how?

*Dizei-me como lhe hei de fallar?* tell me how I may speak to him.

*Como assim?* how so?

*Como!* what!

*Como quer que*, whereas.

*Como quer que seja*, howsoever, in what manner or fashion soever.

*Seja como fôr*, be it as it will.

*Como isto assim é*, since it is so.

*Como*, as it were, *or* almost.

*Como se*, as if, *or* even as if; as, *como se elles tivessem já vencido*, as if they had already overcome.

*Como tambem*, as well as.

*Rico como elle é*, as rich as he is.

*Como sois meu amigo quero*, &c., as, *or* because, you are my friend, I will, &c.

*Dizei-me o como*, tell me how.

*Eu sei como fazer para que elle venha*, I know how to make him come.

*Como elle lá não esteja, eu irei*, provided he is not there, I will come.

### ASSIM.

*Assim*, so, thus, is rendered into English as in the following expressions :—

*Pois é assim de veras? de veras que é assim*, is it even so? it is even so.

*Assim seja*, or *seja assim*, so be it, *or* be it so.

*Assim é*, it is so.

*Para assim dizer*, as it were.

*Assim sou eu louco que*, &c., I am not so foolish as to, &c.

*Assim Deus me salve*, as I hope to be saved.

*Tanto assim*, so that.

*Assim é que vós*, &c., is this your way, &c.

*Assim como assim*, after all, nevertheless, *or* for all that ; as, *em vão dilatais a vossa jornada, assim como assim é preciso que vades*, it is in vain for you to put off your journey, you must go thither nevertheless, *or* for all that, you must go after all.

*Assim como*, as well as, *or* as soon as.

*Basta assim por agora*, enough for the present.

*Assim na paz, como na guerra*, both in time of peace and war.

*Assim, assim*, so so, indifferent.

*Assim quizera elle como póde*, he can if he will.

*Assim* is sometimes followed by *que*, and is rendered into English by *how, what ;* as, *assim que quer isto dizer?*

how now? what do you mean by this? And sometimes it is followed by *como;* as, *assim como o sol eclipsa os outros planetas, da mesma sorte,* &c., as the sun eclipses the other planets, so, &c.

### SE.

*Se,* if: as, *se elle vier,* if he comes; *se me amasses,* should you love me; *se elle fosse homem de honra,* were he but an honest man; *se soubessem quem eu sou todos dirião,* &c., were it told who I am, every one would say, &c.; *se é verdade que,* &c., if so be that, &c.

The reciprocal verbs as well as those that are used impersonally, may have two *se* successively: as, *se se for,* if he goes away; *se se falla d'isso,* if they speak of it.

*Se* is sometimes rendered into English by *whether;* and when it is repeated, the second is rendered into English by *or;* as,

*Quizera saber se a culpa é nossa, se vossa,* I would know whether it is our fault or yours.

### ALIÁS.

*Aliás* is sometimes rendered into English by *else;* as, *entrai, porque aliás fecharei a porta,* come in, or else I will shut the door; *porque aliás serião os vossos filhos immundos,* else were your children unclean. And sometimes it is rendered into English by *otherwise, in other things* or *respects.*

### EMBORA.

*Embora* is rendered into English by *prosperously, auspiciously;* but sometimes it is a particle merely expletive, and answers to the Italian *pure;* as *dizei muito embora o que quizerdes,* say what you please: the Italian

says, *díte pur quel che vi piáce*, you may say what you please.

*Muito embora seja assim*, well, let it be so.

*Embora* is sometimes rendered into English by *away ;* as, *vai-te embora*, go away.

### SENÃO.

*Senão* signifies *if not, did not, were it not that, but that ;* as,

*Senão tivesse medo de meu pai*, did I not fear my father.

*Se elle não tivesse vergonha de confessar*, were he not ashamed to confess.

The following expressions, in which they make use of this particle, may be rendered into English by *but, for*, and some other variations.

*Senão fosse por elle*, but for him, *or* had it not been for him.

*Senão fosse por vós*, had it not been for you, without you, without your help, hindrance, &c.

*Senão fosse por mim, elle morreria de fome*, were it not for me, he would starve.

*Senão* is sometimes rendered into English by *but ;* as, *nem elles têm outro intento, senão*, &c., nor do they aim at anything else, but, &c.

*Ninguém disse assim senão Cicero*, nobody said so but Cicero.

*Senão* may be also expressed by *mais que*, in the following sentence and the like :

*Elle não faz senão jogar*, or *elle não faz mais que jogar*, he does nothing but play.

### NÃO, NÃO PORQUE.

*Não*, *not* or *no*, when followed by *porque*, is rendered into English by *not that*, *not but that*: as, *não porque lhe faltasse engenho*, not but that he had wit; *não porque não fosse justo, mas porque*, &c., not but that it was right, but because, &c.; *não porque a coisa seja impossivel, mas porque*, &c., not that the thing is impossible, but because, &c.

### TAMBEM, *or* OUTROSI.

*Tambem*, or *outrosi*, signifies *also*, *too*, *likewise*; as, *vós assim o quereis e eu tambem*, you will have it so and I too.

### PARA QUE, PORQUE.

See the prepositions *para* and *por*.

### POIS.

This particle is very much used by the Portuguese, and is rendered into English several ways, as in the following examples:—

*Pois ide, e vinde logo*, go, then, and come back presently.

*Pois não sou eu capaz de fazel-o?* what, am I not capable of doing it?

*Pois* or *pois então que quer dizer isto?* well, and what is the meaning of this?

*Pois* or *pois então que hei de fazer?* what shall I do then?

*Pois eu digo que elle está dentro*, why, he is here within, I say.

*Pois porque me vigiais?* why, then, do you watch me?

*Elle tem cabeça ; pois tambem um alfinete a tem*, he has got a head and so has a pin.

*Pois* before *não*, and preceded by an interrogation, denotes a strong assertion, and is rendered into English by *without doubt*, *yes*, *surely*, *to be sure*, &c., as, *virá elle ? pois não!* will he come ? yes, to be sure!

### ANTES *or* MAIS DEPRESSA.

These particles are sometimes rendered into English by *rather* or *sooner :* as, *antes* or *mais depressa quizera morrer*, I would rather die ; *antes quizera viver só que na vossa companhia*, I would sooner live alone than be in your company. Sometimes *antes* is rendered into English by *before :* as, *ide-vos antes que elle venha*, go away before he comes ; *antes que eu morra*, before I die.

### MAS ANTES, PELO CONTRARIO, MAS PELO CONTRARIO.

These particles are rendered into English by *on the contrary*, *on the other hand*, *nay :* as, *mas antes*, *mas pelo contrario*, or *pelo contrario isto é muito differente*, nay, it is quite another thing ; *mas antes*, *pelo contrario*, &c., *elle é avarento*, nay, on the contrary, he is a covetous man.

### PARA MELHOR DIZER.

This phrase is rendered into English by *nay :* as, *elle tem já bastante, ou para melhor dizer, mais do necessario*, he has already enough, nay, too much ; *a isto é que nós chamamos direito das gentes ou para melhor dizer, da razão*, this is what we call the law of nations, which may be called more properly the law of reason.

### QUE.

We have already observed that *que* is a particle which most conjunctions are composed of: as, *ainda que*, although; *de sorte que*, so that, &c.

The particle *que* sometimes is the sign of the third person of the imperative, as *let* in English: as, *que falle*, let him speak; *que rião*, let them laugh.

*Que* is used between two verbs, to determine and specify the sense of the first: as, *eu vos asseguro que assim é*, I assure you that it is so; *duvido que assim seja*, I doubt whether it is so or not.

*Que* is also used after *hora* in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by a verb in the subjunctive, to denote by exclamation one's surprise, aversion, and reluctance to something; in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que;* as, *hora que se esquecesse elle de si mesmo!* I wonder, or is it possible for him to have forgotten himself!

The expression of admiration is sometimes expressed without any verb: as *que gosto; e ao mesmo tempo, que pena!* how much pleasure and trouble at once!

*Que* is sometimes repeated; as,

*Que bellos livros que tendes*, what fine books you have got; *que bella que é a virtude!* how beautiful is virtue!

*Que* is sometimes followed by *de;* as, *que de penas ha no mundo!* how many troubles there are in the world!

*Que* is used after nouns denoting time, and is sometimes rendered into English by *when*, or *since*, &c., and sometimes left out; as,

*O dia que elle partio*, the day when he set out.

*Quanto tempo ha que estais em Londres?* how long have you lived in London?

*Ha dez annos que faz a mesma cousa*, he has done the same thing these ten years.

*Ha dez annos que morreo*, he died ten years ago.

*Que* is sometimes rendered into English by *because*, as in *Camoens*, canto 2, stanza xvi., *que levemente um animo*, and sometimes by *that*, *to the end that*, *in order to*; as in *Camoens*, canto 2, stanza xvii., *que como vissem*, *que no rio*, &c.

*Que* before *se* in the beginning of a sentence, is a redundancy not expressed in English; as, *que se vós dizeis que*, if you say that, &c.

*Que* is used after the conjunction *apenas*, scarcely *or* hardly, and is rendered into English by *when*: as, *apenas acabou de fallar*, *que logo morreo*, he had scarcely done speaking, when he expired.

*Que* sometimes is preceded by *de sorte*, *de maneira*, *de geito*, and then it is rendered into English by *so that*, *in such a manner*, *insomuch that*; as, *eu o farei de sorte que fiqueis contente*, I will do it so that, *or* in such manner that, you shall be contented.

### DE VERAS.

*De veras* signifies *in earnest*; but sometimes it is rendered into English by *indeed*: as, *de veras*; *não o posso crêr*, indeed! I can hardly believe it.

### HORA.

*Hora* or *ora* is an interjection that serves to encourage, as we have seen above; but when it is repeated, it is rendered into English by *sometimes*, *awhile*, *another while*: as, *ora está bem*, *ora está mal*, sometimes he is well, sometimes ill; *elle ora está de um parecer*, *e ora de outro*, he is now of one opinion, and next moment of another. *Por ora* signifies *now*, *for the present*.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### OF THE PORTUGUESE ORTHOGRAPHY; AND OF CAPITALS AND STOPS.

I. PROPER names, as well as surnames, always begin with a capital.

II. The names of nations, kingdoms, and provinces also begin with a capital: as, *França*, France; *Inglaterra*, England, &c.

III. All names of dignities, and degrees, and honours, require a capital; as, *Rei*, *Bispo*, &c., King, Bishop, &c.

IV. At the beginning of a sentence, as well as of a verse, the first letter is always a capital.

The names of arts and sciences, as well as those of kindred, begin with a capital.

#### OF STOPS.

The use of stops, or points, is to divide words in a sentence.

The Portuguese have six stops, or pauses, viz.:—

1. The *ponto final*, the same as our period or full stop (.), and is used at the end of a sentence, to show that the sentence is completed.

2. The *dois pontos*, which is our colon (:), and is the pause made between two members of a period; that is, when the sense is complete, but the sentence not ended.

3. The *ponto e virgula* is our semicolon (;), and denotes that short pause which is made in the subdivision of the members or parts of a sentence.

4. The *ponto de interrogação*, the point of interrogation, thus (?).

5. *Ponto de admiração*, the point of admiration, thus (!).

6. The *virgula*, the same with our comma (,), and is the shortest pause or rest in speech, being used chiefly to distinguish nouns, verbs, and adverbs, as also the parts of a shorter sentence.

The conjunction *e*, the relative *qual*, and the disjunctions *ou* and *nem*, require a comma before them.

The Portuguese make use also of a parenthesis, thus () ; but they have discontinued the use of the diæresis, called by their printers *crema* (¨) ;* they use also the *angulo*, thus, ^, called by the printers *caret*.

The apostrophe, or, as they call it, *viracento*, is used in this as in other languages, being designed only for the more pleasant and easy pronunciation of words, by cutting off an antecedent vowel ; as, *d' armas*, *d' elvas*, and not *darmas*, *delvas*, &c.

## OF THE ACCENTS.

The accent is a sound of the voice by which we pronounce some syllables shorter, and others longer.

I intend to speak here only of the accents the Portuguese ought to make use of, according to Madureira, in his *Portuguese Orthography*.

The Portuguese, indeed, are acquainted with three accents, but they ought to make use of only two, namely, the acute, which descends from the right to the left (´), and the circumflex, thus (^).

1. The acute serves to prolong the pronunciation, and is put, according to Madureira, on the last syllable of the

* The diæresis was formerly used in the Portuguese orthography; so much so that it has even three names in that language from its classical times, viz., *diéresis*, *ápices*. *cimalhas*.

third person singular of the future tense; as, *amará, lerá*, &c.

2. On the penultima of the preterpluperfect tense of the indicative mood; as, *amára, ensinára*, &c.

3. The acute accent ought to be put also on the penultima of the third persons of the present tense of the verbs *renunciar, pronunciar, duvidar*, &c.—thus, *renuncía, pronuncía, duvída*, &c.—that they may be distinguished from the nouns *renuncia, pronuncia, duvida*, &c. The same accent is also put on *está, nó*, to distinguish them from *ésta*,* this, and *no*, in the.

The vowel *o* has two sounds, according to the two accents that may be put upon it: one open, when it is marked with the acute accent, and is pronounced like *o* in *store*; the other close, when it is marked with the circumflex accent, and then is pronounced like *u* in *stumble*.

There are many nouns and adjectives which are accented in the singular with the circumflex, and in the plural with the acute; and the adjectives that have two terminations, particularly those ending in *oso, osa*, must be accented, in the singular, with the circumflex in the masculine, and with the acute in the feminine; as,

*Fôgo*, fire; plural, *fógos*.
*Fôrno*, oven; plural, *fórnos*.
*Ôlho*, eye; plural, *ólhos*.
*Ôvo*, egg; plural, *óvos*.
*Ósso*, bone; plural, *óssos*.
*Pôço*, well; plural, *póços*.
*Pôrco*, hog; plural, *pórcos*.
*Rôgo*, prayer; plural, *rógos*. And also *fôjo, tôrno, formôso, sequiôso, suppôsto, pôvo, tôrto, copiôso*, &c.

* It must not be forgotten that the accents are not commonly marked in most of these terms, and the others given as examples; but they are put here to designate the right pronunciation.

The following keep the circumflex accent in both numbers : *bôlo, bôlos ; bôjo, bôjos ; bôto, bôtos ; côco, côcos ; chôro, chôros ; côto, côtos ; fôrro, fôrros; gôrdo, gôrdos ; gôsto, gôstos ; gôzo, gôzos ; lôbo, lôbos ; môço, môços ; nôjo, nôjos ; pôtro, pôtros ; tôlo, tôlos ; ferrôlho, ferrôlhos ; rapôso, rapôsos ; arrôz, arrôzes ; algôz, algôzes,* &c.

On the contrary, the following keep the acute accent in both numbers : *cópo, cópos* ; *módo, módos ; nósso, nóssos ; vóssos,* &c.

When the circumflex accent is put on the *e*, then the *e* is pronounced like the French *é ;* but when *e* is accented with the acute accent, then the *é* is to be pronounced like the *è* open in French ; and is exceedingly sonorous and long. See the pronunciation of the vowel *e*.

Nouns ending in *az, iz, oz, uz,* must have the acute accent on the vowel before the *z ;* as, *rapáz,* a boy ; *nóz,* a walnut ; *alcaçúz,* liquorice : but you must except *arrôz,* rice ; *algôz,* a hangman.

Nouns ending in *ez* generally have the circumflex accent : as, *mêz,* a month ; *marquêz,* a marquis, &c.

---

## SOME OBSERVATIONS UPON THE PORTUGUESE ORTHOGRAPHY.

Both the Portuguese orthographers and best authors vary so much in their rules and ways of writing, that it is impossible for any grammarian to explain clearly this part of the Portuguese Grammar, it requiring no less authority than that of the Royal Portuguese Academy. However, not totally to set aside so material a part of the Grammar, I shall present the learner with the following observations :—

I. When the Latin words from which the Portuguese

are derived begin with a *b*, the Portuguese likewise must begin with it; therefore you must write and pronounce the *b* in the following words, *bom*, *bondade*, *bem*, *bento*, &c., because they are derived from *bonus*, *bonitas*, &c. But you must except *bainha*, *bexiga*, *bairro*, which begin with a *b*, though they are derived from *vagina*, *vesica*, *vicus*.

II. Likewise, if the Latin words begin with a *v*, the Portuguese words derived from them must also begin with it; as, *vida*, *viver*, *varrer*, *ver*, *vinho*, &c., from *vita*, *vivere*, *verrere*, *videre*, *vinum*, &c.

Though *b* ought to be pronounced only by closing the lips, and *v* by touching the superior teeth with the inferior lips; yet, by a certain affinity between these two letters, in speaking there is a great confusion in the pronunciation of them in the province of *Entre Douro e Minho*; and this confusion has not been peculiar to the Portuguese language, for Nebrixa says, in his *Castilian Orthography*, that in his time some Spaniards could hardly make any distinction between these two letters.

III. The *p* found in some words originally Latin, is changed in Portuguese into a *b*; as, *cabra*, *cabello*, *cabeça*, &c., from *capra*, *capillus*, *caput*, &c.

IV. The *y*, as Bluteau says, must be made use of in words having a Greek origin; as, *syllaba*, *Chrysopeia*, *pyramide*, *polygono*, *hydrographia*, *hydropico*, *physica*, *hyperbole*, *hypocrita*, *Apocrypho*, &c.

V. The *ph* are used in the Portuguese in some words taken from the Greek; as, *philosophia*, *philologia*, *Philadelphia*, *epitaphio*, &c.

VI. The *r* in Portuguese has two pronunciations: one soft, expressed by a single *r*, as in *arado*, a plough, and after the consonants *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, *t*; and another hard, in which two *r's* are used; as in *barra*, *carro*, &c. But you must observe:—

1. That in the beginning of a word two *r's* must never be used, because then the *r* is always pronounced hard in Portuguese; as in the words *remo*, *rico*, *roda*, &c.

2. When the consonants *l*, *n*, *s*, are before the *r*, either in a single or a compound word, this letter must never be doubled, because then its sound is always strong; as in *abalroa*, *enriquecer*, *honra*, *Henrique*, *Israelita*, &c.

3. The *r* after a *b* is also pronounced hard in compounds with the prepositions *ab*, *ob*, *sub*, and yet is not doubled; as in *abrogar*, *obrepção*, *subrepção*, &c.

VII. The *s* is never doubled in the beginning of words, nor after the consonants; therefore you must write, *sarar*, *saber*, *falsamente*, *falso*, *manso*, &c.

The *s* is pronounced like *z* between two vowels, in words derived from the Latin, as well as in those that end in *osa* and *oso*; as, *musa*, *caso*, *riso*, *amoroso*, *cuidadoso*, *casa*, &c. You must also observe that *coser* signifies *to sew*, but *cozer* signifies *to boil* or *bake*.

VIII. *Th* are generally used in words derived from the Greek; as, *amphitheatro*, *atheisto*, *theologo*, *lethargo*, *methodo*, &c., but are pronounced like *t*.

*Th* are also used in the Portuguese preposition *athé*, though some write it thus, *até*.

IX. When *pt* are found in Latin words, it must be kept in the Portuguese derived from them; as, *apto*, *inepto*, *optimo*, &c., from *aptus*, *ineptus*, *optimus*, &c.

The same must be observed in regard to *ct*.

X. *Ch* are sounded like *k*, in words derived from the Greek; as, *archanjo*, *archiduque*, *Chrysostomo*, *chrysol*, *chrysologo*, *Christovão*, *monarchia*, &c. These words must be written with *ch*, in order to preserve to the eye their etymology.

*Note*, that *ch* in words that are not derived from the Greek are pronounced like *ch* in the English words *church*,

*chin, much;* but as some confound the *ch* with the *x*, and begin with *x* those words that should begin with *ch*, I have thought it necessary to make a collection of them.

## WORDS BEGINNING WITH

### CHA.

Chá
Chãa
Chaça
Chacina
Chaço
Chacota
Chafariz
Chaga
Chalupa
Chama
Chamalote
Chamar
Chamariz
Chambão
Chamejar
Chamiça
Chaminé
Chamuscar
Chança
Chancela
Chancelaria
Chanceler
Chançoneta
Chanqueta
Chantagem
Chantrado
Chantre
Chão
Chapa
Chapado
Chapeado
Chapeleta
Chapéo
Chapim
Chapinhar
Chapuz
Charamela
Charameleiro
Charco
Charneca
Charneira
Charola
Charpa
Charro
Charrua
Chasco
Chasona
Chatim
Chato
Chavão
Chavascal
Chave
Chavalha
Chaveta
Chavinha

### CHE.

Chêa, *or* Cheia
Chefe
Chegar
Cheirar, *and its derivatives*
Cherivia
Cherne

### CHI.

Chiar
Chibarro
Chibo
Chicharos
Chichorro
Chichelos

Chicoria
Chicote
Chifra
Chifrar
Chifre
Chilindrão
Chilrar
Chimbeo
Chincar
Chincheiro
Chinchorro
Chinela
Chiqueiro
Chispa
Chispar
Chiste
Chita

CHO.

Choça
Choca
Chocalhar
Chocalho
Chocar
Chocarrear
Choccarice
Choco
Chócca
Chocolate
Chofrado
Chofre
Chóldabólda
Choque
Chorar
Chorrilho
Chorro
Chover
Choupa
Choupana
Choupo, *or* Chôpo
Chouriço
Choutar

CHU.

Chuça
Chupamel
Chupar
Chuchurriar
Chuço
Chufa
Chumaço
Chumbar
Chumbo
Churrião
Churume
Chusma
Chuva
Chuveiro

CHY.

Chyar.

The following words begin with *ce* and not *se* :—

CEA.

Cêa
Ceado
Cear

CEB.

Cebola
Cebolal
Cebolinho

CED.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Cedavím | Ceder | Cedro |
| Cedela | Cedilho | Cedula |
| Cedenho | Cedo | |

CEG.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Cega | Cego | Cegude |
| Cegar | Cegonha | Cegueira |

CEI.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ceifa | Ceirão | Ceivar |
| Ceifão | Ceirinha | |

CEL.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Celada | Celeuma | Celicola |
| Celebração | Celga | Celidonia |
| Celebrar | Celha | Cella |
| Célebre | Celho | Celleiro |
| Celeste | Celibado | Celleireiro |
| Celestial | Celibato | Celtas |
| Celestrina | | |

CEM.

| | |
|---|---|
| Cem | Cemiterio |

CEN.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Cenaculo | Censor | Cento |
| Ceno | Censura | Centoculo |
| Cenobio | Censurado | Centopea |
| Cenobitico | Censurar | Central |
| Cenotaphio | Centauro | Centro |
| Cenoura | Centena | Centuplo |
| Cenrada | Centeal | Centuria |
| Cenreira | Centesimo | Centurião |
| Censo | Centeyo | Ceo |

CEP.

Cêpa
Cepilho
Cêpo
Ceptro

CER.

Cêra
Ceraferario
Cerbero
Cêrca
Cercado
Cercador
Cercadura
Cercar
Cérce
Cerceado
Cercear
Cercilho
Cerco
Cerdoso
Cerebro
Cereijas
Cereijal
Ceremonia
Ceremonial
Cerieiro
Cérne
Cernelha
Cerol
Ceroulas
Cerqueiro
Cerração
Cerralheiro
Cerralho
Cerrar
Cerrar-se
Cêrro
Certa
Certo
Certão
Certeza
Certidão
Certificar
Cerva
Cerval
Cerveja
Cervilhas
Cerviz
Ceruda
Ceruleo
Cervo
Cerzir

CES.

Cesar
Cesarea
Cesma
Cesmaria
Cesmeiro
Cessão
Cessação
Cessar
Cesta
Cestinha
Cestinho
Cesteiro
Cesto
Cesura

CEV.

Ceva
Cevada
Cevadel
Cevadeira
Cevadouro
Cevar

CEZ.

Cezão
Cezimbra

N.B. *Cerrar* signifies *to shut* or *shut up;* but *serrar* signifies *to saw*, to cut timber or other matter with a saw.

The following words must have *ci*, and not *si*, in their beginning :—

CIA.

Ciar-se Ciatica

CIB.

Ciba Cibalho Ciborio

CIC.

Cicatriz Cicero Cicioso

CID.

Cidadão Cidadoa Cidrão
Cidadãos Cidra Cidreira
Cidade Cidrada

CIE.

Ciencia

CIF.

Cifar Cifra Cifrar

CIG.

Cigana Cigarra Cigurelha
Cigano Cigude

CIL.

Cilada Cilhar Cilicio
Cilhas Cilicia Cilladas

CIM.

Cima
Cimalha
Cimbalo
Cimeyra
Cimento
Cimitarra
Cimo

CIN.

Cinca
Cincar
Cincho
Cinco
Cincoenta
Cingidouro
Cingir
Cingulo
Cinnamomo
Cinta
Cintillar
Cintura
Cinza
Cinzeiro

CIO.

Cio
Cioso
Ciosa

CIP.

Cipó
Cipreste
Cipriano

CIR.

Cira
Ciranda
Cirandagem
Cirandar
Circo
Circulação
Circular
Circulo
Circuito
Circumcidar
Circumcisão
Circumferencia
Circumspecto
Circumspecção
Circumstancia
Circumstantes
Cirio
Cirugia
Cirugião
Cirzir

CIS.

Ciscar
Cisco
Cismatico
Cisne
Cisterciense
Cisterna

CIT.

Citação
Citado
Citerior
Cithara
Citharedo
Citrino

CIU.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ciume | Ciumes |

CIV.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Civel | Civil | Civilidade |

CIZ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Cizania | Cizento | Cizirão |

XI. No Portuguese word begins with *ç*.

The *ç* is used after *p* in those Portuguese words that have in their Latin root *pt :* as, *descripção, accepção,* &c., from *descriptio, acceptio,* &c.

---

## OF DOUBLE LETTERS.

It is to be generally observed that the consonants are doubled in those Portuguese words whose Latin roots have likewise the same double consonants : as, *accelerar, accento, occidente,* &c., from *accelero, accentus, occidens,* &c.; *affligir, affluencia, affirmação,* &c., from *affligo, affluentia, affirmatio,* &c., as will be seen in the following collection.

### B

is to be doubled in *abbade, abbacial, abbadia, abbadessa, abbreviatura, abbreviar.*

### C

is to be doubled in the following words, and some of their derivatives.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Abstracção | Accentuar | Accessivel |
| Acção | Accepção | Accesso |
| Accento | Accessão | Accessorio |

Accidental
Accidente
Accelerada
Accelerado
Accelerar
Acclamação
Acclamar
Accomodação
Accomodado
Accomodar
Accumulação
Accumulado
Accumular
Accusação
Accusado
Accusador
Accusar
Accusativo
Adstricção
Afflicção
Attracção

Baccho
Bocca
Boccaça
Boccadinho
Boccado
Boccal

Circumspecção
Coacção
Cacção
Collecção
Constricção
Construcção
Contracção
Correcção

Decocção
Deducção
Dejecção
Desoccupação
Desoccupado
Desoccupar
Detracção
Dicção
Diccionario
Direcção
Distracção

Eccentrico
Ecclesiastico
Erecção
Evicção
Exacção
Extracção

Facção
Ficção
Fracção

Impeccabilidade
Impeccavel
Inaccessivel
Indicção
Inducção
Infecção
Infracção
Inspecção
Instrucção
Intellecção
Interjecção
Intersecção
Introducção

Manuducção

Objecção
Obstrucção
Occasião
Occasionar
Occaso
Occidental
Occidente
Occiduo
Occisão
Occurrer
Occultamente
Occultado
Occultar
Occulto
Occupação
Occupado
Occupar
Occurrencia
Occurrente

Peccado
Peccador
Peccadora
Peccante
Peccar

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Predicção | Seccar | Successor |
| Preoccupar | Secco | Succintamente |
| Producção | Secção | Succinto |
| Projecção | Seccura | Succo |
| Protecção | Sôcco | Successo |
| Putrefacção | Soccorrer | Succubo |
| | Soccorro | |
| Rarefacção | Subtracção | Transacção |
| Reconducção | Succeder | Traducção |
| Refecção | Successão | |
| Refracção | Successo | Vacca |
| Reseccçaão | Successivo | Vaccada |
| Restricção | Successivel | Vaccum |

## D.

This letter is doubled in the following words : *addição, addicionado, addicionar, additamento, additar.*

## F

is to be doubled in

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Affabilidade | Affeado | Affeminado |
| Affavel | Affear | Affeminar-se |
| Affadigado | Affeamento | Afferradamente |
| Affadigar | Affectadamente | Afferrado |
| Affagado | Affectado | Afferrar |
| Affagar | Affectar | Afferretoado |
| Affagos | Affecto | Afferretoar |
| Affamado | Affectuoso | Afferrolhar |
| Affamar-se | Affeição | Afferventado |
| Affastado | Affeiçoado | Afferventar |
| Affastar | Affeiçoar | Affervorado |
| Affazendado | Affeite | Affervorar |
| Affazer-se | Affeitar | Affiado |

Affiar
Affidalgado
Affidalgar-se
Affigurado
Affigurar
Affilhada
Affilador
Affilar
Affinado
Affinar
Affincado
Affincar
Affirmadamente
Affirmador
Affirmar
Affistular-se
Affixar
Afflamar-se
Afflicção
Afflicto
Affligir
Affluencia
Affocinhar
Affogado
Affogador
Affogar
Affogamento
Affogueado
Affoguear
Afforado
Afforador
Afforar
Afforamento
Afformentar
Afformoseado
Afformosear
Affoutado
Affoutar
Affouteza
Affouto
Affracar
Affframengado
Affréguesado
Affreguesar-se
Affronta
Affrontado
Affrontamento
Affrontar
Affrontosamente
Affrontoso
Affroxadamente
Affroxado
Affroxar
Affugentado
Affugentar
Affumado
Affumar
Affundado
Affundar-se
Affundir-se
Affuzillar

Diffamado
Diffamar
Differença
Differençar
Differenças
Differente
Differentemente
Difficil
Difficuldade
Difficultar
Difficultosamente
Difficultoso
Diffusão
Diffusamente
Diffuso

Effectivamente
Effectivo
Effeito
Effeituar
Efficazmente
Efficacia
Efficaz
Efficiente
Effigie

Offender
Offerecer
Offuscar

Suffocar
Suffragio, *and some others*

## G

This letter is to be doubled in

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Aggravante | Aggressor | Exaggerar |
| Aggravar | Exaggeração | Suggerir |
| Aggravado | Exaggerador | Suggestão |
| Aggravo | Exaggerado | Suggerido |

## L

is to be doubled in

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Aballado | Alliviar | Aquella |
| Aballador | Allucinação | Aquelle |
| Aballar | Allucinar | Aquillo |
| Aballo | Alludir | Armellas |
| Aballisado | Allumiar | Arrepellado |
| Aballisador | Allusão | Arrepellão |
| Aballisar | Amantellado | Arrepellar |
| Acafellador | Amarello | Atropellado |
| Acafelladura | Amarellecer-se | Atropellar |
| Acafellar | Amarellidão | Avillanado |
| Acallentado | Amollado | |
| Acallentar | Amollar | Bacellado |
| Acapellado | Amollecer | Bacêllo |
| Affillado | Amollecido | Barbella |
| Affillador | Amollentar | Barrella |
| Affillar | Ampolla | Bella |
| Allegação | Annullação | Bellamente |
| Allegado | Annullar | Bello |
| Allegar | Appellação | Belleza |
| Allegoria | Appellante | Belleguim |
| Allegorico | Appellar | Bellico |
| Allegorisar | Appellidar | Bellicoso |
| Alleluia | Appelido | Belligero |

Belluino
Bulla
Bullario

Calliope
Camillo
Cavillação
Cavillosamente
Caballina
Cadella
Cadellinha
Callo
Camartello
Cambadella
Cancella
Capella
Capellão
Capellada
Capellania
Capêllo
Capillar
Castella
Castello
Casullo
Casulla
Cavalla
Cavallaria
Cavalleiro
Cavallo
Cebolla
Cebollal
Cebollinho
Chancellér
Chancellaria

Cella
Celleiro
Clavellina
Codicillo
Colla
Collado
Collar
Colleira
Collação
Collateral
Colecção
Collecta
Collectivo
Collector
Collega
Collegiada
Collegial
Collegio
Colligar
Colligir
Collyrio
Collo
Collocação
Collocar
Colloquio
Compellir
Compostella
Constellação
Corollario
Covello
Courella

D'ella
D'ellas

D'elle
D'elles
Degollado
Degollação
Degollar
Degolladouro
Distillação
Distillador
Distillar
Donzella
Duello

Ebullição
Ella
Ellas
Elle
Elles
Elleboro
Ellipse
Elliptico
Emolliente
Emollir
Enallage
Encapellado
Encapellar
Encastellado
Encastellar
Encelleirar
Equipollencia
Equipollente
Escabellado
Escabello
Escudella
Escudellão

Estillação
Estillado
Estillar
Estillicidio
Estrella
Estrellado
Excellencia
Excellente
Expellir

Falla
Fallacha
Fallacia
Fallador
Fallar
Fallecer
Fallecido
Fallencia
Fallido
Ferdizello
Flagellante
Flagello
Folle
Folliculo
Fontello

Gabella
Gallado
Galladura
Gallar
Gallego
Gallia
Gallicado
Gallicar
Gallico
Gallinha
Gallinhaço
Gallinheira
Gallinheiro
Gallinhola
Galliopoli
Galliota
Galliza
Gallo
Gamella
Gazella
Gella

Hellesponto
Hendecasyllabo
Hollanda
Hypallage

Illação
Illaquear
Illativo
Illegitimo
Illeso
Illiçar
Illiciador
Illicitamente
Illicito
Illocavel
Illudido
Illudir
Illuminação
Illuminado
Illuminar
Illuminativo
Illusão
Illuso
Illustração
Illustrar
Illustre
Illustrissimo
Illyrio
Imbella
Impellir
Incapillato
Infallivel
Inintelligivel
Intervallo

Janella
Janelleira
Janellinha
Jarmello

Libello
Lordello
Lousella

Malfallante
Mallogrado
Mamillar
Marcella
Marcellina
Marcello
Martellada
Martellar
Martello
Martellinho

Medulla
Mellifluo
Mello
Metallico
Millenario
Millesimo
Mirandella
Miscellania
Molle
Molleira
Molleza
Mollice
Mollidão
Mollificante
Mollificar
Mollinar
Monosyllabo

Nella
Nellas
Nelle
Nelles
Nigella
Novella
Novelleiro
Nulla
Nullidade
Nullo
Nuzellos

Odivellas
Ollaria
Olleiro
Ouguella

Palla
Palladio
Pallante
Pallas
Palliado
Palliar
Pallidez
Pallido
Pallio
Panella
Paradella
Parallaxe
Parallelo
Parallelogramo
Pelle
Pellesinha
Pellica
Pellicula
Phillis
Pimpinella
Pollegada
Pollegar
Pollez
Polluçâo
Polluto
Polysyllabo
Portella
Postilla
Pousafolles
Prunelle
Pulmella
Pupilla
Pupillo
Pusillanimidade

Pusillanime

Quartella

Rabadella
Rabellado
Rebellão
Rebellar-se
Rebellião
Rella
Rodofolle
Rodopello
Rosella
Ruella

Sella
Sellado
Sellador
Sellagão
Sellar
Selleiro
Sello
Sentinella
Sibylla
Sigillo
Sigillado
Sobrepelliz
Sugillação
Syllaba
Syllabatico
Syllabico
Syllogisar
Syllogismo

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Tabella | Tunicella | Vellicação |
| Tabellião | Tullio | Vellicar |
| Tabelliôa | | Vello |
| Titillação | Vacillação | Velloso |
| Titillar | Vacillante | Velludo |
| Tôlla | Vacillar | Verdesella |
| Tollice | Valla | Villa |
| Tôllo | Vallado | Villania |
| Torcicollo | Vallar | Villaãmente |
| Tranquillidade | Valle | Villão |
| Tranquillo | Vassallagem | Vitella |
| Trella | Vassallo | Vitellino |
| Trisyllabo | Valleidade | |

*Note. Annular* signifies to annul; but *annular* is an adjective, and signifies *annular*, or in the form of a ring.

M.

is to be doubled in

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Accommodar | Commodo | Emmadeirar |
| | Commover | Emmadeixar |
| Commemoracão | Commum | Emmagrecer |
| Commenda | Communger | Emmanquecer |
| Commensurar | Communicar | Emmassar |
| Commentar | Communidade | Emmudecer |
| Commerciar | Commutar | Engommar |
| Commétter | Consummar | Epigramma |
| Comminação | | |
| Commiseração | | |
| Commissão | Desaccommodar | Flamma |
| Commissario | Descommodo | Flammante |
| Commoção | Dilemma | Flammula |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Gemma | Immoderadamente | Inflammar |
| Gomma | Immodesto | |
| Grammatica | Immodico | Mamma |
| | Immolar | Mammar |
| Immaculada | Immortalisar | |
| Immanente | Immortificado | Recommendar |
| Immarcessivel | Immovel | |
| Immaterial | Immudavel | Somma |
| Immaturo | Immundo | Sommar |
| Immediatamente | Immunidade | Summa |
| Immemoravel | Immutavel | Summario |
| Immenso | Incommodo | Summidade |
| Immensuravel | Incommunicavel | Symmetria, *and* |
| Immobilidade | Incommutavel | *some others.* |

*Note.* *M* and not *n*, is always made use of before *b*, *m*, *p*.

## N.

is likewise doubled in several verbs compounded with *an*, *en*, *in*, *con* ; as, *annelar*, *annexa*, *annão*, *annata*, *annel*, *anna*, *Anno*, *annular*, *connexão*, *connexo*, *depennar*, *empennar*, *ennastrar*, *ennegrecer*, *innato*, *innagavel*, *innocencia*, *manna*, *Marianna*, *panno*, *penna*, when it signifies a pen, *tyranno*, and some others.

## P.

This letter is to be doubled in words beginning with *p*, compounded with the Latin prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *sub* ; as, *apparato*, *apparecer*, *oppor*, *opprimir*, *suppor*, *Philippe*, *pappa*, &c.

*Note.* *Pappa* signifies *pap*, or a sort of food for children, but *papa* signifies *the Pope*.

## R.

The *r* is doubled in such words as are strongly pronounced in the middle; as, *guerra*, *arrancar*, *arredar*, *arrimar*, *arruinar*, *carregar*, *carro*, &c.

## S.

The *s* is to be doubled in the Portuguese superlatives, because it is doubled in the Latin roots; it is also doubled in the following words :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Abbadessa | Assobiar | Necessitar |
| Accesso | Assolar | N'isso |
| Aggressor | Assombrar | Nossa |
| Amassar | Assoprar | Nosso |
| Appressar | Assustar | |
| Arremessar | Atravessar | Osso |
| Assaltar | | |
| Assanhar | Condessa | Passar |
| Assar | | Passear |
| Assegurar | Essa | |
| Assessor | Esse | Remessa, *and many others.* |
| Assignar | | |
| Assim | Ingresso | |
| Assistir | Isso | |

## T.

T is doubled in the following words and their derivatives :—

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Attemperar | Attenuar | Attribuir |
| Attenção | Attonito | Attributo |
| Attender | Attracção | Attrição |
| Attentar | Attractivo | Attrito |
| Attenuação | Attrahir | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Commetter | Intrometter | Remetter |
| | | Remetter |
| Demittir | Omittir | |
| | | Setta |
| Enfittar | Permittir | Settenta |
| | Prometter | |
| Fitta | | Trasmittir |

---

## OF THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES AND THEIR SOUND.

### OF WORDS THAT MAKE THEIR PENULTIMA IN *a*.

*Note.* Observe what we have before mentioned concerning the accents.*

All words ending in *abo*, *aba*, *aco*, *aca*, *acho*, *acha*, *aço*, *aça*, *ado*, *ada*, *afo*, *afa*, *ago*, *aga*, *agem*, *agre*, *alho*, *alha*, *alo*, *ala*, have the penultima long; as, *diábo*, *mangába*, *macáco*, *macáca*, *caváca*, *mingácho*, *garnácha*, *madraço*, *linhaça*, *amádo*, *punhada*, (except *ralâmpago*, *antropófago*, *lêvado*, and *cágado*, (which are short in the penultima), *abáfo*, *abafa*, *saramágo*, *adága* (except *estômago*, *âmago*, *amâraco*, which are short), *tralâlho*, *toálha*, *bedálo* (except *anômalo*, *bufalo*, *escândalo*, which are short), *tanchágem*, *vinágre*.

Words ending in *amo*, *ama*, *anho*, *anha*, *ano*, *ana*, have their penultima long; as, *escâmo*, *courâma*, *costânho*, *arânha*, *engâno*, *pestâna*; except *pâmpano*, *tímpano*, *bígamo*.

Words ending in *apo*, *apa*, *aque*, *aro*, *ara*, have their

* Through the remainder of this chapter the proper accents are expressly marked, for the sake of example; not that the words usually appear so accentuated.

penultima long; as, *guardinápo, solápa, basbaque, empáro, seára;* except *cântaro, púcaro, lâparo, bâfaro, lúparo, pífaro, pícaro, câmera, tâmara, pássaro, Lázaro, bárbaro, cócaras,* &c.

Words ending in *aro, arra, arto, ata, avo, ava, axo, axa,* make the penultima long; as, *bizárro, bizárra, biscáto, pataráta, escrávo, escráva* (except *côncava* and *bisavô*), *cartáxo, tarráxa.*

### OF WORDS THAT MAKE THEIR PENULTIMA IN *e*.

All words ending in *ebo, eba, edo, eda, efa,* have their penultima long; as, *mancêbo, mancêba, azêdo, azêda, sanéfa.*

Words ending in *efe* are long; as, *magaréfe:* as well as those ending in *eco, eca, eço, eça;* as, *bonéco, bonéca, cabêço, cabêça.*

Words ending in *ego, ega,* are long: as, *morcêgo, socêgo, relêgo, entrêga, allega;* except *cónego, tráfego, côrrego, sôfrego, pêcego, fôlego, bátega, cócegas.*

Words ending in *ejo, eja, elo, ela,* are long; as, *caranguêjo, bocêjo, igrêja, Alentéjo, envéja, martélo, guerréla.*

Words ending in *emo, ema, eno, ena,* are long: as, *suprêmo, postêma, acêno, açucêna;* except *apózema.*

*Note.* The penultima is short in the word *ingreme.*

Words ending in *epo, epa, epe, eque, ero, era,* are long: as, *decépo, carépa, julépe, moléque, sevéro, sevéra, tempêro,* when a noun, and *tempéro,* when a verb; except *áspero, próspero.*

Words ending in *eso, esa, ezo, eza, eto, eta, ete, evo, eva, eve,* are long; as, *acêso, acêsa, desprêzo, grandêza,* and *despréso* (when a verb), *entremêto, galhêta, ramalhête, bofête atrêvo, atrêva, atrêve.*

### OF WORDS THAT MAKE THEIR PENULTIMA IN *i*.

Words ending in *ibo, iba, ibe, icho, icha, iche, ico, ica, iço, iça, ice, ido, ida, ifo, ifa, ife,* have the penultima long; as, *estríbo, arríba, arríbe, esguícho, esguícha, azevíche, panico* (a sort of stuff), *botíca;* except *mecânico, ecuménico, crítico, político, pânico* (panic), and some others borrowed from the Greek and Latin. In *iço, iça,* &c.; as, *rolíço, preguiça, velhíce, marído, medída;* except *hómido, pállido, hórrido,* and some others derived from the Latin. In *ifo, ifa,* &c.; as, *borrífo, alcatífa, patífe.*

Words ending in *igo* and *iga* are long; as, *amígo, amíga;* except *pródigo, pródiga.*

Words ending in *ijo* and *ija,* are long; as, *afflíjo, artemíja.*

Words ending in *ilho, ilha,* are long; as, *atílho, baetílha.* Others ending in *ilo, ila;* as, *gorgomílo, perfíla, desfíla.*

Words ending in *imo, ima,* have the penultima long; as, *opímo, cadímo, esgríma, lastíma* (when a verb); except *lástima* (when a noun), *Jerónimo, péssimo,* and all the superlatives, *anónimo,* and some others.

Words ending in *inho, inha, ino, ina, ipo, ipa, ipe,* have the penultima long; as, *constípo, constípa, Eurípo, acipípe.* Others in *iquo, iqua, ique, iro, ira, ire;* as, *iníquo, iníqua, lambíque, retíro, mentíra, suspíro.*

Words ending in *iso, isa, izo, iza, ito, ita, ivo, iva, ixo, ixa,* are long in the penultima; as, *avíso, camísa, juízo, ajuiza, altívo, altíva, prolíxo, prolíxa, apíto, cabríto;* except *púlpito, vómito, decrêpito, espirito, débito,* and some others.

## RULES FOR SUCH WORDS AS MAKE THEIR PENULTIMA IN *o*.

Words ending in *obo*, *oba*, *obe*, *obro*, *obra*, *obre*, have their penultima long; as, *lôbo*, *lôba*, *arrôba*, *arrôbe*, *glôbo*, *alcóva*, *ôbro*, *ôbra*, *côbre*, *dôbro*.

Words ending in *ocho*, *ocha*, *oco*, *oca*, *oço*, *oça*, *odo*, *oda*, *ode*, *oso*, *osa*, *ose*, have the penultima long; as, *agarrôcho*, *garrôcha*, *carôcha*, *biôco*; except *altiloco*, *massaróco*, *minhôca*, *almôço*, *môça* (a girl), *móça* or *móssa* (a notch), *almôço* (when a verb), *carróço*, *lôdo*, *bôda*, *bôde*, *póde* (the third person singular of the present indicative of the verb *poder*), *pôde* (the third person singular of the preterperfect definite of the same verb), *galhôfa*, *bôfe*.

Words ending in *ofro*, *ofra*, *ofre*, are long; as, *alcachôfra*, *cófre*, *enxôfre*.

Words ending in *ogo*, *oga*, *ogue*, are long; as, *affógo*, *affoga*, *affógue*, *desafógo* (when a verb), and *desafôgo* (when a noun).

Words ending in *ojo*, *oja*, have the penultima long; as, *despójo* (when a verb), *nôjo*, *despôjo* (when a noun).

Words ending in *olo*, *ola*, *ole*, are long; as, *viólla*, *gallinhóla*, *bóla*, *engóle*, *miôlo*, *bólo*, *rebólo*, *tólo*, *cebóla*; except *pérola*, *frívolo*, *benévolo*, *malévolo*.

Words ending in *omo*, *oma*, *ome*, have the penultima long; as *mordômo*, *redôma*, *fóme*; except *Thomé*.

Words ending in *onho*, *onha*, *ono*, *ona*, have the penultima long; as, *bisônho*, *risonha*, *dôno*, *atafôna*, *dôna*; except *altísono* and *unísono*.

Words ending in *opla*, *opo*, *opa*, *ope*, *opro*, *opra*, *opre*, *oque*, have the penultima long; as *manópla*, *tópo*, *tópa*, *galópe*, *assôpro* (when a verb); *assópra*, *assópre*, *assopro* (when a noun), *botóque*.

Words ending in *oro*, *ora*, *ore*, are long in the penul-

tima; as, *penhóro, penhóra, penhóre, chôro* (when a noun), *chorô* (when a verb); except *búcoro, rémora, pólvora, árovre.*

Words ending in *orro, orra,* are long; as, *soccôrro, môrro, cachôrra;* and some others ending in *oso, ose, osa, ozo, oza;* as, *primorôsa, primorôsa, industriôso, industriôsa, ciôzo, ciôza, descôse.*

Words ending in *oto, ota, ote,* have their penultima long; as, *gôto, gôta, bóta, devóto, fróta, capóte, garrôte.*

Words ending in *ovo, ova, ove,* are long in the penultima; as, *ôvo, corcóva, apróve.*

Words ending in *oxo, oxa,* are long in the penultima; as, *rôxo, rôxa, pintarrôxo.*

### RULES FOR SUCH WORDS AS MAKE THEIR PENULTIMA IN *u.*

Words ending in *ubo, uba, ubro, ubra, ucho, ucha, uco, uca, uço, uça,* make the penultima long; as, *adúbo, adúba;* except *sûccubo, íncubo,* and some others; *incúbro, incúbra, machúcho, embúcha, cadúco, cadúca, rebúço, embúça.*

Words ending in *udo, uda, ude, ufo, ufa, ufe, ugo, uga, ujo, uja,* have the penultima long; as, *felpúdo, felpúda, almúde, pantúfo, adufa, adúfe, sanguesúga, caramujo, azambúja.*

Words ending in *ulho, ulha, ulhe, ulo, ula, ule, umo, uma, ume, unho, unha, unhe;* as, *bayúlho, borbúlha, entúlhe, engúlo, engúla, bulebúle;* except *vocábulo, vestíbulo, ángulo, régulo, opúsculo, trémulo, patíbulo, thuribulo,* and some others; *consúmo, consúma, cardúme, testemúnho, testemúnha, empúnhe.*

Words ending in *uno, una, une, upo, upa, upe, uque, uro, ura, ure,* are long in the penultima; as, *desúno, for-*

*túna, desúne, apúpo, apúpa, apúpe, estúque, madúro, madúra, apúre.*

Words ending in *uso, usa, use, uzo, uza, uze, uto, uta, ute, uxo, uxa, uxe,* have the penultima long; as, *parafúso, parafúsa, parafúse, redúzo, redúza, vedúze, condúto, labúta, enxúta, labúte;* except *cômputo* (when a noun), *repúxo, empúxa, empúxe,* and some others ending in *úvo, úva, úve;* as, *viúvo, viúva, enviúve.*

*Note.* When the penultima is immediately followed by another vowel, observe that,

*A* before *e* must be accented with the acute accent, and pronounced accordingly; as, *sáe, cáe;* but before *i* it has no accent.

*A* before *o* must be pronounced and accented thus, *bacalháo;* but when the relative *o* is added to the third person singular of the present indicative, then *a* has no accent; as, *âma-o.*

*E* before *a* is accented thus, *balêa;* and sometimes with the acute, as *assembléa, idéa,* and some others; and sometimes has no accent at all, as in *gávea, fémea,* and some others.

*E* before *o* is exceedingly sonorous and long, as in *chapéo, coruchéo;* except *páteo, férreo, plúmbeo, áureo, argênteo.*

*I* before *a, e, o,* is long; as *dizía, fazía, almotolía;* except such as are borrowed from the Latin; as, *néscia, comédia, féria, sciência, prudência,* and *sábia,* when an adjective, &c. *I* before *o* and *e* is long; as, *desvíe, desvío;* except *vício,* and some others.

*O* before *a* is accented thus, *corôa, tôa, môa, esmôa.*

*O* before *e* is long in the words *dóe, móe, róe,* and in the verb *sóe,* when it signifies *to be wont;* but when it signifies *to sound,* it is to be accented thus, *sôe.*

*U* before *a* is long; as, *rúa, charrúa;* except *mellîflua, insua.*

*U* before *e* and *o* is long; as, *conclúo, recúo, conclúe, recúe*; except *mellîfluo,* and some others derived from the Latin.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### ETYMOLOGY OF THE PORTUGUESE TONGUE FROM THE LATIN.

THE Portuguese has so great an affinity to the Latin, that several words of the latter are preserved in the former, by only allowing a small alteration; as may easily be seen in the following observations:—

1. The *o* of the Latin words is preserved in some of the Portuguese: some Latin words are entirely preserved in the Portuguese; as, *hospede, corda, porta,* &c.

2. The *u* is changed into *o;* as, *forca, goloso, estopa, mosca, anamos,* &c., from *furca, gulosus, stupa, musca, anamus,* &c.

3. The diphthong *au* is frequently changed into *ou;* as, *louvavel, ouro, couve, mouro,* &c., from *laudabilis, aurum, caulis, maurus,* &c.

4. The *e* is preserved in several Portuguese words; as, *certo, servo, erva, terra, ferro,* &c., from *certus, servus, herba, terra, ferrum,* &c.

5. The *e* takes the place of *i;* as, *enfermo, seco,* &c., from *infirmus, siccus,* &c.; and the *i* is sometimes preserved; as in *indigno, benigno,* &c., from *indignus, benignus,* &c.

6. The *b* is also changed into *v;* as, *arvore*, *duvidar*, *dever*, *estava*, *amava*, &c., from *arbor*, *dubitare*, *debere*, *stabat*, *amabat*, &c.

7. The *c* is very often changed into *g;* as, *digo*, *agudo*, *amigo*, *migalhi*, &c., from *dico*, *acutus*, *amicus*, *mica*, &c.

8. *Cl* is changed into *ch;* as, *chamar*, *chave*, from *clamare*, *clavis*, &c.

9. When the *c* in Latin is followed by *t*, this letter is changed into *ç;* as, *acção*, *dicção*, &c., from *actio*, *dictio*, &c.: and sometimes the *c* before *t* is changed into *i;* as, *feito*, *leito*, *noite*, *leite*, *peito*, &c., from *factus*, *lectum*, *nocte*, *lacte*, *pectus*, &c. Finally, both the *c* and *t* are preserved in a great number of words; as, *acto*, *afflicto*, *distincto*, &c., from *actus*, *afflictus*, *distinctus*, &c.

10. The *d* is often omitted; as, *roer*, *excluir*, *raio*, &c., from *rodere*, *excludere*, *radius*, &c.

11. The *f* is frequently preserved; as in *filho*, *fazer*, *fervor*, *formoso*, &c., from *filius*, *facere*, *fervor*, *formôsus*, &c.

12. The *g* is changed into *i;* as, *reino*, from *regnum*. Sometimes it is omitted; as in *dedo*, *frio*, *setta*, *sinal*, *bainha*, &c., from *digitus*, *frigus*, *sagitta*, *signum*, *vagina*, &c.

13. The *h* is used instead of the *l;* as, *alho*, from *allium*. Sometimes it is added; as, *artelho*, *alheo*, *folha*, *conselho*, &c., from *articulus*, *alienus*, *folium*, *consilium*, &c.

14. The *n* is sometimes added, and sometimes taken off; as, *mancha*, *ilha*, *salitre*, *esposo*, from *macula*, *insula*, *sal nitrum*, *sponsus*, &c.

15. The *mn* is preserved by many Portuguese writers in the words *alumno*, *calumnia*, *columna*, *damno*, *solemne*, *somno*, from *alumnus*, *calumnia*, *columna*, *damnum*, &c.

16. The double *n* of the Latin is preserved in several words; as in *anno*, *innocencia*, *innocuo*, *innavegavel*, *innovar*,

*connexo*, &c., from *annus, innocentia, innocuus, innavigabilis, innovare, connexus*, &c.

17. The *gn* and *gm* are preserved in several Portuguese words; as in *augmento, fragmento, enigma, benigno, digno, indigno, ignominia*, &c., from *augmentum, fragmentum, enigma, benignus, dignus*, &c.

18. The *e* and the *i* after *n* are sometimes changed into *h*; as in *aranha, vinha, Hispanha, castanha*, &c., from *aranea, vinea, Hispania, castanea*, &c.

19. The *p* is changed into *b*; as in *cabra, cabello, cabeça*, &c., from *capra, capillus, caput*, &c. Sometimes *pl* is changed into *ch*; as, *chaga, choro, chuva*, &c., from *plaga, ploro, pluvia*, &c.

20. The *q* is changed into *g*; as, *igual, alguem, antigo, agoa, aguia*, &c., from *æquus, aliquis, antiquus, aqua, aquila*, &c.

21. The *t* is likewise changed into *d*; as, *cadea, fado, lado, nadar, piedade*, &c., from *catena, fatum, latus, natare, pietas*, &c. The *ti* of the Latin is sometimes changed into *ça*, and sometimes into *ci*; as in *graça, clemencia, paciencia*, &c., from *gratia, clementia, patientia*, &c.

*Note.* All these alterations are not general in all the words, but are used in several; and on some occasions the Latin word is preserved without any change or variation. And as it would be endless to pretend to show all the affinity between the Portuguese and the Latin, I shall only observe that they sometimes add, and sometimes take off, letters from the Latin roots; as in *facil, debil, final, material, estrepito, estomago, expectador, especular*, &c. from *facilis, debilis, finalis, strepitus, spectator*, &c.

# PART III.

## THE DIFFERENT IDIOMS OF *ANDAR*, TO GO.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Andar a pé* | To go on foot |
| *Andar a cavallo* | To ride on horseback |
| *Andar pela rua* | To walk in the street |
| *Andar em coche* | To ride in a coach |
| *Andar embarcado* | To sail |
| *Andar de bolina* | To sail with a side wind |
| *Andar para diante* | To go forward |
| *Andar para traz* | To go backward |
| *Andar atraz de algum* | To go behind *or* after one, *also* to follow, to press, to solicit a person |
| *Andar de vagar* | To go wandering |
| *Andar com o tempo* | To go with the times |
| *Andar perdido* | To go astray |
| *Andar de pé* | To be poorly, *but not bed-ridden* |
| *Andar com honra* | To act honestly |
| *Anda* | Go |
| *Anda para diante* | Go on |
| *Andar de pandega* | To carouse |
| *Andar de mal a peior* | To grow worse and worse |
| *Andar de reixa com alguem* | To bear one a grudge |
| *Com o andar do tempo* | In the course of time |
| *Andar de galope* | To gallop |
| *Andar em corpo* | To be uncloaked |
| *Anda o mundo ás avessas* | The world has come about |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Andar trabalhando n'alguma obra* | To be about some piece of work |
| *Andar contente* | To go pleased |
| *Andar dizendo* | To publish *or* report |

THE DIFFERENT IDIOMS OF *DAR* AND *DAR-SE*.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dar* | To give, to strike |
| *Dar a entender* | To give to understand |
| *Dar fé* | To credit, to believe |
| *Dar* or *vender fiado* | To sell upon credit |
| *Dar á luz* | To publish, to be confined |
| *Dar-se a partido* | To side with one |
| *Dar palavra* | To promise |
| *Dar uma salva* | To fire a volley |
| *Dar fiador* | To bail |
| *Dar principio* or *fim* | To begin *or* to end |
| *Dar conta* | To give an account |
| *Dar-se ao estudo* | To apply oneself to study |
| *Dar em que fallar* | To give room for talking |
| *Dar entrada* | To give access to |
| *Dar causa* | To give cause |
| *Dar que entender* | To vex one sadly, to trouble one |
| *Dar de beber* | To give drink |
| *Dar vozes* | To cry out |
| *Dar um coscorrão* | To give a box on the ear |
| *Dar palmadas* | To clap hands |
| *Dar caução* | To give security |
| *Dar o faro de alguma coisa a alguem* | To give a hint about something |
| *Dar uma éstocada* | To give a thrust |
| *Dar os bons dias* | To bid one good morning |
| *Dar a guardar* | To give to keep |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dar emprestado* | To lend |
| *Dar com alguem* | To meet with one by chance, to light upon a person |
| *Dar em alguem* | To strike one |
| *Dar cartas* | To deal *or* give the cards |
| *Dar sobre o inimigo* | To fall upon the enemy |
| *Dar os parabens* | To congratulate |
| *Dar os parabens a alguem da sua chegada* | To bid one welcome |
| *Dar a mão ajudando* | To give a helping hand |
| *Dar a escolher* | To let one take his choice |
| *Dar enfado a alguem* | To molest one |
| *Dar no alvo* | To hit the mark |
| *Dar as costas* | To run away, to betake oneself to flight |
| *Dar pelo amor de Deos* | To give for God's sake |
| *Dar uma volta em redondo* | To turn round |
| *Dar uma vista de olhos* | To cast a glance |
| *Dar alcance ao que se deseja* | To compass one's wish |
| *Dar suspiros* | To sigh |
| *Dar ouvidos* | To give hearing |
| *Dar em rosto* | To upbraid, to cast in the teeth |
| *Dá cá* | Give hither |
| *Deu-me uma dôr* | I was taken with a pain |
| *Dar que fazer a alguem*, or *occupar alguem* | To employ one, to set him at work, to set him upon some business |
| *Dar horas* | To strike (hours) |
| *O relogio da hóras* | The clock strikes |
| *Dar a alma a Deus* | To die |
| *Dar comsigo em alguma parte* | To cast oneself into a place, *or* to go to a place |
| *Dar de jantar* | To give some dinner |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O sol dá nos olhos* | The sun shines in one's eyes |
| *Dar razões* | To debate *or* contend |
| *Dar comsigo no chão* | To fall upon the ground |
| *Dar fruto* | To bear fruit |
| *Dar as mãos* | To shake hands |
| *Dar com a porta na cara de alguem* | To shut the door upon one |
| *Dar pressa* | To press *or* hasten |
| *Esta travessa vai dar á rua larga* | This lane strikes, *or* goes into, the broad street |
| *Dei no pensamento de*, &c. | It came into my head to, &c. |
| *Não sabe aonde ha de dar comsigo* | He does not know where to go |
| *Isto vos ha de dar muito que fazer* | This will give you a great deal of trouble |
| *Dar com o corpo em terra* | To fall down |
| *Dar em todos*, or *dizer mal de todos* | To speak ill of everybody |
| *Dar conta de si* | To give account of oneself |
| *Dar á conta* | To pay on account |
| *Eu darei conta d'isso* | I will accomplish that |
| *Elle deu em ir áquelle lugar* | He began to use that place |
| *Dar uma broma a alguem* | To jest with some one |
| *Dar-se por culpado* | To acknowledge oneself guilty |
| *De nenhuma sorte vos deis por entendido* | Take no notice of anything |
| *Dar-se por aggravado* | To make a show of anger |
| *Dar-se por satisfeito* | To rest satisfied |
| *Dar-se por vencido* | To submit, to surrender oneself a prisoner, *or* to yield a point |
| *Dar-se por desentendido* | To fain oneself ignorant, to to take no notice of anything |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quando se der a occasião* | When occasion shall require it |
| *Dar-se pressa* | To be in haste, to make haste |
| *Elle deu-se a toda a sorte de vicios* | He gave himself up to all manner of vices |
| *Que se vos dá a vôs d'isso ?* | What is that to you ? |
| *Pouco se me dá* | I care but little |
| *Não se me dá nada* | I care nothing at all |
| *Elles dão-se muito bem* | They agree very well together |
| *Esta carne não se dá bem para isso* | This meat is not good for that |

### OF THE DIFFERENT IDIOMS OF THE VERB *ESTAR*.

We use the verb *estar* to make an action of repose, by putting the verb that follows in the gerund ; as, *elle está escrevendo*, he is writing.

*Estar* has several other significations ; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Estar em pé* | To stand upright |
| *Estar bem* or *mal* | To be well *or* ill |
| *Estar assentado* | To be sitting |
| *Estar para sahir* | To be just going out |
| *Estar com o sentido em outra parte* | To have one's wits a-wool-gathering |
| *Está muito bem* | It is well, it is very well |
| *Está para chover* | It is going to rain |
| *Estar para cahir* | To be ready to fall |
| *Estar para morrer* | To be on the point of death |
| *Estar em duvida* | To be in doubt |
| *Estaremos a ver* | We will expect the issue |
| *Estar mão sobre mão* | To stand idle |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Estar em casa* | To be at home |
| *Aquillo não me está bem* | That does not become me well |
| *Estar dormido* | To be asleep |
| *Estar fazendo* | To be doing |
| *Estar de nojo* | To be in mourning |
| *Estar álerta* | To be upon one's guard |
| *Estar de sentinella* | To stand sentry |
| *Estar alegre* | To be merry |
| *Elle está como quer* | He lives in clover |
| *Estar em perigo* | To be in danger |
| *Estar encostado* | To lean upon |
| *Estar esperando* | To expect |
| *Estar muito tempo* | To stay a good while |
| *Estar calado* | To be silent |
| *Estar* or *viver com outros* | To dwell with others |
| *Estar por cima* | To lie over |
| *Estar debaixo* | To lie under |
| *Estar bem aviado* | To be in a bad plight |
| *Estar á espera* | To lie in wait |
| *Estar enamorado* | To be in love |
| *Estar de cama* | To be bedridden |
| *Estar no campo* | To be in the country |
| *Estar com saude*, or *de saude* | To be in health |
| *Estar quieto* | To stand still, *or* to be quiet |
| *Estar neutral* | To stand neuter |
| *Estarei por tudo o que vos parecer mais conveniente* | I shall stand to whatever you shall think proper |
| *A difficuldade está em*, &c. | The difficulty consists in, &c. |
| *Estar por alguem* | To stand for one, to be of his side |
| *Estar por* or *em lugar de*, &c. | To stand for *or* signify, &c. |
| *Elle estava na altura do Cabo de Boa Esperança* | He stood off the Cape of Good Hope |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Eu não quero estar a razões comvosco* | I will not quarrel *or* dispute with you |
| *Está quanto quizeres* | Stay as long as it may please thee |
| *Aonde estais?* | Where are you? |
| *Estarei pelo que disser a pessoa que for de vosso agrado* | I will refer it to whom you please |
| *Não podemos estar por isso* | We cannot stand to that |
| *Não quero estar pelas vossas razões* | I will not take your judgment |
| *Como está vm^ce^?* | How do you do, sir? |

*Estar*, joined with the infinitive of a verb and the particle *para*, signifies to be ready, or about doing a thing, which has always reference to the signification of the verb; as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Estou para ir* | I am going, I am ready to go |
| *Estou para comprar um cavallo* | I am about buying a horse |
| *Estou para cazar-me* | I am going to be married |
| *Esta casa está para cahir* | This house is ready to fall |
| *Estou para dizer* | I dare say |
| *Estar com a boca aberta* (metaphor) | To stare, to look, to hearken attentively |
| *Estar de dieta* | To keep to a diet |
| *Estar fiado em alguem* | To trust to, to rely, *or* depend upon one |
| *Estar no fundo* | To lie at the bottom |
| *Estar de fronte* | To lie over against |
| *Estar em competencia* | To stand in competition |
| *Estar ao lume* | To stand by the fire |
| *Estar de longe* | To stand at a distance |
| *Estar alto* | To stand high *or* in a high place |
| *Estar á mão direita de alguem* | To be at one's right hand, to have the first place |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Elle esteve em perigo de afogar-se* | He was like to be drowned |
| *Não estar no caso de*, &c. | Not to be able, *or* in case of, &c. |
| *Estar á ordem de alguem* | To be at one's disposal |
| *Isso não está nos termos* | That is not right, it will not do |
| *Não estou no caso* | I am not in a position of |
| *Estar á razões* | To contend, to strive, *or* quarrel |
| *Estar bem com alguem* | To be in favour with one |
| *Estar bem* | To be well, to be at ease |
| *Bem aviado estaria eu, se* &c. | It would be very bad for me, indeed, if, &c. |
| *Estar em conceito de homem honrado* | To be looked upon as an honest man |
| *Estar na fé de* | To believe, to think, *or* suppose |
| *Estar de posse* | To possess, to have the possession of a thing |
| *Deixai estar isso* | Let that alone |
| *Estar em si* | To be in one's right wits |
| *Estar fóra de si* | To be out of one's wits |
| *Deixa estar* (a sort of threatening) | I will be revenged on you, you shall pay for it |

We have already observed the difference between *ser* and *estar*.

### OF THE DIFFERENT IDIOMS OF *FAZER* AND *FAZER-SE*.

*Fazer* signifies *to do, to make, to create*; also *to form of materials*; also *to feign, to seem, to pretend as if*.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Elle fez que não o via* | He pretended as if he did not see it |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Fazer uma visita* | To pay a visit |
| *Elle o fez maltratar* | He caused him to be used ill |
| *Fazer pé atraz* (metaphor) | To fall *or* draw back, to give ground |
| *Que tendes vós que fazer com isto?* | What have you to do with it? *or* what is that to you? |
| *Fazer alarde de alguma cousa* | To make a pride of a thing, to glory in it |
| *Fazer fim ao desejo* | To satisfy one's desire *or* longing |
| *Fazer por alguma coisa* | To take pains, to endeavour, to labour for a certain purpose, to work for a certain end |
| *Faço por isso* | I try after it |
| *Fazer ao negocio* or *ao caso* | To come to the purpose |
| *Fazer esmolas* | To give alms |
| *Fazer gasto* | To spend |
| *Fazer gosto* | To like, to be pleased with |
| *Fazer o gosto* or *a vontade a alguem* | To please one, to comply with one's desires |
| *Fazer parallelo* | To parallel, to compare |
| *Fazer fumo* | To smoke |
| *Fazer ausencias a alguem* | To speak of any one absent |
| *Faz frio* | It is cold |
| *Fazer em pedaços* | To pull to pieces |
| *Fazer zombaria de alguem* | To mock *or* to laugh at a person |
| *Não façais caso d'isso* | Do not mind that |
| *Fazer agoada* | To take in fresh water |
| *Isto me faz vir a agoa á boca* | This makes my mouth water |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Fazer alto* | To halt |
| *Fazer casa* (in playing at backgammon) | To put two men on the some point |
| *Fazer a cêa* | To get supper ready |
| *Fazer caras* | To make faces |
| *Fazer enredos* | To form a secret design against another |
| *Fazer caso* | To take notice |
| *Fazer de valente* | to act the brave |
| *Fazer muito caso de alguma coisa* | To make much of a thing |
| *Não faço caso d'elle* | I do not take any notice of him |
| *Fazer festa* | To caress, to fondle |
| *Fazer uma festa* | To give an entertainment, to feast |
| *Fazer as vezes de alguem* | To act as a substitute |
| *Fazer das suas* | To do mischief |
| *Fazer lugar* | To make room |
| *Fazer mercê* | To grant a favour |
| *Fazer ouvidos de mercador* | To appear as if one were deaf |
| *Ter que fazer* | To be busy |
| *Fazer exercicio* | To take exercise |
| *Fazer exercicio* (a military word) | To drill |
| *Os soldados estão fazendo exercicio* | The soldiers are drilling |
| *Que fazeis aqui ?* | What are you doing here ? |
| *Fazer um vestido* | To make a suit of clothes |
| *Fazer uma lei, um discurso* | To make a law, a speech |
| *Fazer guerra* | To make war |
| *Fazer saber alguma cousa a alguem* | To make one acquainted with a thing |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Fazer enraivecer alguem* | To make one mad |
| *Fazer uma conta* | To cast up an account |
| *Fazer conta* | To intend, *or* to propose |
| *Elle fazia uma conta, e sahio-lhe outra* | He was much disappointed |
| *Fazer contas com alguem* | To settle accounts with one |
| *Isso não me faz conta* | That is not convenient to me |
| *Fazer pausa* | To make a stand |
| *Fazer bem* | To do good |
| *Fazer dinheiro de alguma cousa* | To make money of a thing, to sell it |
| *Tornar a fazer* | To make again |
| *Fazer damno* | To do harm |
| *Ter que fazer com alguem* | To deal with one, *or* to have to do with one |
| *Fazer amizade* | To become friends |
| *Fazer honra* | To honour |
| *Fazer fé* | To make known, to testify, to witness |
| *Fazer-se forte* | To fortify oneself |
| *Fazer menção* | To mention |
| *Fazer mal* | To hurt |
| *Fazer de alguem o que se quizer* | To dispose of one |
| *Fazer uma aposta* | To lay a wager |
| *Faz vento* | The wind blows |
| *Faz hoje oito dias* | A week ago |
| *Fazer vida com alguem* | To dwell together |
| *Fazer a sua vontade* | To do as one pleases |
| *Fazer o possivel* | To do one's best |
| *Não fareis nada com isso* | You will do no good in it |
| *Não façais mais assim* | Do so no more |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Se tornardes a fazer assim* | If ever you do so again |
| *Desejo que faça a sua fortuna* | I wish he may make his fortune |
| *Custou-me muito a fazel-o vir* | I had much to do to make him come |
| *Fazer a outrem o que quizeramos que outrem nos fizesse a nós* | To do to others as we would have to be done to us |
| *Não tenho que fazer com isso* | I have nothing to do with it |
| *Fazer o que alguem manda* | To do as one is bid |
| *Fazei de mim o que vos parecer* | Do with me as you think fit |
| *Fazer um grande estrondo* | To make a great noise |
| *Elle foi o que fez tudo n'aquelle negocio* | He was the factotum in that business |
| *Que fareis hoje ?* | What will you do to-day ? |
| *Fazer o seu trabalho* | To do one's work |
| *Fazer uma boa casa* | To raise, to set up a good house (business) |
| *Fazer a barba* | To shave |
| *Fazer a cama* | To make the bed |
| *Não sei que lhe fazer* | I cannot help it |
| *Fazer grande negocio* | To drive a great trade |
| *Fazer o seu officio* | To exercise *or* discharge (profession) |
| *Fazer profissão* | To profess |
| *Todos o fazião morto* | Everybody gave out that he was dead |
| *Fazer vir* | To call *or* send for |
| *Fazer entrar*, or *sahir alguem* | To call in *or* out, to bid one come in *or* out |
| *Isto não faz nada* | It is no matter |
| *Não sei que fazer d'isso* | I have no need of it |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Já não tenho que fazer com elle* | I have done with him |
| *Fazer um livro* | To write a book |
| *Fazer amizade com alguem* | To make friendship, to get into friendship with one |
| *Fazer exemplo em alguem*, or *castigal-o para dar exemplo* | To make one a public example |
| *Fazer uma coisa muito encubertamente* | To do a thing very covertly |
| *Fazer das suas* | To play tricks |
| *Elle sempre está fazendo das suas* | He is always playing his tricks |
| *Fazer jurar alguem* | To put one to his oaths |
| *Fazer saltar*, or *voar pelos ares* | To blow up |
| *Fazer boa vizinhança* | To keep on good terms with one's neighbours |
| *Fazer lenha* | To fell wood |
| *Fazer a ronda* | To walk the rounds |
| *Fazer dividas* | To run in debt |
| *Faz lua* | The moon shines |
| *Fazer violencia* | To offer violence |
| *Fazer-se ao trabalho* | To inure oneself to hardships |
| *Fazer-se velho* | To grow old |
| *Fazer-se feio* | To grow ugly |
| *Fazer-se soberbo* | To grow proud |
| *Faz-se tarde* | It grows late |

*Fazer-se* signifies also *to feign, to pretend, to seem, to make as if.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *Faz-se de surdo* | He pretends to be deaf |

## THE DIFFERENT IDIOMS OF *TER* AND *TER-SE*.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ter que fazer* | To be busy |
| *Ter odio* | To hate |
| *Ter por costume* | To be wont |
| *Ter alguem por ignorante* | To believe one ignorant |
| *Ter cuidado de* | To be careful of |
| *Ter cuidados* | To be full of care |
| *Ter fastio* | To loathe, to see food with dislike |
| *Ter animo* | To have courage |
| *Ter boa fama* | To be well spoken of |
| *Ter boa cara* | To have a pleasant face |
| *Ter necessidade* | To be in want |
| *Ter pressa* | To be in haste |
| *Ter muita fumaça* | To be very proud |
| *Ter grande presumpção* | To presume much on one-self |
| *Ter razão* | To be in the right |
| *Não ter razão* | To be in the wrong |
| *Ter uma coisa na ponta da lingua* | To have a thing at one's finger's ends |
| *Ter feições feiticeiras* | To be fascinating |
| *Ter má fama* | To be ill spoken of |
| *Ter ciumes* | To be jealous of |
| *Ter meios com que viver* | To be well off |
| *Ter no pensamento* | To bear in mind |
| *Ter obrigação* | To be obliged |
| *Ter medo* | To be afraid |
| *Ter razão, e mais que razão* | To be right enough |
| *Que tendes vós com isso?* | What is that to you? |
| *Ter carruagem e criados* | To keep a carriage and servants |
| *Ter a alguem suspenso* | To hold one in suspense |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Homem que tem boa feição* | A man of good address |
| *Ter mesa franca* | To keep open house, to keep a table where a man may come without bidding |
| *Ter frio* | To be cold |
| *Ter por bem* | To approve of |
| *Tenho-o por douto* | I consider him as a learned man |
| *Ter com que* | To have wherewith |
| *Não tendes de que vos queixar* | You have no reason of complaint |
| *Não tendes que*, &c. | It is useless, *or* it will be to no purpose for you to, &c. |
| *Isto não tem nada que fazer com o que eu digo* | That is nothing to the purpose |
| *Ter entre mãos* | To have in hand |
| *Tenho isso por certo* | I hold that for a certainty |
| *Ter d'ir com alguem* | To have to go with some one |
| *Ter alguem por si* | To be supported *or* protected by one |
| *Temos por nós a authoridade dos mais prudentes* | The wisest men are of our opinion |
| *Ter para si* | To be of opinion |
| *Ter em muito* | To set much by |
| *Ter em pouco* | To value but little |
| *Ter em boa conta* | To hold in great esteem |
| *Ter mão* | To hold, *or* to restrain |
| *Ter mão n'alguma coisa* | To bear up, to support, to prop, to keep up, to hold up |
| *Tenha não*, or *tem mão* | Hold, stop |
| *Ter-se em pé* | To stand, to stand up |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ter-se bem a cavallo* | To sit firmly *or* well on horseback |
| *Não me posso ter de riso* | I cannot forbear laughing |
| *Não se pode ter, que não falle* | He cannot forbear speaking |

### THE DIFFERENT IDIOMS OF *QUERER.*

*Querer* signifies *to wish, to be willing,* and *to believe;* as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Querem alguns* | Some believe |
| *Querer bem* | To love |
| *Querer mal* | To hate |
| *Antes querer* | To have rather |
| *Queira Deus* | God grant it |
| *Mas quero que assim seja* | I grant it, suppose it were so |
| *Que quer dizer aquelle homem?* | What does that man mean? |
| *Que quer dizer isto?* | What means this? |
| *Isto quer dizer que,* &c. | This means that, &c. |
| *Eu quero absolutamente que,* &c. | I positively resolve that, &c. |
| *Eu assim o quero* | I will have it so |
| *Elle quer que vós obedeçais* | He will have you obey |
| *Não quero* | I will not |
| *Elle o fará quando quizer* | He will do it when he pleases |
| *Elle quer partir ámanhã* | He wants to set out to-morrow |
| *O mal que eu lhe quero me venha a mim* | I wish him no more harm than I do to myself |

### *HAVER,* TO HAVE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Tu has-de ir* | You must go |
| *Elle ha-de vir hoje* | He is to come to-day |
| *Se eu houver de ir* | If I shall be obliged to go |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Aindaque isso me houvesse de custar a vida* | Though I were to lose my life for it |
| *Haveis vós de estar em casa?* | Shall you be at home? |
| *Eu hei-de achar-me lá* | I must be there |
| *Elle ha-de ser bom* | He must be good |
| *Eu hei-de receber dinheiro* | I am to receive money |
| *Vós é que haveis de jogar* | It is your turn to play |
| *Aquillo é que vós havieis de fazer* | You should do that |
| *Haver por bem* | To take in good part |
| *Haver por mal* | To take in ill part |
| *Que ha-de ser* | That is to be hereafter |
| *Aquillo nunca ha-de ser* | That will never happen |
| *Para haver de fallar, ouvir,* &c. | In order to speak, hear, &c. |
| *Que ha-de ser de mim?* | What is to become of me? |
| *Livros do deve, e ha-de haver* | Books of debtor and creditor |
| *Haver mister* | To want |
| *Ha mister apressar-se* | It is necessary to make haste |

*Haver*, when impersonal, is rendered into English by the verb *to be*, preceded by *there;* as,

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ha* | There is *or* there are |
| *Ha homens tão malvados* | There are men so wicked |
| *Havia uma mulher* | There was a woman |
| *Ha alguns bons, e outros máos* | There are some good and some bad |
| *Ha muitas casas* | There are several houses |
| *Ha alguma coisa de novo?* | Is there any news? |
| *Ha mais de uma hora* | It is more than an hour since |
| *Ha muito tempo* | Long since |
| *Ha perto de uma hora que elle sahio* | It is almost an hour since he went out |
| *Ha um anno* | A year ago |
| *Ha oito dias* | Eight days ago |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ha perto de* 20 *legoas da qui lá* | It is nearly 20 leagues thither |
| *Não ha* | There is not |
| *Haver-se*, v. r. | To behave oneself |
| *Elle sabe como se ha de haver*, or *elle sabe como ha de haver-se* | He knows how to behave himself |
| *Elle houve-se de maneira que*, &c. | He behaved himself in such a manner that, &c. |

*Note.*—When this verb is used impersonally, it requires the particle *de*, as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ha-se mister de dinheiro* | Money is wanted |
| *Ha-de-se fazer*, or *dizer, isto* | This must be done *or* said |
| *Ha-de-se fazer o que elle quizer* | People must do what he pleases |

*Ir*, a neuter and irregular verb, *to go, to walk, to march;* also *to grow, to reach any estate gradually, to be going.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ir por mar e por terra* | To travel by sea and land |
| *Como vão os vossos negocios?* | How go your concerns? |
| *Tudo vai bem* | All is well, all goes on well |
| *As suas cousas vão muito mal* | Things go very ill (or very hard) with him |
| *Ir á mão* | To hinder, to obstruct |
| *Ir andando* | To go on *or* forward, to keep *or* hold on his way; *also* to proceed, to continue on, to prosecute |
| *Ir passando* | To shift, to pass life not quite well, to live, though with difficulty |
| *Onde vai?* | Where are you going? |
| *Onde vai isto a dar comsigo?* | What of all this? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ir para baixo* | To go down |
| *Ir para cima* | To go up |
| *Quanto mais vamos para a primavera, mais compridos são os dias* | The nearer the spring the longer the days |
| *Ir de mal para peor* | To grow worse and worse |
| *Ir diante* | To go before |
| *Ir por diante* | To go on *or* forward |
| *Ir ao encontro* | To go to meet |
| *Ir ao fundo* | To sink *or* fall to the bottom |
| *Ir e vir* | To go to and fro |
| *Não faço mais do que ir e voltar* | I will not stay, I shall be back presently |
| *Isso já la vai* | It is a thing past and done |
| *Ei-lo lá vai* | There he goes |
| *Que vos parece d'aquella mulher? ei-lo vai, ella não é feia* | How do you like that woman? there she goes, she is not ugly |
| *Como as cousas agora vão* | As things go now, as the world goes |
| *Por que parte ides?* | Which way do you go? |
| *Deus vá comvosco* | God go with you |
| *Ir á roda do mundo* | To go round the world |
| *Ir com alguem* | To go along with one |
| *Esta travessa vai até á rua larga* | This lane leads into the broad street |
| *Eu o irei ver de caminho* | I will call upon him as I go |
| *Ir continuando o seu caminho* | To go along [along |
| *Ir fora do seu caminho* | To go out of one's way |
| *Ir um de uma banda, e outro da outra* | To go separately |
| *Ir para traz* | To go backward |
| *Ir detraz* | To go behind |
| *Ir atraz de alguem* | To pursue, to go after one |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ir ao alcance de alguem* | To go after one, in order to overtake him |
| *Ir buscar* | To go for *or* fetch |
| *Ir para dentro* | To go in |
| *Ir para fóra* | To go out |
| *Ir peregrinando* | To go on a pilgrimage |
| *Ir ver, cantar,* &c. | To go to see, to sing, &c. |
| *Ir fazer um negocio* | To go upon a business |
| *Ir com a maré* | To go with the tide |
| *Ir par a par com alguem* | To go side by side with one |
| *Vai para quatro meses que eu aqui cheguei* | It is now going on four months since I came hither |
| *Ide em paz* | Depart in peace |
| *O tempo vai abrandando* | The weather grows mild |
| *Ir* (at cards) | To go, to lay, to stake, to set |
| *Ir-se,* v. r. | To go, to go away, to go one's way, to depart, *also* to run *or* leak |
| *Ir-se o enfermo* | The sick man to die |
| *A quaresma vai-se acabando* | Lent draws to an end |
| *Ir-se* | To slip *or* pass away (as time) |
| *Nada se vai mais depressa que o tempo* | Nothing goes faster than time |
| *Aquellas nuvens vão-se escurecendo* | Those clouds are growing dark |
| *Ir-se embora* | To go away, *also* to be over |
| *Esperai até que a calma se vá embora* | Stay till the heat is over |
| *Vai-te embora ; que não sabes enganar a gente* | Away *or* go, you know not how to wheedle people |
| *Vai-se fazendo tarde* | It grows late |
| *Vai-se chegando a noite* | The night draws on |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Vai-se chegando o tempo da séga* | It grows near harvest |
| *Vai-se acabando minha paciencia* | My patience is nearly exhausted |
| *Ir-se escapulindo* | To sneak away |
| *Ir-se á mão* | To refrain, to forbear, to abstain |

*Ir-se*, to go away, impersonal ; as, *vãi-se*, he goes away ; *foi-se*, he went away ; *ir-se-ha*, he shall go away.

TO PRAY.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Senhor, como amigo, faça-me o favor* | Dear sir, do me the favour |
| *Eu vos peço*, or *peço vos* | I pray you |
| *Peço-lhe em cortesia* | I beseech you |
| *Peço-lhe encarecidamente* | I entreat *or* conjure you to do it |
| *Peço-lhe por favor que*, &c. | I beg of you that, &c. |
| *Faça-me a fineza* | Do me the kindness |
| *Peço-lhe perdão* | I beg your pardon |

EXPRESSIONS OF KINDNESS.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Minha vida* | My life |
| *Minha alma* | My soul |
| *Meu amor* | My love |
| *Meu querido, minha querida* | My dear |
| *Meu coração* | My dear love, my love |
| *Filho do meu coração* | My dear boy |
| *Filha da minha alma* | My dear girl |

TO SHOW CIVILITY.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Agradeço a vm^ce* | I thank you |
| *Dou a vm^ce os agradecimentos* | I give you thanks |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Beijo as mãos de vm$^{ce}$* | I kiss your hand |
| *Fal-o-hei com todo o gosto* | I will do it cheerfully |
| *Com todo o meu coração* | With all my heart |
| *De muito boa vontade* | Heartily, willingly |
| *Veja vm$^{ce}$ se o posso servir n'alguma cousa* | See if it is in my power to serve you |
| *Disponha vm$^{ce}$ como lhe parecer d'este seu criado* | Do what you please with your servant |
| *Estou esperando pelas ordens de vm$^{ce}$* | I wait for your commands |
| *Já que vm$^{ce}$ assim o ordena* | Since you will have it so |
| *Ás ordens de vm$^{ce}$* | At your service |
| *Fico muito obrigado a vm$^{ce}$* | I am very much obliged to you |
| *Quer vm$^{ce}$ que eu faça alguma coisa?* | Have you anything to command me? |
| *Sem ceremonia* | Without ceremony |
| *Não tem vm$^{ce}$ mais que fallar* | You need but speak |
| *Faça-me a honra de me pôr aos pés da senhora* | Present my respects, *or* duty, to my lady |
| *Não sei como agradecer a vm$^{ce}$ tantos favores* | I know not how to make a proper return for so many favours |
| *Não sou de cumprimentos* | I am not for ceremonies |
| *Deixemos estes cumprimentos* | Away with these ceremonies *or* compliments |
| *Isso é o melhor* | That is the best way |

### TO GIVE TOKENS OF AFFIRMATION, CONSENT, BELIEF, AND REFUSAL.

| | |
|---|---|
| *É verdade* | It is true |
| *É isso verdade?* | Is it true? |
| *É muito verdade* | It is but too true |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Para dizer-vos a verdade* | To tell you the truth |
| *Com effeito é assim* | Really it is so |
| *Quem duvida d'isso?* | Who doubts it? |
| *Não ha duvida n'isso* | There is no doubt of it |
| *Parece-me que sim, que não* | I think so, I do not think so |
| *Apósto que sim* | I lay it is |
| *Apósto que não* | I lay it is not |
| *Creia-me vm^ce* | Do believe me |
| *Está vm^ce zombando?* | Are you jesting? |
| *Falla vm^ce de veras?* | Are you in earnest? |
| *Fallo de veras* | I am in earnest |
| *Pois está feito* | Well, let it be so |
| *Pouco a pouco* | Little by little |
| *Isso não é verdade* | That is not true |
| *Não ha tal coisa* | There is no such thing |
| *É mentira* | It is false |
| *Estava zombando* | I did but jest |
| *Seja muito embora* | Let it be so |
| *Não quero* | I will not |

TO CONSULT.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Que se ha de fazer?* | What is to be done? |
| *Que faremos?* | What shall we do? |
| *Que lhe parece a vm^ce que eu faça?* | What do you advise me to do? |
| *Que remedio tem isso?* | What remedy is there for it? |
| *Façamos assim* | Let us do so |
| *Façamos uma coisa* | Let us do one thing |
| *Será melhor que* | It will be better that |
| *Seria melhor que* | It would be better that |
| *Esperai um pouco* | Stay a little |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Deixai-me com isso* | Let me alone |
| *Antes quizera* | I had rather |
| *Se isso fosse commigo* | Were that with me |
| *Tudo é o mesmo* | It is all one |

### OF EATING AND DRINKING.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Tenho fóme* | I am hungry |
| *Morro de fóme* | I am dead hungry |
| *Coma vm^ce alguma coisa* | Eat something |
| *Que quer vm^ce comer?* | What will you eat? |
| *Quer vm^ce comer mais?* | Will you eat any more? |
| *Tenho sêde* | I am thirsty |
| *Já matei a fome* | I am no longer hungry |
| *Tenho muita sede* | I am very thirsty |
| *Morro de sede* | I am almost dead with thirst |
| *Dê-me de beber* | Give me something to drink |
| *Eu beberia um copo de vinho* | I could drink a glass of wine |
| *Pois beba vm^ce* | Drink, then |
| *Tenho bebido bastante* | I have drunk enough |
| *Não posso beber mais* | I can drink no more |
| *Já matei a sêde* | I am no longer thirsty, *or* my thirst is quenched |

### OF GOING, COMING, STIRRING, ETC.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Donde vem vm^ce?* | Whence do you come? |
| *Para onde vai vm^ce?* | Where are you going? |
| *Venho de—vou para* | I come from, I am going to |
| *Quer vm^ce subír* or *descer?* | Will you come up *or* come down? |
| *Entre vm^ce, saia vm^ce* | Come in, go out |
| *Não se mexa d'aqui* | Do not stir from hence |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Chegue-se para mim* | Come near to me |
| *Vá-se vm$^{ce}$* | Go your way, be gone |
| *Vem cá* | Come hither |
| *Espere por mim* | Wait for me |
| *Não vá tão depressa* | Do not go so fast |
| *Tire-se de diante de mim* | Get out of my way |
| *Não me toque* | Do not touch me |
| *Deixe estar isso* | Let that alone |
| *Estou bem aqui* | I am well here |
| *Abra vm$^{ce}$ a porta* | Open the door |
| *Feche a porta* | Shut the door |
| *Abra* or *feche a janella* | Open the window, *or* shut the window |
| *Venha vm$^{ce}$ por aqui* | Come this way |
| *Passe por alli* | Pass that way |
| *Que procura vm$^{ce}$ ?* | What do you look for? |
| *Que perdeo vm$^{ce}$ ?* | What have you lost? |

TO WISH WELL TO A PERSON.

| | |
|---|---|
| *O Céo vos guarde* | Heaven preserve you |
| *Deos vos dê boa fortuna* | God send you good luck |
| *Desejo vos todo o bem* | I wish you everything that is good |
| *Deus vos ajude* | God assist you |
| *Deus vos perdoe* | God forgive you |
| *Ide com Deus* | God be with you |
| *Até ver-nos* | Till I see you again |
| *Bom proveito faça a vm$^{ce}$* | Much good may it do you |
| *Bemdito sejas* | God bless you |

TO ADMIRE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Óh Deus!* | O God ! |
| *É possivel !* | Is it possible ! |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quem teria imaginado, crido, dito!* | Who would have thought, believed, said |
| *Que delicia!* | How delightful! |
| *Que maravilha!* or *que milagre!* | Oh, strange! wonder! |
| *Não me maravilho* | I do not wonder |
| *Como pode ser isto?* or *Como é possivel?* | How can that be? |
| *Eis aqui como são as coisas d'este mundo* | So goes the world |

TO SHOW JOY OR DISPLEASURE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Que gosto!* | What pleasure! |
| *Que gloria!* | What bliss! |
| *Que alegria!* | What joy! |
| *Que contentamento é o meu!* | How pleased I am! |
| *Que felicidade!* | What happiness! |
| *Sinto isso* | I am sorry for it |
| *Sinto isso n' alma* | That touches my very soul |
| *Sinto isso no coração* | It pierces me to the heart |
| *Oh que desgraça é a minha!* | Oh, how unhappy am I! |
| *Affrontar-me d'esta sorte!* | To affront me thus! |
| *Assim é que me trata?* | Do you use me thus? |
| *Que bella cortesia!* | Oh, what fine manners! |
| *Não deveria tratar commigo d'esta sorte* | You ought not to treat me thus |
| *Parece-te bem?* | Do you think that well? |
| *Olhe como elle me trata* | See how he is using me |
| *Olhai o que elle diz* | Hear what he says |
| *Peço-lhe que me deixe* | Pray leave me alone |
| *Ora deixa-me* | Away, away |
| *Deixa-me, vai com Deus* | Go, go, God be with you |
| *Vai-te d'aqui,* or *vai-te embora* | Go away |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Vai tratar da tua vida* | Go, mind your own business |
| *Não me quebres a cabeça* | Do not torment me any more |
| *Já me tens dito isso um cento de vezes* | You have told it to me a hundred times already |

TO CALL.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ouve!* | Hark! |
| *Onde estás?* | Where art thou? |
| *Uma palavra* | A word |
| *Duas palavras somente* | Only two words |

TO ASK.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Que novas ha?* | What news? |
| *Que é isto? que ha?* | What is this? what is the matter? |
| *Onde ides?* | Where are you going? |
| *Donde vindes?* | Whence come you? |
| *Que quereis dizer?* | What do you mean? |
| *De que serve?* | To what purpose? |
| *Que vos parece?* | What do you think? |
| *Quem teve tal atrevemento?* | Who has been so bold? |
| *Que dizem? que se diz?* | What do they say? |
| *Como diz vm^ce?* | How do you say? |
| *Por que não me responde?* | Why do you not answer me? |

TO FORBID.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Deixai estar isso* | Let that alone |
| *Não toqueis* | Do not touch |
| *Não digais nada* | Say not a word |
| *Guardai-vos* | Have a care |

## OF SPEAKING, SAYING, DOING, ETC.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Falle vm^cc alto* | Speak loud |
| *Falle vm^ce baixo* | Speak low |
| *Com quem falla vm^ce ?* | To whom do you speak ? |
| *Falla vm^ce commigo ?* | Do you speak to me ? |
| *Falle lhe* | Speak to him *or* to her |
| *Falla vm^ce Portuguez ?* | Do you speak Portuguese ? |
| *Que diz vm^ce ?* | What do you say ? |
| *Não digo nada* | I say nothing |
| *Elle não quer calar-se* | She will not hold her tongue |
| *Ouvi dizer que . . . .* | I was told that . . . . |
| *Assim m-o disserão* | I was told so |
| *Assim dizem* | They say so |
| *Assim dizem todos* | Every one says so |
| *Quem lhó disse a vm^ce ?* | Who told it you ? |
| *Disse-mó o Sr. A.* | Mr. A. told it me |
| *Pois elle é que lhó disse ?* | Did he tell you so ? |
| *Pois ella é que o disse ?* | Did she tell it ? |
| *Quando o ouvio vm^ce dizer ?* | When did you hear it ? |
| *Disserão-m-o hoje* | I heard it to-day |
| *Não posso crel-o* | I cannot believe it |
| *Que diz elle ?* | What does he say ? |
| *Que vos disse-elle ?* | What did he say to you ? |
| *Elle não me disse nada* | He said nothing to me |
| *Não lhó diga vm^ce* | Do not tell him that |
| *Eu lhó direi* | I will tell him *or* her of it |
| *Não diga nada* | Say not a word |
| *Disse vm^ce aquillo ?* | Did you say that ? |
| *Não o disse* | I did not say it |
| *Não disse vm^ce assim ?* | Did you not say so ? |
| *Que está vm^ce fazendo ?* | What are you doing ? |
| *Que tem vm^ce feito ?* | What have you done ? |
| *Não faço nada* | I do nothing |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Não tenho feito nada* | I have done nothing |
| *Tem vm^ce acabado?* | Have you done? |
| *Que está elle fazendo?* | What is he doing |
| *Que faz ella?* | What does she do? |
| *Que quer*, or *que ordena vm^ce?* | What is your pleasure? |
| *Que lhe falta?* | What do you want? |

OF UNDERSTANDING, OR APPREHENDING.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Entende-o*, or *percebe-o vm^ce bem?* | Do you understand him (*or* it) well? |
| *Percebe vm^ce o que elle disse?* | Do you understand what he said? |
| *Percebe vm^ce o que elle diz?* | Do you understand what he says? |
| *Entende-me*, or *percebe-me vm^ce?* | Do you understand me? |
| *Entendo a vm^ce muito bem* | I understand you very well |
| *Sabe vm^ce a lingua Portugueza?* | Do you understand Portuguese? |
| *Não a sei* | I do not understand it |
| *Tem-me vm^ce percebido?* | Did you understand me? |
| *Agora o percebo* | Now I understand you |
| *Não se percebe o que elle diz* | One cannot understand what he says |
| *Parece tartamudo* | He speaks like a stammerer |

OF KNOWING, OR HAVING KNOWLEDGE OF.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Sabe vm^ce isso?* | Do you know that? |
| *Não o sei* | I do not know it |
| *Não sei nada d'isso* | I know nothing of it |
| *Ella bem o sabia* | She knew it well |
| *Porventura não sabia elle isso?* | Did he not know of it? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Demos que eu o soubesse* | Suppose I knew it |
| *Elle não saberá nada d'isso* | He shall know nothing of it |
| *Elle nunca soube nada d'isto* | He never knew anything about this |
| *Eu soube-o primeiro*, or *antes que vm^ce o soubesse* | I knew it before you |
| *É isto assim ou não?* | Is it so or not? |
| *Não que eu saiba* | Not that I know of |

OF KNOWING, OR BEING ACQUAINTED WITH, FORGETTING AND REMEMBERING.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Conhece-o um^ce?* | Do you know him? |
| *Conhece-a vm^ce?* | Do you know her? |
| *Conhece-os vm^ce?* | Do you know them? |
| *Conheço-o muite bem* | I know him very well |
| *Não os conheço* | I do not know them |
| *Nós não nos conhecemos* | We do not know one another |
| *Conheço-o de vista* | I know him by sight |
| *Conheço-a de nome* | I know her by name |
| *Elle conheceo-me muito bem* | He knew me very well |
| *Conhece-me vm^ce?* | Do you know me? |
| *Estou esquecido do seu nome* | I have forgotten your name |
| *Esqueceu-se vm^ce de mim?* | Did you forget me? |
| *Conhece-vos ella?* | Does she know you? |
| *Conhece o Sr. a vm^ce?* | Does the gentleman know you? |
| *Parece que não me conhece* | It appears he does not know me |
| *O Sr. bem me conhece* | The gentleman knows me well |
| *Elle já me não conhece* | He knows me no more |
| *Tenho a honra de ser seu conhecido* | I have the honour to be known to him |
| *Lembra-se vm^ce d'isso?* | Do you remember that? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Não me lembro d'isso* | I do not remember it |
| *Lembro-me muito bem d'isso* | I do remember it very well |

OF AGE, LIFE, DEATH, ETC.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Que idade tem vm$^{ce}$ ?* | How old are you ? |
| *Que idade tem seu irmão ?* | How old is your brother ? |
| *Tenho vinte e cinco annos* | I am five-and-twenty |
| *Tem vinte e dois annos* | He is twenty-two years old |
| *Vm$^{ce}$ tem mais annos do que eu* | You are older than I |
| *Que idade terá vm$^{ce}$ ?* | How old may you be ? |
| *É vm$^{ce}$ casado ?* | Are you married ? |
| *Quantas vezes tem vm$^{ce}$ sido casado ?* | How often have you been married ? |
| *Quantas mulheres tém vm$^{ce}$ tido ?* | How many wives have you had ? |
| *Tem vm$^{ce}$ ainda pae e mãi ?* | Are your father and mother still alive ? |
| *Meu pai morreo* | My father is dead |
| *Minha mãi morreo* | My mother is dead |
| *Ha dois annos que meu pai morreo* | My father has been dead these two years |
| *Minha mãi casou outra vez* | My mother is married again |
| *Quantos filhos tem vm$^{ce}$ ?* | How many children have you ? |
| *Tenho quatro* | I have four |
| *Filhos ou filhas ?* | Sons or daughters ? |
| *Tenho um filho e tres filhas* | I have one son and three daughters |
| *Quantos irmãos tem vm$^{ce}$ ?* | How many brothers have you ? |
| *Não tenho nenhum vivo* | I have none alive |
| *Todos morreram* | They are all dead |
| *Todos havemos de morrer* | We must all die |

## OF THE WORD *HORA*, AS A NOUN.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Hôra* | An hour, *also* a particular time |
| *Eu estarei lá dentro de uma hora* | I will be there within an hour |
| *Que horas são?* | What is it o'clock? what is the time? |
| *São sete horas* | It is seven o'clock |
| *A que horas estareis vós lá?* | At what hour *or* time will you be there? |
| *As horas que for preciso* | In due *or* good time, at the time appointed |
| *Horas desoccupadas* | Leisure hours |
| *A ultima hora*, or *a hora da morte* | The last *or* the dying hour |
| *Cada hora* | Every hour |
| *De hora em hora* | Hourly, every hour |
| *Meia hora* | Half an hour |
| *Um quarto de hora* | A quarter of an hour |
| *Uma hora e meia* | An hour and a half |
| *Perto das nove horas* | About nine o'clock |
| *Ha uma hora* | An hour ago, *or* an hour since |
| *Fóra de horas* | Beyond the hour, or very late |
| *A tempo* | In time |
| *Recolher-se a boas horas* | To keep good hours |
| *Recolher-se fóra de horas* | To keep late hours |
| *Horas de jantar*, or *de cear* | Dinner *or* supper-time |
| *Perto das horas de jantar* | About dinner-time |
| *Ainda estais na cama a estas horas?* | Are you in bed at this time of the day? |
| *O relogio dá horas* | The clock strikes |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Já derão onze horas* | It struck eleven o'clock |
| *Muito a boas horas* | Early, betimes |
| *A boas horas* | In good time, in time, at the time appointed |
| *Em má hora* | In an ill hour, unluckily, unfortunately |
| *Toda a hora que* | Whensoever, at what time soever |
| *A toda hora que quizerdes* | At what time you will |
| *Hora* | Time |
| *Horas de fazer oração* | Prayer-time |
| *Horas de ir á igreja* | Church-time |
| *Horas de ir para a cama* | Bedtime |
| *Horas de comer* | Meal-times |
| *Já não são horas* | The time is past, it is too late |
| *Quando lhe chegar a sua hora* | When his dying hour shall arrive |
| *Estar esperando pela sua hora* | To wait for God's time |
| *Não ver a hora* | To long, to wish with eagerness, continued, with *em* or *de* before the thing desired |
| *São horas de*, &c. | It is time to, &c. |
| *Horas canónicas* | The set time for the clergy to say their office |
| *Horas* | Any little prayer-book, but particularly that in which is the office of the Blessed Virgin |
| *As quarenta horas* | So they call the space of three days, in which the consecrated Host is exposed and laid to public view, in certain festivals |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Conta das horas* | Horography, account of hours |
| *Arte de dividir o tempo em horas* | Horometry |

### *ORA*, AS AN ADVERB AND INTERJECTION.*

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ora, deixa-o-ir* | Pray let him go |
| *Ora, deixa-te d'estas parvoices* | Away with these fopperies |
| *Ora, deixemo-nos d'estes cumprimentos* | Away with these compliments |
| *Ora, vamos, despacha-te* | Come, come, make haste |
| *Ora, vamos, não ha perigo* | Away, there is no danger |
| *Ora, vamos, tira, d'aqui isto* | Away with this |
| *Ora, vamos, tem vergonha* | Away, for shame |
| *Ora, eu não posso soffrer aquillo* | I cannot bear that |
| *Ora um, ora outro* | Sometimes one, sometimes another |
| *Elles ora estão sobre um pé, ora sobre outre* | They stand now on one foot, and then on another |
| *Ora, que quer dizer isso?* | How now? |
| *Tudo a que é bom, deve ser amado; ora, Deus é infinitamente bom, logo, &c.* | All that is good is to be loved; now God is infinitely good, therefore, &c. |
| *Ora, havia um enfermo* | Now, there was a sick man |
| *Por ora* | At present, for the present, now, at this time |

* When it is an adverb or an interjection, it is now written *ora*, without the *h*.

# A VOCABULARY

OF

## WORDS MOST USED IN CONVERSATION.

---

| DO CEO E DOS ELEMENTOS. | OF THE HEAVENS AND THE ELEMENTS. |
|---|---|
| *Deus* | God |
| *Jesus Christo* | Jesus Christ |
| *O Espirito Santo* | The Holy Ghost |
| *A Trindade* | The Trinity |
| *A Virgem* | The Virgin |
| *Os anjos* | The angels |
| *Os archanjos* | The archangels |
| *Os santos* | The saints |
| *Os bem aventurados* | The blessed |
| *O céo* | Heaven |
| *O paraiso* | Paradise |
| *O inferno* | Hell |
| *O purgatorio* | Purgatory |
| *Os guerubins* | The cherubim |
| *O fogo* | The fire |
| *O ar* | The air |
| *A terra* | The earth |
| *O mar* | The sea |
| *O sol* | The sun |
| *A lua* | The moon |
| *As estrellas* | The stars |
| *Os raios* | The rays |

| | |
|---|---|
| *As nuvens* | The clouds |
| *O vento* | The wind |
| *A chuva* | The rain |
| *O trovão* | The thunder |
| *O relampago* | The lightning |
| *A saraiva* | The hail |
| *O raio* | The thunderbolt |
| *A neve* | The snow |
| *A geada* | The frost |
| *O gelo* | The ice |
| *O orvalho* | The dew |
| *Nevoa* | Fog *or* mist |
| *O terremoto* | The earthquake |
| *O diluvio* | The deluge *or* flood |
| *O calor* | The heat |
| *O frio* | The cold |

| DO TEMPO. | OF TIME. |
|---|---|
| *O dia* | The day |
| *A noite* | The night |
| *Meio dia* | Noon |
| *Meia noite* | Midnight |
| *A manhã* | The morning |
| *Uma hora* | An hour |
| *Um quarto de hora* | A quarter of an hour |
| *Meia hora* | Half an hour |
| *Tres quartos de hora* | Three-quarters of an hour |
| *Hoje* | To-day |
| *Hontem* | Yesterday |
| *Amanhã* | To-morrow |
| *Antes d'hontem* | The day before yesterday |
| *Depois de ámanhã* | After to-morrow |
| *Depois de jantar* | After dinner |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Depois da cêa* | After supper |
| *Uma semana* | A week |
| *Um mez* | A month |
| *Um anno* | A year |
| *Um dia santo* | A holiday |
| *Um dia de trabalho* | A working day |
| *O nascer do sol* | The sun-rising |
| *O pôr do sol* | The sunset |
| *O tempo da séga* or *da ceifa* | The harvest |
| *O tempo de vindima* | The vintage |

| DAS ESTAÇÕES DO TEMPO. | OF THE SEASONS. |
|---|---|
| *A primavera* | The spring |
| *O verão* | The summer |
| *O outomno* | The autumn |
| *O inverno* | The winter |

| OS DIAS DA SEMANA. | THE DAYS OF THE WEEK. |
|---|---|
| *Domingo* | Sunday |
| *Segunda feira* | Monday |
| *Terça feira* | Tuesday |
| *Quarta feira* | Wednesday |
| *Quinta feira* | Thursday |
| *Sexta feira* | Friday |
| *Sabado* | Saturday |

| DOS MESES. | OF THE MONTHS. |
|---|---|
| *Janeiro* | January |
| *Fevereiro* | February |
| *Março* | March |
| *Abril* | April |
| *Maio* | May |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Junho* | June |
| *Julho* | July |
| *Agosto* | August |
| *Setembro* | September |
| *Outobro* | October |
| *Novembro* | November |
| *Dezembro* | December |

| DIAS SANTOS. | HOLY-DAYS OF THE YEAR. |
|---|---|
| *Dia de Anno-bom* | New Year's Day |
| *Dia de Reis, a Epiphania* | Twelfth Day |
| *A Candelaria* | Candlemas Day |
| *A Purificação* | The Purification |
| *O Entrudo* | The Carnival, *or* Shrovetide |
| *Quarta feira de Cinzas* | Ash Wednesday |
| *A Quaresma* | The Lent |
| *Annunciação* | Lady Day in March |
| *As Quatro Temporas* | The Ember Weeks |
| *A Semana santa* | The Holy Week |
| *Domingo de Ramos* | Palm Sunday |
| *Quarta feira de Trevas* | Wednesday before Easter |
| *Quinta feira de Endoenças* | Maunday Thursday, the last Thursday in Lent |
| *Sesta feira da Paixão* | Good Friday |
| *Pascoa de Resurreição* | Easter Day |
| *Assumpção de N. Sª.* | Lady Day in Harvest |
| *As Rogações*, or *Ladainhas* | Rogation Week |
| *Ascensão* | The Ascension |
| *Pentecostes* | The Pentecost, *or* Whitsuntide |
| *Dia do Corpo de Deus* | Corpus Christi Day |
| *Dia de S. João* | Midsummer Day |
| *Dia de S. Pedro* | Lammas Day |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Dia de todos os Santos* | All Saints' Day |
| *Dia dos Finados* | All Souls |
| *Dia de S. Martinho* | Martinmas |
| *Dia de Natal* | Christmas Day |
| *Vigilia*, or *vespera* | The eve |

| DA IGREJA E DIGNIDADES ECCLESIASTICAS. | OF THE CHURCH AND ECCLESIASTICAL DIGNITIES. |
|---|---|
| *A nave* | The aisle of the church |
| *O zimborio* | The dome |
| *O pináculo* | The pinnacle |
| *O córo* | The choir |
| *A capella* | The chapel |
| *Um estante* | A reading desk *or* chorister's desk |
| *A sacristia* | The vestry |
| *O campanario*, or *torres dos sinos* | The belfry *or* steeple |
| *O sino* | The bell |
| *O badalo* | The clapper of the bell |
| *A pia* | The font |
| *Um hysope* | A sprinkler |
| *Um confessionario* | A confession seat |
| *Uma tribuna* | A tribune *or* gallery |
| *Um cemiterio* | A churchyard *or* burying-place |
| *Um carneiro* | A charnel |
| *Um altar* | An altar |
| *Um frontal* | Antipendium |
| *Um pallio* | A canopy |
| *Uma toalha do altar* | The altar-cloth |
| *Um missal* | A missal, a prayer-book |
| *Uma sotana* | A cassock |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um sobrepelliz* | A surplice |
| *Um roquete* | A short surplice, a bishop's surplice |
| *O papa* | The pope |
| *Um cardeal* | A cardinal |
| *Um patriarcha* | A patriarch |
| *Um arcebispo* | An archbishop |
| *Um bispo* | A bishop |
| *Um legado* | A legate |
| *Vice-legado* | A vice-legate |
| *Um nuncio* | A nuncio |
| *Um prelado* | A prelate |
| *Um commendador* | A commander |
| *Um abbade* | An abbot |
| *Uma abbadessa* | An abbess |
| *Um prior* | A prior |
| *Um reitor* | A rector |
| *Um beneficiado* | A beneficed clergyman *or* incumbent |
| *Um frade* | A friar *or* monk |
| *A corôa* | A shaven crown |
| *Um guardião* | A guardian |
| *Um definidor* | A definitor |
| *Um provincial* | A provincial |
| *Um geral* | A general |
| *Um vigario* | A vicar |
| *Um vigario-geral* | A vicar-general |
| *Um deão* | A dean |
| *Um arcediago* | An archdeacon |
| *Um diacono* | A deacon |
| *Um subdiacono* | A subdeacon |
| *Um conego* | A canon |
| *Um arcipreste* | Arch-priest |
| *Um clerigo* | A clergyman |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um capellão* | A chaplain |
| *Um esmoler* | An almoner |
| *Um cura* | A curate |
| *Benificio simples* | Sinecure |
| *Uma freira* | A nun |
| *Um prégador* | A preacher |
| *Um sacristão* | A sexton, a vestry-keeper |
| *Um menino do côro* | A choir-boy |

| O MUNDO VISIVEL. | THE PHYSICAL WORLD. |
|---|---|
| *A natureza* | Nature |
| *A materia* | Matter |
| *Um átomo* | An atom |
| *Uma molécula* | A particle |
| *Um corpo* | A body |
| *Um sólido* | A solid |
| *A solidez* | Solidity |
| *Um fluido* | A fluid |
| *A fluidez* | Fluidity |
| *O gaz* | The gas |
| *A luz* | The light |
| *Um ser humano* | A human being |
| *O espaço, a immensidade* | The space *or* immensity |

| DO SERVIÇO DE HUMA MESA. | OF THE COVERING OF THE TABLE. |
|---|---|
| *A mesa* | The table |
| *O aparador* | The sideboard |
| *A toalha da mesa* | The table-cloth |
| *Uma toalha de mãos* | A towel |
| *Um guardanapo* | A napkin |
| *Uma faca* | A knife |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um garfo* | A fork |
| *Uma colher* | A spoon |
| *Um prato* | A plate |
| *Um saleiro* | A saltceller |
| *Uma galheta* | A cruet |
| *Um talher* {A place at table} *i.e.*, | A plate with a knife, spoon, *or* fork |
| *O assucareiro* | The sugar-basin |
| *Baixella*, or *serviço de prata* | A set of silver-plate |
| *Uma cuberta* | A course |
| *Um copo* | A glass |
| *Uma garrafa* | A bottle |
| *Uma taça* | A cup |
| *Um cesto para pôr o pão* | A bread-basket |
| *Um faqueiro* | A case for knives |
| *Louça de barro* | Earthenware |
| *Louça de estanho* | A pewter service |
| *Baixella*, or *serviço de porcelana* | A china service |
| *Colher da sopa* | A table-spoon |
| *Uma colher-de-chá* | A tea-spoon |
| *Um trinchante* | A carving-knife and fork |
| *Um prato côvo* | A soup-dish |
| *Uma travessa* | A dish |
| *Um pimenteiro* | A pepper-box |
| *Uma mostardeira* | A mustard-pot |
| *Uma saladeira* | A salad-dish |
| *Uma cafeteira* | A coffee-pot |
| *Uma chocolateira* | A chocolate-pot |
| *Um bule* | A tea-pot |
| *Uma bandeja* | A tray |
| *Uma leiteira* | A milk-pot |
| *Uma taça* | A cup |
| *Um pires* | A saucer |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma poncheira* | A punch-bowl |
| *Um saccarolhas* | A corkscrew |
| *Um cascanozes* | A nut-cracker |

| AS COMIDAS. | THE MEALS. |
|---|---|
| *O almôço* | Breakfast |
| *Almoçar* | To breakfast |
| *O jantar* | Dinner |
| *Jantar* | To dine |
| *A merenda* | A luncheon |
| *A cêa* | Supper |
| *Cêar* | To sup |
| *Consoada* | A light supper, as upon a fast-day |

| DA COMIDA. | OF EATING. |
|---|---|
| *Pão* | Bread |
| *Carne* | Meat |
| *Peixe* | Fish |
| *Carne cozida* | Boiled meat |
| *Carne assada* | Roast meat |
| *Um pastel* | A tart |
| *Sôpa* | Soup |
| *Caldo* | Broth |
| *Môlho* | Sauce |
| *Fructa* | Fruit |
| *Queijo* | Cheese |
| *Vaca* | Beef |
| *Carneiro* | Mutton |
| *Vitella* | Veal |
| *Cordeiro* | Lamb |
| *Gallinha* | Fowl |
| *Gallo* | Cock |
| *Perú* | A turkey |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Almondegas* | Force-meat balls |
| *Pão fresco*, or *pão molle* | New bread |
| *Pão quente* | A hot loaf |
| *Pão de toda farinha* | Common bread |
| *Pão branco*, or *pão alvo* | White bread |
| *Arrôz* | Rice |
| *Pão de rala* | Brown bread |
| *Pão de cevada* | Barley bread |
| *Pão de centeio* | Rye bread |
| *Pão de avea* | Oaten bread |
| *Pão de milho miudo* | Millet bread |
| *Pão de milho grande*, ou *de maiz* | Indian corn bread |
| *Um biscoito* | A biscuit |
| *Uma migalha de pão* | A crumb of bread |
| *Uma fatia de pão* | A slice of bread |
| *Uma côdea de pão* | A crust of bread |
| *Massa* | Dough |
| *Uma torta* | A tart |
| *Rosca* | Roll |
| *Estofado* | Stewed meat |
| *Fiambre* | Ham |
| *Carne assada sobre grelhas* | Broiled meat from the grill |
| *Carne frita* | Fried meat |
| *Picado*, or *carne picada* | Mince meat |
| *Um javali*, or *porco montez* | A wild boar |
| *Presunto* | Ham |
| *Porco* | Pork |
| *Cabrito* | Kid |
| *Toucinho* | Bacon |
| *Um lombo* | A loin |
| *Mãos de carneiro* | Sheep's trotters |
| *Fressura*, or *forçura* | A pluck |
| *Uma cachola de porco* | A pig's head |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Linguiça*, or *lingoiça* | A sausage |
| *Chouriço de sangue de porco* | Black-pudding |
| *Fricassé* | A fricassee |
| *Fígado* | Liver |
| *Leite* | Milk |
| *Nata* | Cream |
| *Sôro* | Whey |
| *Requeijão* | Cream cheese |
| *Coalhada* | Curdled milk |
| *Um ôvo* | An egg |
| *A gemma do ôvo* | The yolk of an egg |
| *A clara do ôvo* | The white of an egg |
| *Um ôvo fresco* | A new-laid egg |
| *Um ôvo molle* | A soft egg |
| *Um ôvo duro* | A hard egg |
| *Ovos escalfados* | Poached eggs |
| *Ovos fritos* | Fried eggs |
| *Uma omelette* | An omelette |
| *Uma fritura* | A fritter |
| *Ovas dé peixe* | The roes of fish |
| *Dôces* | Sweetmeats |
| *Marmelada* | Marmalade |

| O QUE SE ASSA. | THAT WHICH IS ROASTED. |
|---|---|
| *Um capão* | A capon |
| *Uma franga* | A pullet |
| *Um frango* | A chicken |
| *Pombos* | Pigeons |
| *Pombo trocaz* | A wood-culver *or* wood-pigeon |
| *Uma gallinhola* | A woodcock |
| *Uma narseja* | A snipe |
| *Uma perdiz* | A partridge |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um tordo* | A thrush |
| *Um faisão* | A pheasant |
| *Um faisãosinho* | A pheasant-poult |
| *Um leitão* | A sucking-pig |
| *Um veado* | A stag |
| *Um coelho* | A rabbit |
| *Uma lebre* | A hare |
| *Um adem* | A duck |
| *Um ganso* | A drake |
| *Uma pata* | A goose |
| *Um pato* | A gander |
| *Uma calhandra* | A skylark |
| *Uma cordorniz* | A quail |

| DE OUTROS PASSAROS. | OF OTHER BIRDS. |
|---|---|
| *Uma águia* | An eagle |
| *Uma águia nova* | An eaglet |
| *Um abutre* | A vulture |
| *Um abestrús* | An ostrich |
| *Um esmerilhão* | A merlin |
| *Um gavião* | A sparrowhawk |
| *Um môcho* | The horned owl |
| *Um falcão* | A falcon |
| *Um falcão que ainda não vôa* | A jess-hawk |
| *Um gerifalte* | A gerfalcon |
| *Um sacre* | A saker, a saker-hawk |
| *Uma garça* | A heron |
| *Um melharuco* | Tomtit |
| *Uma garçota* | A little heron |
| *Um milhano*, or *milhafre* | A kite |
| *Um corvo* | A crow *or* raven |
| *Uma gralha* | A rook |
| *Um gralho* | A jackdaw |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma alveloa*, or *rabeta* | A wagtail |
| *Um canario* | A canary-bird |
| *Um pintacilgo* | A goldfinch |
| *Um melro* | A blackbird |
| *Um tentilhão* | A chaffinch |
| *Um rouxinol* | A nightingale |
| *Um verdelhão* | A green-bird |
| *Um papagayo* | A parrot |
| *Uma pêga* | A magpie |
| *Um estorninho*, or *zorzal* | A starling |
| *Um francelho* | A hobby, a musket |
| *Um môcho* | Owl |
| *Uma coruja* | A screech-owl |
| *Um morcêgo* | A bat |
| *Uma ave nocturna, como melro, que mama as cabras* | A goat-milker |
| *Um francolim* | A goodwit, a moor-cock |
| *Um bufo* | A night-crow *or* raven |
| *Uma cerceta* | A teal |
| *Um corvo marinho* | A cormorant |
| *Um gaivota* | A moor-hen *or* gull |
| *Um gaivão* | A martlet *or* marten, a kind of swallow |
| *Uma andorinha* | A swallow |
| *Um mergulhão* | A diver |
| *Uma marreca* | A wild duck |
| *Um picanço* | A wren, a little bird |
| *Um taralhão* | A kind of ortolan |
| *Um pavão* | A peacock |
| *Uma pavôa* | A pea-hen |
| *Uma arára* | A macaw |
| *Um pardal* | A sparrow |
| *Uma rôla* | A turtle-dove |
| *Um alcion* | A kingfisher |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma cegonha* | A stork |
| *Uma cuco* | A cuckoo |
| *Uma cisne* | A swan |
| *Um pintarrôxo* | A robin |
| *Uma grou* | A crane |
| *Um pavoncino* | A lapwing |
| *Um pelicano* | A pelican |
| *Uma tarâmbola* | A plover |
| *Um pisco* | A bullfinch *or* red-tail |

| PARA OS DIAS DE PEIXE, OU DE JEJUM. | FOR FISH DAYS, OR FAST DAYS. |
|---|---|
| *Sôpa de hervas*, &c. | Vegetable soup |
| *Peixe* | Fish |
| *Peixe do mar* | Sea-fish |
| *Peixe de agoa doce* | Fresh-water fish |
| *Um savel* | A shad |
| *Uma anchova* | An anchovy |
| *Uma enguia* | An eel |
| *Um barbo* | A barbel |
| *Um lucio* | A pike *or* jack |
| *Uma carpa* | A carp |
| *Uma siba* | A cuttle-fish |
| *Uma lula* | A calamary |
| *Uma cabra* | The miller's thumb |
| *Um goraz* | A roach |
| *Um congro* | A conger |
| *Uma dourada* | A dorado, St. Peter's fish, *or* the gilt-head |
| *Um linguado* | A sole |
| *Uma lagosta* | A lobster |
| *Um bordalo* | A sturgeon, sometimes called a shad-fish |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um mugem* | A mullet |
| *Um rodovalho* | A turbot |
| *Uma sarda* | A sort of small mackerel |
| *Uma cavalla* | A mackerel |
| *Uma sardinha* | A pilchard |
| *Um bacalháo* | Dried cod |
| *Um arenque* | A herring |
| *Um voador* | A flying-fish |
| *Um arenque de fumo* | A red herring |
| *Um arenque com óvas* | A hard-roed herring |
| *Uma pescada* | An ake |
| *Um cadoz* | A gudgeon |
| *Uma ostra* | An oyster |
| *Uma lamprea* | A lamprey |
| *Uma lamprea pequena* | A lampern |
| *Um porco marinho* | A porpoise |
| *Uma perca* | Perch |
| *Uma tinca* | A tench |
| *Uma truta* | A trout |
| *Um atum* | A tunny-fish |
| *Um salmão* | A salmon |
| *Um camaráo* | A shrimp *or* prawn |
| *Um caranguejo* | A crab |
| *Uma ameijoa* | A cockle |

| PARA TEMPERAR O COMER. | TO SEASON MEAT WITH. |
|---|---|
| *Sal* | Salt |
| *Pimenta* | Pepper |
| *Pimentã de Cayenna* | Cayenne pepper |
| *Azeite* | Oil |
| *Vinagre* | Vinegar |
| *Mostarda* | Mustard |
| *Cravo da India* | Cloves |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Canela* | Cinnamon |
| *Loureiro* | Laurel |
| *Alcaparras* | Capers |
| *Cogumelos* | Mushrooms |
| *Tubaras* | Truffles |
| *Cebolas* | Onions |
| *Ouregão* | Organy |
| *Funcho* | Fennel |
| *Cebolinhas* | Young onions |
| *Alho* | Garlic |
| *Laranjas* | Oranges |
| *Limões* | Lemons |
| *Perrexil* | Wild parsley |
| *Salsa* | Garden parsley |
| *Ortelã* | Mint |
| *Aipo* | Celery |
| *Alho pôrro* | Leek |
| *Coentro* | Coriander |
| *Açafrão* | Saffron |

| PARA SALADA. | FOR A SALAD. |
|---|---|
| *Almeirão* | Wild succory |
| *Almeirão hortense* or *endivia* | Endive |
| *Alface* | Lettuce |
| *Chicoria* | Succory |
| *Agriões* | Water-cresses |
| *Mastruços*, or *masturços* | Cresses |
| *Cerefolio* | Chervil |
| *Rábão* | Radish root |

| PARA SOBREMESA. | FOR THE DESSERT. |
|---|---|
| *Maçãs* | Apples |
| *Peras* | Pears |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma pêra begamota* | A bergamot pear |
| *Pêcegos* | Peaches |
| *Uma camoeza* | A pippin |
| *Damasco* | Apricot |
| *Cerejas* | Cherries |
| *Cerejas de saco* | Hard cherries |
| *Ginjas* | Sour cherries |
| *Ginja garrafal* | A very large sort of cherry, the fruit of the dwarf cherry-tree |
| *Laranja da China* | China orange |
| *Uvas* | Grapes |
| *Passas de uva* | Raisins |
| *Uva erpim* | Gooseberries |
| *Figos* | Figs |
| *Figos lampos* | The first figs that come in May |
| *Ameixas* | Plums |
| *Passas de ameixas* | Prunes |
| *Amoras de sarça* or *de silva* | Blackberries |
| *Framoesas* | Raspberries |
| *Amoras da amoreira* | Mulberries |
| *Marmelos* | Quinces |
| *Romãs* | Pomegranates |
| *Lima* | Lime |
| *Azeitonas* | Olives |
| *Amendoas* | Almonds |
| *Nêsperos* | Medlars |
| *Um melão* | A melon |
| *Uma melancia* | A water-melon |
| *Castanhas* | Chestnuts |
| *Nózes* | Wulnuts |
| *Avelans* | Hazel-nuts |
| *Morangos* | Strawberries |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Medrônho* | A sort of fruit that grows in Portugal, like a strawberry, said to intoxicate |
| *Um tamara* | A date |
| *Um pistacho* | A pistachio-nut |
| *Uma alfarroba* | A carob |
| *Uma belota* | An acorn |
| *Sôrva* | Service |

| DA BEBIDA. | OF DRINKING. |
|---|---|
| *Agoa* | Water |
| *Vinho* | Wine |
| *Vinho do Porto* | Port wine |
| *Vinho de Jerez* | Sherry wine |
| *Cerveja* | Beer |
| *Cerveja branca* | Ale |
| *Café* | Coffee |
| *Café com leite* | Coffee and milk |
| *Chocolate* | Chocolate |
| *Chocolate com leite* | Chocolate and milk |
| *Cidra* | Cider |
| *Agua-ardente* | Brandy |
| *Limonada* | Lemonade |
| *Licores* | Liquors |
| *Ponche* | Punch |
| *Rom* | Rum |
| *Chá* | Tea |
| *Vinho branco* | White wine |
| *Vinho tinto* | Red wine |

| DAS ARVORES E ARBUSTOS. | OF TREES AND SHRUBS. |
|---|---|
| *Um damasqueiro* | An apricot tree |
| *Uma amendoeira* | An almond tree |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma cerejeira* | A cherry tree |
| *Um castanheiro* | A chestnut tree |
| *Uma cidreira* | A citron tree |
| *Uma sorveira* | A service tree |
| *Uma palmeira* | A palm tree |
| *Uma figueira* | A fig tree |
| *Um marmeleiro* | A quince tree |
| *Uma macieira* | An apple tree |
| *Uma macieira da náfega* | A jubub tree |
| *Uma romeira* | A pomegranate tree |
| *Um limoeiro* | A lemon tree |
| *Uma amoreira* | A mulberry tree |
| *Uma oliveira* | An olive tree |
| *Uma nespereira* | A medlar tree |
| *Uma laranjeira* | An orange tree |
| *Murta* | Myrtle |
| *Uma nogueira* | A walnut tree |
| *Um zambujeiro* | A wild olive tree |
| *Era* | Ivy |
| *Um percegueiro* | A peach tree |
| *Uma roseira* | A rose-bush |
| *Uma ameixieira* | A plum tree |
| *Uma pereira* | A pear tree |
| *Romaninho* | Rosemary |
| *Um pinheira* | A pine tree |
| *Giesta* | Broom |

| DOS REPTIS E ANIMAES AMPHIBIOS. | OF REPTILES AND AMPHIBIOUS CREATURES. |
|---|---|
| *Uma minhóca* | An earth-worm |
| *Uma serpente* | A serpent |
| *Uma serpente com azas* | A flying serpent |
| *Um aspide* | An asp |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma cobra* | A snake |
| *Uma cobra de cascavel* | A rattlesnake |
| *Uma vibora* | A viper |
| *Um lagarto* | A lizard |
| *Uma ósga* | An evet, eft, *or* newt |
| *Um oscorpião* | A scorpion |
| *Um crocodilo* | A crocodile |
| *Um jacaré*, or *crocodilo da America* | An alligator |
| *Um castôr* | A beaver |
| *Um cágado* | A land tortoise |
| *Uma lontra* | An otter |

| DOS INSECTOS. | OF INSECTS. |
|---|---|
| *Uma aranha* | A spider |
| *Uma formiga* | An ant |
| *Um caracol* | A snail |
| *Uma rã* | A frog |
| *Um sapo* | A toad |
| *Um ouçáo* | A hand-worm |
| *Uma barata* | A beetle |
| *Um caruncho* | A woodworm |
| *Uma lagarta* | A caterpillar |
| *Uma cigarra* | A grasshopper |
| *Uma borbolêta* | A butterfly |
| *Um grillo* | A cricket |
| *Uma lêndea* | A nit |
| *Uma pulga* | A flea |
| *Uma môsca* | A fly |
| *Um carrapato* | A tick |
| *Um gafanhôto* | A locust |
| *Polilha*, or *traça* | Moth |
| *Uma vêspa* | A wasp |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma abêlha* | A bee |
| *Um zango*, or *zangão* | A drone |
| *Um tavão* | An ox-fly |
| *Um boi de Deus* | A ladybird |
| *Um mosquito* | A gnat |

| GRÁOS DE PARENTESCO. | DEGREES OF KINDRED. |
|---|---|
| *Pai*, or *pae* | Father |
| *Mãi* | Mother |
| *Avô* | Grandfather |
| *Avó* | Grandmother |
| *Bisavô* | Great-grandfather |
| *Bisavó* | Great-grandmother |
| *Filho* | Son |
| *Filha* | Daughter |
| *Um irmão* | A brother |
| *Uma irmã* | A sister |
| *O primogenito* | The eldest son |
| *O filho mais moço* | The youngest son |
| *Um tio* | An uncle |
| *Uma tia* | An aunt |
| *Um sobrinho* | A nephew |
| *Uma sobrinha* | A niece |
| *Um primo* | A cousin |
| *Uma prima* | A female cousin |
| *Um primo-co-irmão* | A male first cousin |
| *Uma prima-co-irmã* | A female first cousin |
| *Um cunhado* | A brother-in-law |
| *Uma cunhada* | A sister-in-law |
| *Irmão de pai* | A brother by his father |
| *Um sôgro* | A father-in-law |
| *Uma sogra* | A mother-in-law |
| *Um padastro* | A step-father |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma madrasta* | A step-mother |
| *Um enteado* | A step-son |
| *Uma enteada* | A step-daughter |
| *Um genro* | A son-in-law |
| *Uma nóra* | A daughter-in-law |
| *Uma néta* | A grand-daughter |
| *Um néto* | A grandson |
| *Um bisnéto* | A great-grandson |
| *Uma bisnéta* | A great-grand-daughter |
| *Consorte*, masc. and fem. | A consort |
| *Um marido* | A husband |
| *Uma mulher* | A wife |
| *Um irmão gémeo* | A twin brother |
| *Um collaço*, or *irmão de leite* | A foster brother |
| *Um filho bastardo* | A bastard |
| *Um compadre* | A male gossip |
| *Uma comadre* | A female gossip |
| *Um afilhado* | A godson |
| *Uma afilhada* | A god-daughter |
| *Um padrinho* | A godfather |
| *Uma madrinha* | A godmother |
| *Um parente* | A male relation |
| *Uma parente* | A female relation |
| *Parente por affinidade*, or *consanguinidade* | A kin, a relation either of affinity or consanguinity |

| DOS DIFFERENTES GENEROS DE ESTADO DO HOMEM E DA MULHER, E DAS SUAS QUALIDADES. | OF THE CONDITIONS OF MEN AND WOMEN, AS WELL AS OF THEIR QUALITIES. |
|---|---|
| *Um homem* | A man |
| *Uma mulher* | A woman |
| *Um homem de idade* | An aged man |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma mulher de idade* | An aged woman |
| *Um velho* | An old man |
| *Uma velha* | An old woman |
| *Um moço*, or *mancebo* | A young man |
| *Uma rapariga* | A girl |
| *Um amante* | A lover |
| *Uma amiga* | A lady friend *or* mistress |
| *Uma criança*, or *menino* | A child, a little child |
| *Um rapaz* | A boy |
| *Um rapazinho* | A little boy |
| *Uma menina* | A little girl |
| *Uma donzella* | A maiden |
| *Uma virgem* | A virgin |
| *Um amo* | A master |
| *Uma ama* | A mistress |
| *Um criado* | A male servant |
| *Criada* | A female servant |
| *Um cidadão* | A citizen |
| *Um rustico* | A countryman |
| *Uma rustica* | A peasant woman |
| *Um estrangeiro* | A stranger *or* foreigner |
| *Um viuvo* | A widower |
| *Uma viuva* | A widow |
| *Um herdeiro* | An heir |
| *Uma herdeira* | An heiress |
| *Um solteiro* | A bachelor |
| *Uma solteira* | A single woman |
| *Estado de solteiro* | Bachelorship |
| *Um homem casado* | A married man |
| *Uma mulher casada* | A married woman |
| *Destro* | Dexterous |
| *Agudo* | Sharp |
| *Recatado* | Cautious |
| *Astuto* | Cunning, sly |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Esperto* | Sprightly |
| *Doido* | Mad |
| *Malicioso* | Malicious |
| *Timido* | Timid |
| *Valeroso* | Brave |
| *Estupido* | Stupid |
| *Enganoso* | Deceitful |
| *Docil* | Docile |
| *Bem criado* | Well-bred |
| *Cortêz* | Courteous |
| *Justo* | Just |
| *Desatento* | Uncourteous |
| *Impertinente* | Impertinent |
| *Importuno* | Troublesome |
| *Descuidado* | Careless |
| *Temerario* | Rash |
| *Constante* | Constant |
| *Devoto* | Devout |
| *Deligente* | Diligent |
| *Compassivo* | Merciful |
| *Paciente* | Patient |
| *Ambicioso* | Ambitious |
| *Cobiçoso* | Covetous |
| *Soberbo* | Proud |
| *Cobarde* | Coward |
| *Lisonjeiro* | Flatterer |
| *Goloso* | Dainty |
| *Desleal* | Treacherous |
| *Desagradecido* | Ungrateful |
| *Inhumano* | Inhuman |
| *Insolente* | Insolent |
| *Obstinado* | Obstinate |
| *Teimoso* | Stubborn |
| *Preguiçoso* | Slothful |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Pródigo* | Prodigal |
| *Atrevido* | Bold |
| *Alegre* | Merry |
| *Zeloso* | Zealous |
| *Modesto* | Modest |
| *Obediente* | Obedient |
| *Um murmurador* | A censurer |
| *Officioso* | Officious |
| *Um feiticeiro* | A sorcerer |
| *Um traidor* | A traitor |
| *Malvado* | Wicked |
| *Um rebelde* | A rebel |
| *Perfido* | Perfidious |
| *Um bobo* | A buffoon |
| *Um mentiroso* | A liar |
| *Altivo* | Haughty |
| *Côxo* | Lame of the legs |
| *Manco* | Lame of the hands |
| *Cégo* | Blind |
| *Surdo* | Deaf |
| *Pacifico* | Pacific |
| *Mudo* | Dumb |

| DOS MORADORES DE UMA CIDADE. | OF THE INHABITANTS OF A CITY. |
|---|---|
| *Um fidalgo* | A gentleman |
| *Um nobre* | A nobleman |
| *Um mecanico* | A mechanic |
| *Um tendeiro* | A grocer |
| *Um negociante* or *homem de negocio* | A merchant *or* tradesman |
| *O vulgo* or *a plêbe* | The mob |
| *A canalha* | The rabble |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um jornaleiro* | A labourer |
| *Um ourives da prata* | A silversmith |
| *Um ourives do ouro* | A goldsmith |
| *Um livreiro* | A bookseller |
| *Um impressor* | A printer |
| *Um barbeiro* | A barber |
| *Um mercador de seda* | A silk-merchant |
| *Um mercador de panno* | A woollen-draper |
| *Um mercador de panno de linho*, or *fanqueiro* | A linen-draper |
| *Um alfayate* | A tailor |
| *Um alfayate remendão* | A botcher |
| *Uma costureira* | A sempstress |
| *Um chapeleiro* or *sombreiréiro* | A hatter |
| *Um sapateiro* | A shoemaker |
| *Um remendão* (*sapateiro*) | A cobbler |
| *Um ferreiro* | A blacksmith |
| *Um alveitar* | A farrier |
| *Um cerralheiro* | A locksmith |
| *Um parteira* | A midwife |
| *Um medico* | A physician |
| *Um charlatão* | A quack |
| *Um cirurgião* | A surgeon |
| *Um dentista* | A dentist |
| *Um selleiro* | A saddler |
| *Um carpinteiro* | A carpenter |
| *Um pádeiro* | A baker |
| *Um carniceiro* | A butcher |
| *Um fruteiro* | A fruiterer |
| *Uma verduleira* | A herb-woman |
| *Um pasteleiro* | A pastrycook |
| *Um taverneiro* | A vintner |
| *Um cervejeiro* | A brewer |
| *Um estalajadeiro* | An innkeeper |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um bufarinheiro* | A pedler |
| *Um relojoeiro* | A watchmaker |
| *Um pregoeiro* | A crier |
| *Um joialheiro* | A jeweller |
| *Um boticario* | A chemist |
| *Um vidraceiro* | A glazier |
| *Um carvoeiro* | A coalman |
| *Um jardineiro* | A gardener |
| *Um letrado* | A lawyer |
| *Um procurador* | An attorney |
| *Um advogado* | A solicitor, *or* a pleader |
| *Um juiz* | A judge |
| *Um carcereiro* | A jailer |
| *O carrasco* | The hangman |
| *Um porteiro* | A porter |

| OS CINCO SENTIDOS. | THE FIVE SENSES. |
|---|---|
| *A vista* | The sight |
| *O ouvido* | The hearing |
| *O olfacto* | The smell |
| *O gôsto* | The taste |
| *O tacto* | The feeling |

| AS PARTES DO CORPO HUMANO. | THE PARTS OF THE HUMAN BODY. |
|---|---|
| *A cabeça* | The head |
| *Os miólos* | The brains |
| *O toutiço* | The hinder part of the head |
| *A testa* | The forehead |
| *A molleira* | The mould of the head |
| *As fontes* | The temples |
| *A orêlha* | The ear |
| *O cartilagem* | The gristle *or* cartilage |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O timpano* | The drum of the ear |
| *A sobrancelha* | The eyebrow |
| *As palpebras* or *capellas dos ólhos* | The eyelid |
| *As pestanas* | The eyelashes |
| *O lagrimal* | The corner of the eye |
| *O alvo do ôlho* | The white of the eye |
| *As meninas dos ôlhos* | The eyeballs |
| *O nariz* | The nose |
| *As ventas* | The nostrils |
| *O septo* or *diaphragma do nariz* | The gristle of the nose |
| *A ponta do nariz* | The tip of the nose |
| *A bôca* | The mouth |
| *Os dentes* | The teeth |
| *A gengiva* | The gum |
| *A lingoa* | The tongue |
| *Paladar* or *céo da boca* | The roof *or* palate of the mouth |
| *A queixada* | The jaw |
| *A barba* | The chin |
| *As barbas* | The beard |
| *Os bigodes* | The mustachios |
| *O pescoço* | The neck |
| *A nuca* | The nape of the neck |
| *A garganta* | The throat |
| *O seio* | The bosom |
| *O peito* | The breast |
| *O estômago* | The stomach |
| *As costélas* | The ribs |
| *A verilha* | The groin |
| *O braço* | The arm |
| *O cotovêlo* | The elbow |
| *O sobáco* | The arm-pit |

| | |
|---|---|
| *A mão* | The hand |
| *O pulso* | The wrist |
| *A palma da mão* | The palm of the hand |
| *Os dedos* | The fingers |
| *O dedo polegar* | The thumb |
| *O dedo mostrador* | The forefinger |
| *O dedo do meio* | The middle finger |
| *O dedo annular* | The ring finger |
| *O dedo meninho* or *minimo* | The little finger |
| *As pontas dos dedos* | The tips *or* tops of the fingers |
| *As juntas e nós dos dedos* | The joints and knuckles of the fingers |
| *Um dedo do pé* | A toe |
| *A unha* | The nail |
| *As costas* | The back |
| *Os hombros* | The shoulders |
| *As ilhargas* | The sides |
| *A côxa* | The thigh |
| *O joelho* | The knee |
| *A barriga da perna* | The calf of the leg |
| *O espinhaço* | The spine |
| *O tornozelo* | The ankle |
| *O pé* | The foot |
| *A planta do pé* | The sole of the foot |
| *O coração* | The heart |
| *Os bofes* or *pulmões* | The lungs |
| *O figado* | The liver |
| *O baço* | The spleen |
| *Os rins* | The kidneys |
| *O fel* | The gall |
| *O sangue* | The blood |
| *A suór* | Perspiration |
| *Uma lagrima* | A tear |

| VESTIDOS DO HOMEM. | A MAN'S CLOTHES. |
|---|---|
| *Um fato* | A suit of clothes |
| *Uma casaca* | A coat |
| *Uma gravata* | A cravat *or* necktie |
| *Uma chapéo* | A hat |
| *Uma camisa* | A shirt |
| *Um colête* | A waistcoat |
| *Um colarînho* | A collar |
| *Os punhos* | The wristbands |
| *As ceroulas* | The drawers |
| *Um chambre* | A morning gown |
| *As calças* | The trousers |
| *O lenço do pescoço* | The necktie |
| *O lenço d'assuar* | The handkerchief |
| *Uma casaca* | A coat |
| *Um trage de caça* | A hunting dress |
| *Os botões* | The buttons |
| *Um sobretudo* | An overcoat |
| *Uma capa* or *capote* | A cloak |
| *Um barrete* or *gôrra* | A cap |
| *O chapéo* | The hat |
| *O chapéo de chuva* | The umbrella |
| *As botas* | The boots |
| *Os sapatos* | The shoes |
| *As meias* | The stockings |
| *As piugas* | The socks |
| *Peitinhos* | Shirt fronts |
| *As solas dos sapatos* | The soles of the shoes |
| *O tacão das botas* | The heels of the boots |
| *Os suspensorios* | The braces |
| *Um descalçador* | A boot-jack |
| *A bengala* | The walking-stick |
| *Uma navalha de barba* | A razor |

| | |
|---|---|
| *As ligas* | The garters |
| *As chinellas* | The slippers |

| VESTIDOS DA MULHER. | WOMEN'S CLOTHES. |
|---|---|
| *Uma anágoa* | A petticoat |
| *Uma saia* | An under-petticoat |
| *O atacador* | The lace |
| *Um vestido* | A gown |
| *Um lencinho de pescoço* | A neckerchief |
| *Um mantelete* | A mantelet |
| *Um cinto* | A sash |
| *Um chapéo* | A bonnet |
| *Um collar* | A necklace |
| *Um aderêço de brilhantes* | A set of diamonds |
| *Um challe* | A shawl |
| *Um manto* | A mantle |
| *Um avental* | An apron |
| *Os braceletes* | The bracelets |
| *Um annel* | A ring |
| *Os brincos* | The earrings |
| *Um leque* | A fan |
| *Um penteador* | A combing-cloth |
| *Um toucador* | A toilet *or* dressing-table |
| *As sináes* | Patches to wear on the face |
| *Um espêlho* | A looking-glass |
| *Um regálo* or *manguito* | A muff |
| *O espartilho* | The stays |
| *Um pente* | A comb |
| *Alfinetes* | Pins |
| *Uma tesoura* | A pair of scissors |
| *Um dedal* | A thimble |
| *Uma agulha* | A needle |
| *A linha* | The thread |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um fio de perolas* | A row of pearls |
| *Polvilhos* | Powder |
| *Joias* | Jewels |
| *Côr* | Colour |
| *Um palito* | A toothpick |
| *O fuso* | The spindle |
| *Uma almofadinho para alfinetes* | A small pin-cushion |
| *Uma agulheta* | A bodkin |
| *Fitas* | Ribbons |
| *O véo* | The veil |
| *Renda* | Lace |
| *Bilros* | Bobbins |
| *Agoa de cheiro* | Scented water |

| OS DOZE SIGNOS CELESTES. | THE TWELVE CELESTIAL SIGNS. |
|---|---|
| *Aries* | Aries *or* the ram |
| *Touro* | The bull |
| *Gemini* or *geminis* | The twins |
| *Cancer* | The crab |
| *Leão* | The lion |
| *Virgem* | The virgin |
| *Libra* | The balance |
| *Escorpião* | The scorpion |
| *Sagitario* | The archer |
| *Capricornio* | The goat |
| *Aquario* | The water-bearer |
| *Peixes* | The fishes |

| DE UMA CASA E DO QUE LHE PERTENCE. | OF A HOUSE AND ALL THAT BELONGS TO IT. |
|---|---|
| *Uma casa* | A house |
| *O alicerse* | The foundation |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma parede* | A wall |
| *Um tabique* | A light brick wall |
| *Um páteo* | A court *or* yard |
| *Um andar* | A floor |
| *A fachada* | The front |
| *Uma janella* | A window |
| *Uma abobada* | A vault |
| *As escadas* | The stairs |
| *Os degráos* | The steps |
| *Um telhado* | A tiled roof |
| *As têlhas* | The tiles |
| *Os ladrilhos* or *tijolos* | The bricks |
| *Uma sala* | A sitting *or* drawing-room |
| *Uma antecamara* or *salêta* | An antechamber |
| *Um salão* | A hall |
| *Um tecto* | A roof |
| *Uma alcôva* | A small room |
| *Uma baranda* | A balcony |
| *Um gabinete* | A closet |
| *Um quarto* | A room |
| *Um guarda-roupa* | A wardrobe |
| *Uma adêga* | A wine-cellar |
| *Uma cozinha* | A kitchen |
| *Uma dispensa* | A pantry |
| *Uma chaminé* | A chimney |
| *A cavallariça* | The stable |
| *Um gallinheiro* or *casa das gallinhas* | A hen-house |
| *Um poleiro* | A hen-roost |
| *Um jardim* | A garden |
| *Uma casa de jantar* | A dining-room |
| *Um quarto de cama* | A bed-room |
| *A porta* | The door |
| *Um postigo* | A wicket |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O liminar* or *luminar* | The threshold |
| *Uma clara boia* | A skylight |
| *O algeróz* | The gutter-tile |
| *As beiras* or *abas do telhado* | The eaves |
| *A couceira da porta* | The hinges |
| *Uma fechadura* | A lock |
| *Um cadeado* | A padlock |
| *O ferrôlho* | The bolt |
| *A tranca da porta* | The bar of the door |
| *O cano da chave* | The pipe of a key |
| *Uma chave mestra* | A master-key |
| *As guardas da fechadura* | The wards of a lock |
| *O palhetão da chave* | The key bit |
| *A vidraça* | The glass of a window |
| *Uma escada feita a caracol* | A winding staircase |
| *Escada secreta* | Private staircase |
| *Uma viga* | A beam |
| *A parede mestra* | The main wall |
| *As paredes meianciras* | The party walls |

MOVEIS D'UM QUARTO DE CAMA. A BED-ROOM FURNITURE.

| | |
|---|---|
| *A cama* or *leito* | The bed |
| *O sobrecéo da cama* | The bed tester |
| *As cortinas da cama* | The bed curtains |
| *Os lençóes* | The sheets |
| *A cabeceira da cama* | The head of the bed |
| *O pé da cama* | The foot of the bed |
| *Uma côlcha* | A counterpane, a quilt |
| *Um colchão* | A mattress |
| *Um cobertôr* | A blanket |
| *Um cobertôr de felpa* | A rug |
| *Uma cama de armação* | A bedstead with tester |
| *Um travesseiro* | A bolster |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um tapete* | A carpet |
| *Tapeçaria* | Tapestry |
| *Um bahn* | A trunk |
| *Um relogio* | A clock *or* watch |
| *Uma estufa* | A hothouse |
| *Uma chave* | A key |
| *Um espreguiçador* | A couch |
| *Um enxergão* | A paillasse |
| *Uma esteira* | A mat |
| *Os folles* | The bellows |
| *As tenazes* | The tongs |
| *Uma pá* | A shovel |
| *Um armario* | A cupboard |
| *A vassoura* | The broom |
| *Um banco* | A bench |
| *Uma bacia* or *alguidar* | A basin |
| *Uma quentador* | A warming-pan |
| *Uma caixa* | A box |
| *Uma palmatoria* | A flat candlestick |
| *Um bufete* | A sideboard |
| *Uma gaiola* | A cage |
| *Um canapé* or *sofá* | A sofa |
| *Uma cadeira* | A chair |
| *Um castiçal* | A tall candlestick |
| *Um braseirinho* | A small fire-pan |
| *A chaminé* | The chimney |
| *Os ferros da chaminé* | The fire-irons |
| *Uma commoda* | A chest of drawers |
| *Um espêlho* | A looking-glass |
| *Um jarro* | An ewer |
| *Uma bacia de mãos* | A hand-basin |
| *Um parafogo* | A fire-screen |
| *Um apagador* | An extinguisher |
| *Caixa do chapeo* | Hat-box |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Cadeira de braços* | Arm-chair |
| *Um candieiro* | A lamp |
| *Um colchão* | A mattress |
| *Um lavatorio* | A wash-hand stand |
| *Uma almofada* | A pillow |
| *Uma fronha de almofada* | A pillow-case |
| *Um balde* | A pail |
| *Uma papeleira* | A writing-desk |
| *Um quadro* | A picture |
| *Uma mêsa* | A table |
| *Uma gaveta* | A drawer |
| *Um toucador* | A toilet table |
| *Uma lamparina* | A night lamp |
| *Uma malêta* | A portmanteau |

| UTENSILIOS DE COZINHA. | KITCHEN UTENSILS. |
|---|---|
| *Uma panella* | A saucepan |
| *O testo* | The lid of a saucepan |
| *Um ferro para atiçar o lume* | A poker |
| *Uma escumadeira* | A skimmer |
| *Uma colhér grande* | A ladle |
| *Uma caldeira* | A kettle |
| *Uma sertã* or *frigideira* | A frying-pan |
| *Um coador* | A cullender *or* strainer |
| *As grêlhas* | The gridiron |
| *Um ralo* | A grater |
| *Um espêto* | A spit |
| *Um almofariz* | A mortar wherein things are pounded |
| *Uma mão do almofariz* | A pestle |
| *Uma redôma* | A glass shade |
| *Um balde* | A bucket *or* pail |
| *O sabão* | The soap |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O fôrno* | The oven |
| *A pá do forno* | The peal of the oven |
| *Um vasculho para alimpar o forno* | A coal-rake to make clear an oven |

| CORES. | COLOURS. |
|---|---|
| *Branco* | White |
| *Azul* | Blue |
| *Azul celeste* | Sky-colour |
| *Azul ferrete* | Dark blue |
| *Azul claro* | Light blue |
| *Côr de camurça* | Light yellow |
| *Amarello* | Yellow |
| *Côr de rosa* | Rose colour |
| *Côr de palha* | Straw *or* cream colour |
| *Verde* | Green |
| *Côr de verde mar* or *verde claro* | Sea-green |
| *Côr vermêlha* or *incarnada* | Red colour |
| *Côr vermêlha muito viva* or *carmim* | Carmine, a bright red colour |
| *Côr de carne* | Flesh colour |
| *Côr carmesim* | Crimson red |
| *Côr negra* or *preta* | Black colour |
| *Côr de mel* | A dark yellow |
| *Furta-côres* | A deep changeable colour |
| *Côr viva* | A lively and gay colour |
| *Côr triste* | A dull colour |
| *Côr escura* | A dark colour |
| *Côr carregada* | A deep colour |
| *Côr de fogo* | Fire colour |
| *Pardo* | Grey |
| *Côr de cinza* | Ash colour |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Escarlate* | Scarlet |
| *Leonado* | Tawny |
| *Côr de laranja* | Orange colour |
| *Côr de azeitona* | Olive colour |
| *Rôxo* | Purple, violet |
| *Rôxo* or *côr de aurora* | Aurora colour |

| CRIADOS DOMESTICOS. | SERVANTS. |
|---|---|
| *Um capellão* | A chaplain |
| *Um secretario* | A secretary |
| *Um tutor* | A tutor |
| *Uma governante* | A governess |
| *Um preceptor* | A preceptor |
| *Um mordomo* | A steward |
| *Um dispenseiro* | A butler |
| *Uma criada* | A maid-servant |
| *Um cocheiro* | A coachman |
| *Um lacaio* | A footman |
| *Um palafreneiro* | A groom |
| *Um criado* | A man-servant |
| *Um cozinheiro* | A man cook |
| *Uma cozinheira* | A woman cook |
| *Um porteiro* | A door-keeper |
| *Um jardineiro* | A flower gardener |
| *Um hortelão* | A kitchen gardener |
| *Um creado de quarto* | A valet de chambre |
| *Um pagem* | A page |
| *Uma ama* | A nurse |

| DAS POVOÇÕES. | OF TOWNS, BUILDINGS, ETC. |
|---|---|
| *Uma capital* | A capital |
| *Uma cidade* | A city |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma metrópole* | A metropolis |
| *Uma villa* | A village |
| *Um lugar* | A place |
| *Um casal* | A farmhouse |
| *Uma parroquia* | A parish |
| *Um bairro* | A quarter of the town |
| *Um palacio* | A palace |
| *Um castello* | A castle |
| *Uma casa* | A house |
| *Uma quinta* | A country house |
| *Uma casinha* | A little house |
| *Uma choça* or *cabana* | A hut |
| *Um cemiterio* | A churchyard *or* cemetery |
| *Os arrabaldes* | The suburbs |
| *Um chafariz* | A public fountain |
| *Uma calçada* | A pavement |
| *Uma praça* | A square |
| *Uma ponte* | A bridge |
| *Um parapeito* | A parapet |
| *Um arco* | An arch |
| *Um passeio* | A promenade |
| *Uma rua* | A street |
| *Um jardim* | A garden |

| A TERRA. | THE EARTH. |
|---|---|
| *O globo terraqueo* | The terrestrial globe |
| *O hemispherio* | The hemisphere |
| *O equador* | The equator |
| *Os tropicos* | The tropics |
| *O pólo* | The pole |
| *Polar* | Polar |
| *O norte* | The north |
| *Septentrional* | Northern |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O éste* or *oriente* | The east |
| *Oriental* | Eastern |
| *O sul* or *meiodia* | The south |
| *Meridional* | Southern |
| *O oeste* or *occidente* | The west |
| *Occidental* | Western |
| *Um meridiano* | A meridian |
| *A latitude* | The latitude |
| *A longitude* | The longitude |
| *Um gráo* | A degree |
| *Um continente* | A continent |
| *Continental* | Continental |
| *Uma planicie* | A plain *or* flat country |
| *Um valle* | A valley |
| *Uma veiga* | A plain pasture ground by a river side |
| *Uma charneca,* or *ermo* | A barren sandy land |
| *Um cêrro* | A hillock |
| *Um oiteiro* | A hill |
| *Uma montanha* | A mountain |
| *O cume* | The summit |
| *O declive* | The declivity |
| *A falda de uma montanha* | The skirt of a mountain |
| *Uma cordilheira* | A range of mountains |
| *Uma planicie* | A plain |
| *Um desfiladeiro* | A mountain pass |
| *Um volcão* | A volcano |
| *A cratéra* | A crater |
| *Um abysmo, precipicio* | An abyss |
| *Um cabo* or *promontorio* | A cape |
| *Um isthmo* | An isthmus |
| *Uma peninsula* | A peninsula |
| *Um ilha* | An island |
| *A costa* | The coast |

| | |
|---|---|
| *A praia* | The beach |
| *Uma rocha* | A rock |
| *Um rochedo* | A cluster of rocks |
| *Um escôlho* or *recife* | A rock under water |
| *Um banco d'areia* | A sand-bank |
| *Um deserto* | A desert |

| SUBSTANCIAS MINERAES. | MINERAL SUBSTANCES. |
|---|---|
| *Um mineral* | A mineral |
| *Pedras preciosas* | Precious stones |
| *Uma mina* | A mine |
| *Uma camada* | A stratum |
| *O aço* | Steel |
| *O iman* | The loadstone |
| *A ágata* | The agate |
| *Magnético* | Magnetic |
| *O bronze* | Bronze |
| *O alabastro* | Alabaster |
| *Uma amathista* | The amethyst |
| *O antimonio* | Antimony |
| *A piçarra* | Slate |
| *A prata* | Silver |
| *A argilla* or *greda* | Clay |
| *O arsenico* | Arsenic |
| *O betume* | Bitumen |
| *O carvão de pedra* | Mineral coals |
| *A cal* | Lime |
| *Terra calcarea* | Calcareous earth |
| *O azinhabre* | Verdigris |
| *O cabalto* | Cobalt |
| *O coral* | Coral |
| *Uma cornelina* | The cornelian stone |
| *A caparrosa* | Copperas |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O cobre* | Copper |
| *Um diamante* | A diamond |
| *A esmeralda* | The emerald |
| *O estanho* | Pewter |
| *O ferro* | Iron |
| *O granito* | Granite |
| *O jaspe* | Jasper |
| *O latão* | Brass |
| *A maganésia* | Magnesia |
| *O marmore* | Marble |
| *O mercurio* or *azougue* | Mercury *or* quicksilver |
| *O chumbo* | Lead |
| *O nitro* | Nitre |
| *A opála* | Opal |
| *O ouro* | Gold |
| *O rubim* | Ruby |
| *O enxofre* | Brimstone |
| *O topazio* | A topaz |
| *O zinco* | Zinc |

| COLHEITAS DOS CAMPOS. | PRODUCTION OF THE FIELDS. |
|---|---|
| *Cereaes* | Cereals |
| *Aveia* | Oats |
| *Beterraba* | Beet-root |
| *Trigo* | Wheat |
| *Milho* | Millet |
| *Canhamo* | Hemp |
| *Favas* | Broad beans |
| *Feno* | Hay |
| *Herva* | Herbs *or* grass |
| *Lentilhas* | Lentils |
| *Linho* | Hemp |
| *Nabos* | Turnips |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Ervilhas* | Peas |
| *Batatas* | Potatoes |
| *Arroz* | Rice |
| *Piperigallo* | Sainfoin |
| *Centeio* | Rye |
| *Cha* | Tea |
| *Trevo* | Trefoil |
| *Tabaco* | Tobacco |
| *Oliveira* | Olive tree |
| *Vide* | Vine branch |

| DA AGRICULTURA. | OF AGRICULTURE. |
|---|---|
| *Um agricultor* | A husbandman |
| *Um quinteiro* | A farmer |
| *Um boieiro* | A herdsman |
| *Um vaqueiro* | A cowkeeper |
| *Um porqueiro* | A swineherd |
| *Um pastor* | A shepherd |
| *Um cavador* | A digger |
| *Um vinhateiro* | A vine dresser |
| *Um lavrador* | A farmer |
| *Um semeador* | A sower |
| *Um roçador* | A weeder |
| *Um segador* | A reaper |
| *Hortaliça* | All sorts of herbage |
| *Pastos* | Pasture ground |
| *Um arado* | A plough |
| *O ferro do arado* | The ploughshare |
| *A rabiça do arado* | The plough handle |
| *Uma aguilhada* | A goad |
| *Um ensinho* | A rake |
| *Uma fouce* | A scythe *or* sickle |
| *Uma fouce roçadoura* | A weeding hook |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um podão* | A pruning knife |
| *Um mangoal* | A flail |
| *Um forcado* | A pitchfork |
| *Um rego* | A furrow |
| *Um bosque* | A wood |
| *Uma espiga* | An ear of corn |
| *A cabeça da espiga* | The grain at the top of the ear of corn |
| *Uma carreta* | A waggon |
| *Um carro* | A cart |
| *Uma roda* | A wheel |
| *O eixo* | The axletree of a wheel |
| *O raio da roda* | The spoke of a wheel |
| *Um curral de bois* | An ox stall |
| *Um curral de ovelhas* | A sheepfold |
| *Um chiqueiro de porcos* | A hog's sty |
| *Um tarro* | A milk-pail |
| *Uma francéla* | A cheese-vat |
| *Uma enxada* | A hoe *or* spade |
| *Um enxadão* | A mattock |
| *Uma canga* | A yoke for oxen |
| *Uma sébe* | A hedge *or* fence |
| *Uma ramada* | A bower |
| *Um rebeirinho* | A rivulet |
| *O tempo de tosquia* | The time of shearing sheep |
| *Cantiga dos segadores* | Harvest home |

| ANIMAES DOMESTICOS. | DOMESTIC ANIMALS. |
|---|---|
| *Um burro* or *jumento* | A donkey |
| *Um carneiro* | A sheep |
| *Uma ovelha* | An ewe |
| *Um cordeiro* | A lamb |
| *Um bode* | A buck-goat |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma cabra* | A goat |
| *Um cabrito* | A kid |
| *Um gato* | A cat |
| *Um gatinho* | A kitten |
| *Um cão* | A dog |
| *Um cãozinho* | A puppy |
| *Um fraldiqueiro* | A lapdog |
| *Um lebrel* | A greyhound |
| *Um cavallo* | A horse |
| *Uma egua* | A mare |
| *Um poldro* | A colt |
| *Um cavallo inteiro* | A stallion |
| *de montar* | A riding horse |
| *de carroça* | A van-horse |
| *d'aluguer* | A hackney horse |
| *de posta* | A post-horse |
| *de sella* | A saddle-horse |
| *alazão* | A sorrell horse |
| *baio* | A bay horse |

| COUSAS PERTENCENTES A GUERRA. | THINGS RELATING TO WAR. |
|---|---|
| *Serviço* or *vida militar* | Warfare |
| *Militar* or *servir na guerra* | To serve in the army |
| *Artilheria* | Artillery |
| *Um canhão* or *peça de artilheria* | A cannon |
| *Um canhão de ferro* | Iron cannon |
| *Um canhão de bronze* | Brass cannon |
| *A alma do canhão* | The mouth of the cannon |
| *O fogão do canhão* | The touch-hole of the cannon |
| *A culatra do canhão* | The breach of the cannon |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O botão* or *extremidade da culatra* | The pommel |
| *Balas encadeadas* | Chain shots |
| *Uma bala de canhão* | A cannon-ball *or* cannon-shot |
| *A carrêta de canhão* | The carriage of a cannon |
| *Polvora* | Gunpowder |
| *Um canhão de vinte e quatro* | A twenty-four pounder |
| *Calibre* | Calibre |
| *Carregar* | To load |
| *Escorvar* | To prime |
| *Fazer pontaria* | To level |
| *Petrechos* or *muniçoẽs de guerra* | Military stores *or* ammunition |
| *Encravar uma peça* | To nail up a gun |
| *Descavalgar uma peça* | To dismount a gun |
| *Disparar* | To fire |
| *Um tiro de peça* | A cannon-shot |
| *O trem de artilheria* | The train of artillery |
| *Uma colubrina* | A culverin |
| *Um falconete* | A falconet |
| *Um petardo* | A petard |
| *Um pedreiro* | A swivel-gun |
| *Uma bomba* | A bomb |
| *Uma bombarda* | A great gun |
| *Um morteiro* | A mortar-piece |
| *Uma granada* | A grenade |
| *Uma espingarda* | A firelock |
| *Uma pistola* | A pistol |
| *Uma carabina* | A carbine |
| *Um mosquete* | A musket |
| *Uma machadinha* | A battle-axe |
| *Uma lança* | A lance |
| *Uma alabarda* | A halberd |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma partasana* | A partizan |
| *Um pique* | A pike |
| *Calar os piques para resistir á cavallaria* | To present the pikes against the cavalry |
| *Um alfonge* | A scimitar |
| *Uma espada* | A sword |
| *Desembainhar a espada* | To unsheathe the sword |
| *O punho da espada* | The handle of a sword |
| *A maçã da espada* | The pommel of a sword |
| *A guarnição da espada* | The hilt of a sword |
| *A folha da espada* | The blade of a sword |
| *Meter mão á espada* | To clap one's hand on one's sword |
| *Matar* | To kill |
| *Ferir* | To wound |
| *Desbaratar* | To rout |
| *Saquear* | To sack |
| *Um punhal* | A dagger |
| *Uma bayoneta* | A bayonet |
| *Armar a bayoneta* | To fix the bayonets |
| *Um capacete* | A helmet |
| *Um morrião* | A morion |
| *Uma viseira* | The vizor of a helmet |
| *O gorjal* or *gola* | The gorget |
| *Um peito de armas* | A breastplate |
| *Uma couraça* | A cuirass |
| *O espaldar* | The backplate |
| *Um cossolete* | A corslet |
| *Um broquel* | A buckler |
| *Um escudo* | A shield |
| *Uma adaga* | Dagger, a short sword |
| *Uma saia de malha* | A coat of mail |
| *O rei de armas* | The king-at-arms *or* king of heralds |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um arauto* | A herald |
| *Um general* | A general |
| *Um tenente general* | A lieutenant-general |
| *Um major general* | A major-general |
| *Um major* | A major |
| *Um sargento* | A serjeant |
| *Um marechal* | Marshal |
| *Um coronel* | A colonel |
| *Um coronel de infanteria* | A colonel of infantry |
| *Um official* | An officer |
| *Um brigadeiro* | A brigadier |
| *Um tenente coronel* | A lieutenant-colonel |
| *Um ajudante* | An adjutant |
| *Um ajudante de ordens* | An aide-de-camp |
| *Um capitão* | A captain |
| *Um posto de capitão* | A captaincy *or* captainship |
| *Um tenente* | A lieutenant |
| *Um corneta* | A cornet |
| *Um alferes* | An ensign |
| *As bandeiras* | The colours |
| *O estandarte* | The standard |
| *O porta estandarte* | The standard-bearer |
| *O pagador* | The paymaster |
| *Um commissario* | A commissary |
| *Um commissario geral* | A commissary-general |
| *Um engenheiro* | An engineer |
| *Um quartel mestre* | A quarter-master |
| *Um cabo de esquadra* | A corporal |
| *Um tambor* or *caixa* | A drum |
| *Um tambor*, or *o que toca tambor* | A drummer |
| *As baquetas* | The drum-sticks |
| *Os cordeis do tambor* | The drum-strings |
| *Os toques do tambor* | The beats of a drum |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Tocar a tambor* | To beat a drum |
| *A alvorada* or *general* | The general, one of the beats of the drum |
| *Passar mostra* | To muster, to review forces |
| *Um trombeteiro* or *trombeta* | A trumpeter |
| *Um pifano* | A fifer *or* fife |
| *Soldo* | Wages, *or* pay for soldiers |
| *Um soldado* | A soldier |
| *Soldado que está de sentinella* | Soldier on duty |
| *Entrar de guarda* | To mount guard |
| *Sentinella* | Sentinel, sentry |
| *Render a guarda, sentinellas,* &c. | To relieve the guard, &c. |
| *Bloquear* | To block up |
| *Um soldado de infanteria* | A soldier of infantry |
| *Um granadeiro* | A grenadier |
| *Um dragão* | A dragoon |
| *Um soldado de cavallo* | A trooper *or* cavalry soldier |
| *Montar a cavallo* | To get on horseback |
| *Apear-se* | To alight |
| *Um guarda da pessôa real* | A life-guardsman |
| *Um couraceiro* | A cuirassier |
| *Um fuzileiro* | A fusilier |
| *Um alabardeiro* | A halberdier |
| *Um pioneiro* | A pioneer |
| *Um mineiro* or *minador* | A miner |
| *Um bombardeiro* | A bombardier |
| *O tiro da artilheria*, or *o espaço que a bala desparada corre; Alcance* | The range of a gun |
| *Um artilheiro* | An artilleryman |
| *A arte da artilheria* | Gunnery |
| *General de artilheria* | General of artillery |
| *Um voluntario* | A volunteer |
| *Recrutas* | Recruits |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um explorador*, or *corredor de exercito* | A scout |
| *Um espia* | A spy |
| *O que leva viveres ao exercito*, or *vivandeiro* | Sutler |
| *Um soldado que faz correrias* | A marauder, a soldier that goes marauding |
| *Um timbale* or *atabale* | A kettledrum |
| *Infanteria* | Infantry |
| *Cavallaria* | Cavalry |
| *Cavallaria ligeira* | Light cavalry |
| *A vanguarda* | The vanguard |
| *A retaguarda* | The rear |
| *O corpo de reserva* | The reserve corps |
| *O corpo de guarda* | The body-guard |
| *O piquete* | The picquet guard |
| *A ala* | The wing of an army |
| *Um batalhão* | A battalion |
| *Um destacamento* | A detachment |
| *Um regimento* | A regiment |
| *Uma companhia* | A company |
| *Um esquadrão* | A squadron |
| *Uma mochila* | A knapsack |
| *O bagagem* | The baggage |
| *Batedores do campo* | Discoverers |
| *O armazem* | The magazines |
| *As muralhas* | The walls |
| *Uma amea* or *ameya* | A battlement |
| *O parapeito* | The parapet |
| *Um castello* | A castle |
| *Um forte* | A fort |
| *Uma fortaleza* | A fortress |
| *Uma fortificação* | A fortification |
| *Uma torre* | A tower |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma cidadella* | A citadel |
| *Um baluarte* | A bulwark |
| *Uma fileira* | A file |
| *Uma cortina* | A curtain |
| *Meia lua* | Half-moon |
| *Uma troneira* | A loophole |
| *Um terra pleno* | A platform of earth |
| *Um rebelim* or *revelim* | A ravelin |
| *Uma contrascarpa* | A counterscarp |
| *Uma barreira* | A barrier |
| *Uma falsabraga* | A fausse-braie |
| *Um fosso* | A ditch |
| *Uma guarita* | A sentry-box |
| *Uma casamata* | A casemate |
| *O corredor* or *estrada coberta* | The covered way |
| *Os cestoẽs* | The gabions |
| *Uma estacada* or *palissada* | A palisade |
| *Um reducto* | A redoubt |
| *Uma atalaya* | A watch-tower |
| *Uma manta* or *mantelete* | A shield, *or* cover for men from the shot |
| *Faxina* | Fascines |
| *Uma mina* | A mine |
| *Fazer voar a mina* | To spring a mine |
| *Uma trincheira* | A trench |
| *Abrir as trincheiras* | To open the trenches |
| *Um campo* | A camp |
| *Os viveres* | The provisions |
| *Uma batalha* | A battle |
| *Dar batalha* | To give battle |
| *Uma escaramuça* | A skirmish |
| *Um sitio* or *cêrco* | A siege |
| *Um quartel* | A quarter |
| *Uma encamisada* | A canteen |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Uma sortida* | A sally |
| *Bater* | To batter |
| *Uma brecha* | A breach |
| *Um pontão* | A pontoon |
| *Uma escalada* | An escalade |
| *Um assalto* | An assault |
| *Dar assalto* | To storm |
| *Tomar por assalto* | To take by storm |
| *A chamada* | The chamade |
| *Capitular* | To capitulate |
| *Capitulação* | Capitulation |
| *Tregoas* | Truce |
| *Uma guarnição* | A garrison |
| *Um preboste* | A provost |
| *Uma leva* | A levy |
| *Levantar soldados*, or *fazer leva de gente* | To raise men, to levy *or* raise soldiers |
| *Levantar o sitio* | To raise the siege |
| *Levantar o campo* | To decamp |
| *Assentar o campo* | To pitch one's camp |
| *Um campo volante* | A flying camp |
| *Uma campanha* | A campaign |
| *Meter-se em campanha* | To begin the campaign, to open the field |
| *Guerrear* | To fight |
| *Uma peça de campanha* | A field-piece |
| *Uma forragem* | A forage |
| *Quarteis de inverno* | Winter quarters |
| *Dar quartel* | To give quarter |
| *Aquartelar-se* | To take quarter |
| *Marchar* | To march |
| *Marchar com bandeiras despregadas* | To march with flying colours |
| *Tocar a recolher* | To beat the tattoo |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Entregar uma praça* | To surrender a place |
| *Fila da vanguarda* | Front rank |
| *Fila do centro* | Centre rank |
| *Fila da retaguarda* | Rear rank |
| *Direita* | Right |
| *Esquerda* | Left |
| *Tempos* | Motions |
| *Exercicio* | Exercise |
| *Fechos* | Lock |
| *O cão*, or *perro da arma* | Cock |
| *A cronha* | The butt |
| *A boca da arma* | The muzzle |
| *O cano* | The barrel |
| *A vareta* | The ramrod |
| *O gatilho* | The trigger |
| *Um pellotão* | A platoon |
| *Uma divisão* | A division |
| *Linha*, or *fileira* | Line |
| *Caçadores* | Riflemen |
| *Flanco* | Flank |
| *Estado Maior* | Staff |
| *Frente* | Front |
| *Infanteria ligeira* | Light infantry |
| *Regulamentos* | Regulations |

| PALAVRAS DE COMANDO. | MILITARY WORDS OF COMMAND. |
|---|---|
| *Sentido* | Attention |
| *Armas ao hombro* | Shoulder arms |
| *Descançar* | Order arms |
| *Metter bayonetas* | Fix bayonets |
| *Apresentar armas* | Present arms |
| *Calar bayonetas* | Charge bayonets |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Descançar armas* | Support arms |
| *Tirar bayonetas* | Unfix bayonets |
| *Cruzar armas* | Pile arms |
| *Preparar* | Make ready |
| *Carregar* | Load |
| *Tirar o cartuxo* | Handle cartridge |
| *Escorvar* | Prime |
| *Tirar as varetas* | Draw ramrods |
| *Atuchar o curtuxo* | Ram down cartridge |
| *Apontar* | Present |
| *Fogo* | Fire |
| *Meter o cartuxo* | Cast about |
| *Fogo por pellotões* | Firing by platoons |
| *Fogo de filas* | File-firing |
| *Alto* | Halt |
| *Formar em linha* | To form in line |
| *Fogo obliquo* | Oblique firing |
| *Formar* | Form |
| *Marcha* | March |
| *Ordem cerrada* | Close order |
| *Desfilar* | To file |
| *Columna cerrada* | Close column |
| *Meia volta á esquerda* | Left flank wheel, backward |
| *Voltar* | Wheel |
| *Avançar* | Advance |
| *Cerrar as fileiras* | Close the ranks |

| NAVEGAÇÃO. | NAVIGATION. |
|---|---|
| *Um navio* | A ship |
| *Uma náo de guerra* | A line-of-battle ship |
| *Um navio de carga*, or *mercante* | A merchant-ship, a merchantman |
| *Um navio veleiro* | A very good sailer, *or* a ship that sails well |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um navio ronceiro* | A bad sailer |
| *Uma fragata* | A frigate |
| *Uma fusta* | A foist |
| *Uma pinaça* | A pinnace |
| *Uma barca de passagem* | A ferry-boat |
| *Um barco* | A boat |
| *Uma barca* | A barque |
| *Uma canôa* | A canoe |
| *Uma gondola* | A gondola |
| *Um esquife* | A skiff |
| *Uma chalupa* or *balandra* | A sloop |
| *Uma chalupa pequena* | A shallop |
| *Um bergantim* | A brigantine |
| *Uma balsa* | A raft |
| *O navio almirante* | The admiral's ship |
| *Uma armada* | A fleet, a navy |
| *Uma frota* | A fleet of merchant ships |
| *Uma esquadra* | A squadron, part of a fleet |
| *A bordo* | On board |
| *A pôpa* | The poop, stern, *or* steerage |
| *A prôa* | The prow *or* head |
| *Peças de prôa para dar caça ao inimigo* | Chase guns |
| *Uma tartana* | A tartan |
| *Um brulote* | A fire-ship |
| *Uma falua* | A felucca |
| *Uma caravela* | A caravel |
| *Embarcacão pequena para serviço de um navio de guerra* | A tender |
| *Um guarda costa* | A guard-ship |
| *Um cruzador* | A cruiser |
| *Um corsario* | A privateer |
| *Um hiate* | A yacht |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Um navio de transporte* | A transport |
| *Uma náo da India oriental* | East-Indiaman |
| *Uma náo da India occidental* | West-Indiaman |
| *Um navio para levar carvão* | A collier |
| *Embarcações pequenas* | Small craft |
| *Uma falua* | A barge |
| *Embarcação de avizo* | Advice-boat |
| *Um paquete* | A packet-boat |
| *Um barco de pescar* | A fishing-boat |
| *Uma lancha* | A lighter |
| *Os remos* | The oars |
| *A pá do remo* | The blade of the oar |
| *A sentina* | The well |
| *O lastro* | The ballast |
| *Alastrar o navio* | To ballast a ship |
| *Um mastro* or *arvore* | A mast |
| *O mastro grande* | The main-mast |
| *O mastro de mezena* | The mizen |
| *O mastro do traquete* | The fore-mast |
| *O gurupés* | The bowsprit *or* boltsprit |
| *A gávea* | The round-top, main-top, *or* scuttle of a mast |
| *A quilha* | The keel |
| *A verga* or *entena* | The yard |
| *A laiz*, or *extremidade das vergas* | The yard-arm |
| *As pranchas que cobrem os costados do navio da parte de fora* | The side planks *or* side of a ship |
| *Uma véla** | A sail |
| *Uma véla mestra*, or *a véla do mastro grande* | The main-sheet |
| *A véla da gávea* | The main-top-sail |

* By *véla* is often meant the ship itself.

| | |
|---|---|
| *A véla de joanête do mastro grande* | The main-top-gallant-sail |
| *Os papafigos* | The mizen and fore-sail |
| *A mezêna* | The mizen-sail |
| *A gata*, or *véla de cima da mezêna* | The mizen-top-sail |
| *O traquête* | The fore-sail |
| *O velacho* | The fore-top-sail |
| *O joanete do traquete* | The fore-top-gallant-sail |
| *A cevadeira* | The sprit-sail |
| *A véla latina* | A shoulder-of-mutton-sail |
| *Fazer força de véla* | To crowd the sail |
| *Os mastaréos* | The top-mast, *or* top-gallant-masts |
| *Oa mastaréo da mezêna*, or *mastaréo da gata* | The mizen-top-mast |
| *Uma portinhola* | A port-hole |
| *As bandeiras* | The colours |
| *As flammulas*, or *galhardetes* | The streamers, pendants |
| *A agulha de marear* | The mariner's compass |
| *A bitácola* | The binnacle |
| *As costuras do navio* | The seams of a ship |
| *O léme* | The helm *or* rudder |
| *A cana do léme* | The whip *or* whip-staff |
| *A cuberta* | The deck |
| *Cuberta corrida* | Flush fore and aft |
| *As escotilhas* | The hatches *or* scuttles |
| *Um escotilhão* | A room by the hatches to keep the provisions in |
| *O castello de pôpa* | The quarter-deck |
| *O castello de prôa* | The forecastle |
| *Garrar a ancora* | To drive, *or* for a ship to drag her anchor |
| *A ancora* | The anchor |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Meter a ancora dentro* | To weigh the anchor |
| *Uma ancora de roboque* | A kedger |
| *A ancora de esperança* | The sheet anchor |
| *As unhas da ancora* | The flukes of the anchor |
| *A argola da ancora* | The ring of the anchor |
| *Estar a ancora a pique* | The anchor to be a-peak |
| *Uma amarra* | A cable |
| *Picar* or *cortar as amarras* | To cut the cables |
| *A sonda* or *prumo* | The sounding-lead |
| *Os cutelos* | The studding-sails |
| *A maré* | The tide |
| *Uma bozina* | A speaking-trumpet |
| *Preparar um navio de velas, cordas*, &c. | To rig a ship |
| *Um piloto* | A pilot |
| *Um escrivão* | A purser |
| *Pilotagem* | Pilotage |
| *A carta de marear* | The sea-chart |
| *Um capitão* | A captain |
| *O capitão tenente* | The first lieutenant |
| *Um contramestre* | A boatswain |
| *Um marinheiro* | A sailor |
| *Um camarote* | A cabin |
| *Marinheiro que é camarada ou pertence ao mesmo rancho* | A messmate |
| *Uma tormenta* | A tempest |
| *Uma borrasca* | A storm |
| *Bonança* | Fair weather |
| *Calmaria* | Calm |
| *Vento em pôpa* | The wind full astern, a fore-wind |
| *Navio arrasado em pôpa* | A ship that sails before the wind |

| | |
|---|---|
| *A derrota* | The course *or* way of a ship |
| *Alar a bolina* | To tighten the main bowline, to haul up the bowline |
| *Ir pela bolina* | To tack upon a wind, sail upon a bowline |
| *Nó da bolina* | The bowline knot |
| *Barlavento* | Windward |
| *Ganhar o barlavento* | To catch the wind |
| *Barlaventear*, or *deitar a barlavento* | To ply to windward |
| *Sotavento* | Leeward |
| *Escovens* | Hawsers |
| *Escôtas* | Tacks |
| *Velame, cordas, e o mais que é necessario para preparar um navio* | Tackle *or* tackling, the rigging of a ship |
| *Uma corda* | A rope |
| *As enxarcias* | The shrouds |
| *Arribar* | To put into harbour |
| *Bombordo* | Larboard |
| *Estibordo* | Starboard |
| *Ló* | Luff |
| *Meter de ló* | To luff *or* keep the ship nearer the wind |
| *Uma bomba* | A pump |
| *Dar á bomba* | To pump |
| *Balde para deitar agoa na bomba* | A pump-can |
| *O pistão da bomba* | The sucker of a pump |
| *O braço da bomba* | The pump-handle |
| *Um farol* | A light, lantern, *or* lighthouse |
| *O vento* | The wind |

| ROSA DA AGULHA, *or* DOS VENTOS. | THE FLY OF THE MARINER'S COMPASS. |
|---|---|
| *Norte* | North |
| *Norte* 4ª *a nordeste* | N. by E. |
| *Nor-nordeste* | N. N. E. |
| *Nordeste* 4ª *a norte* | N. E. by N. |
| *Nordeste* | N. E. |
| *Nordeste* 4ª *a leste* | N. E. by E. |
| *Les-nordeste* | E. N. E. |
| *Leste* 4ª *a nordeste* | E. by N. |
| *Leste* | East |
| *Leste* 4ª *a sueste* | E. by S. |
| *Les-sueste* | E. S. E. |
| *Sueste* 4ª *a leste* | S. E. by E. |
| *Sueste* | S. E. |
| *Sueste* 4ª *a sul* | S. E. by S. |
| *Su-sueste* | S. S. E. |
| *Sul* 4ª *a sueste* | S. by E. |
| *Sul* | South |
| *Sul* 4ª *a sudoeste* | S. by W. |
| *Su-sudoeste* | S. S. W. |
| *Sudoeste* 4ª *sul* | S. W. by S. |
| *Sudoeste* | S. W. |
| *Sudoeste* 4ª *a oeste* | S. W. by W. |
| *Oes-sudoeste* | W. S. W. |
| *Oeste* 4ª *a sudoeste* | W. by S. |
| *Oeste* | West |
| *Oeste* 4ª *a noroeste* | W. by N. |
| *Oes-noroeste* | W. N. W. |
| *Noroeste* 4ª *a oeste* | N. W. by W. |
| *Noroeste* | N. W. |
| *Noroeste* 4ª *a norte* | N. W. by N. |
| *Nor-noroeste* | N. N. W. |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Norte 4ª a noroeste* | N. by W. |
| *Vento travessão* or *travessia* | Contrary wind |
| *Dar a embarcação a travéz* | To hull |
| *Pairar* | To ply backwards and forwards on one station |
| *Esporão* | Beak |
| *Colher um cabo* | To coil a cable |
| *Largar mais cabo* | To pay out more cable |
| *Abrir agoa* | To leak *or* spring a leak |
| *Fazer agoada* | To take in fresh water |
| *Arpar um navio* | To grapple a ship |
| *Fatexa* | Grapple |
| *Pedaço de lôna breada que se põe ao redor do mastro e das bombas para que a agoa não penetre* | Tarpaulin |
| *Passador* | A fidd *or* pin of iron to open the strands of ropes |
| *Corda com que se prende o bote*, or *lancha á pôpa do navio* | A boat-rope |
| *Um apito* | A boatswain's call |
| *As abadernas* | The nippers |
| *Uma abita* | The bits |
| *Emproar* | To steer right forward, to turn the prow straight forward |
| *Guinar o navio* | To tack |
| *Parte superior* or *mais alta da pôpa de um navio* | Taffrail |
| *As apagafanoes* | The leech-lines |
| *As arreigadas* | The puttocks |
| *Os brioes* | The bunt-lines |
| *As varredouras* | The bow-studding-sails |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O bartidouro* | The boat's-skit |
| *Os bastardos* | The parrels |
| *Uma bigota* | A dead-eye |
| *Os botalos* | The studding-sail-booms |
| *Bracear* | To brace |
| *Os braços* | The braces |
| *O bragueiro* or *vergueiro* | The rudder's rope |
| *Os brandaes* | The backstays |
| *As buçardas* | The breast-hooks |
| *As cacholas* | The cheeks |
| *O cadaste* | The stand-post |
| *Um cadernal* | A large block with more than one shrive |
| *As cavernas* | The floor-timbers |
| *Os colhedores* | The lines of the shrouds |
| *Compassar um navio* | To trim a ship |
| *Os cossouros* | The trucks |
| *A craca* | The foulness of the ship's bottom |
| *O cabrestante* | The capstan |
| *Dar caça* | To chase |
| *As curvas* | The knees |
| *Os enbornaes* | The scupper-holes |
| *O porão* | The hold of a ship |
| *Uma maca* | A hammock |
| *O convéz* | The deck |
| *O camarote do cirurgião* | The cockpit |
| *O frete* | The freight |
| *A carga* | The cargo |
| *Ordem que o capitão recebe para dar á vela* | Sailing orders |
| *Desembarque* | Landing |
| *Embargo* | Embargo |
| *Ancoragem* | Anchorage |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Batalha naval* | Naval battle |
| *Uma caravela mexeriqueira* or *de espia* | A look-out ship |
| *Arriar* or *arrear* | To veer |
| *Arrear as velas* | The furl a sail |
| *Arrear bandeira* | To strike the flag |
| *Levantar ferro, levar ancoras, levar ferro, levar-se* or *levar* | To weigh anchor |
| *Leva* | The action of weighing *or* taking up the anchor |
| *Bolear a peça* | To move a gun towards starboard *or* larboard |
| *A peça de leva* | The signal gun |
| *Rebocar* or *levar de reboque* | To tow |
| *Fazer costuras* | To splice |
| *A passagem* | The passage |
| *Um passageiro* | A passenger |
| *Uma viagem* | A voyage |
| *Navio cujo capitão tem cartas de corso* | Letters of marque |
| *Querenar um navio* | To careen a ship |
| *Brear as costuras do navio* | To pitch the seams of a ship |
| *Dar á costa* | To run a-ground *or* on shore |
| *Soluçar a náo* | A ship to roll, *or* to float in rough water |
| *Naufragar* | To suffer a wreck, to be wrecked |
| *Naufragio* | Shipwreck |
| *Um patrão*, or *mestre de embarcação* | The shipmaster |
| *Um carpenteiro de navios* | The shipwright |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Estaleiro* | Ship-yard |
| *Embarcar* | To ship |
| *Embarcar-se* | To go aboard, to take shipping |
| *Um grumete* | A boy (of the crew) |
| *Moço da camara* | A cabin boy |
| *Um calafate* | A caulker |
| *Calafetar um navio* | To caulk a ship |
| *O calafeto* | The oakum |
| *Um arsenal* or *ribeira das náos* | An arsenal *or* dockyard |
| *Emmastear um navio* | To fit a ship, *or* vessel, with masts |
| *Remar* | To row |
| *Um remador* | A rower |
| *O despenseiro* | The steward |
| *Os marinheiros, e toda a outra gente que pertence ao navio, Tripulação* | The crew of a ship |
| *A guarnição da náo* | The crew and marines who serve on board a man-of-war |
| *A balestilha* | The cross-staff |
| *O quadrante* | The quadrant |
| *Outante* | Hadley's quadrant |
| *De ré* | Aft |
| *Paravante* | Fore |
| *A situação de uma costa, ilha, &c., a respeito de qualquer outro lugar* | The bearing |
| *Quarentena* | Quarantine |
| *Baliza* | Sea-mark |
| *Larga* | Large |
| *Amarar* | To bear off |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Caçar a vela* | To turn the sail to the windward |
| *Cacear um navio* | It is said of a ship that is hurried away from her course by strong winds, tides, &c. |
| *Lançar um navio ao mar* | To launch a ship |
| *Entrar com vento fresco e bom no porto* | To bear in the harbour |
| *Bordo* | Tack |
| *Bordo* or *banda* | Broadside |
| *Uma caça* | A chase |
| *Uma presa* or *tomadia* | A prize *or* capture |
| *Estar de vergadalto* | To stand for the offing |
| *Ventos de monção* or *geraes* | Trade winds |
| *Andar de conserva* | To keep company together, to sail under a convoy |
| *Dar* or *fazer um bordo* | To tack the ship, *or* tack about, *or* to bring her head about |
| *Estar á capa*, or *põr-se á capa* | To lie by at sea, to back the sails |

| DO COMMERCIO, E DO QUE LHE PERTENCE. | OF TRADE, AND OF THINGS RELATING TO IT. |
|---|---|
| *Conta* | Account |
| *Conta de venda* | Account of sales |
| *Fazer uma conta* | To cast up an account |
| *Pedir contas* | To call to an account |
| *Dar á conta* | To pay on account |
| *Conta corrente* | Account current |
| *Dinheiro de contado* | Ready money |
| *Fundos publicos* | Stocks |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O que negocêa em comprar e vender acções* | A jobber |
| *O ballanço* | The balance |
| *Um fardo* | A bale |
| *Um banco* | A bank |
| *Um banqueiro* | A banker |
| *Quebra* | Bankruptcy |
| *Falido* or *quebrado* | Bankrupt |
| *Ajuste* or *concerto* | Bargain |
| *Troca* | Barter |
| *Portador* | Bearer |
| *Lançador* | Bidder |
| *Letra de cambio* | Bill of exchange |
| *Negociar uma letra de cambio* | To negotiate a bill of exchange |
| *Partida* | Parcel |
| *Conhecimento* | Bill of lading |
| *Escriptura de obrigação* | Bond, engagement |
| *Guarda-livros*, or *o que em uma casa de negocio tem a seu cargo os livros* | Book-keeper |
| *Occupação* or *negocio* | Business |
| *Comprador* | Buyer |
| *Dinheiro* | Cash |
| *Porte* or *carreto* | Carriage |
| *O caixa* or *o que guarda a caixa* | The cashier *or* cash-keeper |
| *Cento* | Cent |
| *Certidão* | Certificate |
| *Cambio* | Change, exchange |
| *Freguez* | Customer |
| *Gastos* | Charges |
| *Barato* | Cheap |
| *Caro* | Dear |
| *Despacho da alfandega* | Clearance |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Commissão* | Commission |
| *Mercancias* | Merchandise |
| *Compromisso* | Compromise |
| *Consignação* | Consignment |
| *Consumo* | Consumption |
| *Conteudo* | Contents |
| *Contracto* | Contract |
| *Um correspondente* | A correspondent |
| *Preço* | Price, rate |
| *A alfandega* | The custom-house |
| *Os guardas d'alfandega* | The custom-house officers |
| *Guardas que estão vigiando até que os navios estejão descarregados* | Tide-waiters |
| *Uma feitoria* | A factory, settlement |
| *Um escriptorio* | A counting-house *or* office |
| *Credito* | Credit |
| *Um credor* | A creditor |
| *Corrente* | Current |
| *Costume* | Custom |
| *Um contractador* | A contractor |
| *Trafego* or *negocio* | Traffic *or* business |
| *Divida* | Debt |
| *Um devedor* | A debtor |
| *Dinheiro desembolçado* | Disbursement |
| *Desconto* | Discount |
| *Deposito* | Deposit |
| *Direitos que a alfandega torna a dar aos exportadores de certas fazendas, que já os tinhão pago na supposição de serem para consumo interior: servindo isto para animar o commercio* | Drawback |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Copia* | Duplicate |
| *Corretor* | Broker |
| *Corretor de letras de cambio* | Stockbroker |
| *Assegurador* or *segurador* | Insurer *or* underwriter |
| *Endosse* | Endorsement |
| *Endossador* | Endorser |
| *Levantamento de preço* | Enhancement |
| *Entrada* | Entry |
| *Equivalente* | Equivalent |
| *Exigencia* | Exigency |
| *Despeza* | Expense |
| *Exportação* | Export *or* exportation |
| *Extorsão* | Extortion |
| *Feitor* or *commissario* | Factor |
| *Feira* | Fair |
| *Fio* or *arame no qual se enfião os papeis n'um escriptorio* | File for papers |
| *Quatro, cinco*, &c., *por cento* | Four, five, &c., per cent |
| *Frete* | Freight |
| *Fretar um navio* | To charter a ship |
| *Fundos* | Funds |
| *Ganho* | Gain *or* profit |
| *O que ganha* | Gainer |
| *Fazendas* or *effeitos* | Goods, effects |
| *Estrêa* | Handsel |
| *Escriptura* | Deed |
| *Direitos d' entrada* | A duty on imported commodities |
| *Importador* | Importer |
| *Renda* | Income |
| *Interesse* | Interest |
| *Correspondencia* | Correspondence |
| *Inventario* | Inventory |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Insolvencia* | Insolvency |
| *Factura* | Invoice |
| *Escriptura de arrendamento* | Lease |
| *Arrendador* | Lessee |
| *Livro de razão* | Ledger |
| *Emprestimo* | Loan |
| *Dinheiro emprestado* | Money lent |
| *Carta* | Letter |
| *Sobrescripto da carta* | The direction of a letter |
| *Fechar uma carta com sinete* | To fold and seal a letter |
| *Mala em que o correio traz as cartas* | Mail |
| *Hypotheca* | Mortgage |
| *Credor hypothecario* | Mortgagee |
| *Fiador* | Bail |
| *Pagamento* | Payment |
| *Falta de pagamento* | Non-payment |
| *Nota promissoria* | Note *or* promissory note |
| *Dono* | Owner |
| *Pacote* | Pack, a truss |
| *Serapilheira* | Packcloth, wrapper |
| *Barbante* | Pack-thread |
| *Maço de cartas* | Packet of letters |
| *Companheiro de alguem no negocio*, or *socio* | Partner |
| *Sociedade*, or *companhia no negocio* | Partnership |
| *Penhor* | Pawn *or* pledge |
| *Aposite de segura* | Policy of insurance |
| *Seguro* | Insurance |
| *Protestar uma letra* | To protest a bill |
| *Aceitar uma letra* | To accept a bill |
| *Protesto* | Protest |
| *Sacar uma letra* | To draw a bill |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Correio* | Post-office |
| *Correio que leva cartas* | Postman *or* letter-carrier |
| *Porte de cartas* | Postage |
| *Primagem* | Primage |
| *Capital* | Capital |
| *Perdas e damnos* | Losses and damages |
| *Importancia* | Proceeds |
| *Importancia liquida* | Net proceeds |
| *Promessa* | Promise |
| *Bens* | Property |
| *Pontualidade* | Punctuality |
| *Compra* | Purchase |
| *Recibo* | Receipt |
| *Recambio* | Re-exchange |
| *Arbitro* or *louvado* | Referee *or* arbitrator |
| *Louvamento* or *arbitrio* | Reference |
| *Quitação* | Release |
| *Remessa* | Remittance |
| *Venda das coisas por miudo, como fazem os mercadores de retalho* | Retail |
| *Mercador de retalho* | Retailler |
| *Riquezas* | Riches, wealth |
| *Venda* | Sale |
| *Padrão* | A pattern |
| *Amostra* | Sample |
| *Sinete* | Seal |
| *Lacre* | Sealing-wax |
| *Ajuste de contas* | Settlement of accounts |
| *Logista* | Shop-keeper |
| *Contrabandista* | Smuggler |
| *Fazenda de contrabando* | Contraband, goods smuggled |
| *Fazer contrabando* | To smuggle |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Modêlo,* or *fiel dos pezos e medidas publicas* | Standard measure |
| *Armazem* | Warehouse |
| *Subscripção* | Subscription |
| *Tara* | Tare |
| *Fazenda ruim* | Trashy goods |
| *Risco* | Risk |
| *Juros* | Interest |
| *Usurario* | Usurer |
| *Usura* | Usury |
| *Mercancias* | Merchandise |
| *Valôr* | Worth *or* value |
| *Avaria* | Average |
| *Direitos* | Duties *or* custom |
| *Tributo* or *contribuição* | Cess, tribute |
| *Sisa* | Excise |
| *Siseiro* | Exciseman |
| *Cáes* | Wharf |
| *Direito que se paga por desembarcar fazendas no cáes* | Wharfage |
| *Collector do mesmo direito* or *tributo* | Wharfinger |
| *Dizimos* | Tithes |
| *Dizimador* or *dizimeiro* | Tithe-gatherer |
| *Louça vidrada, sem ser da China* | Dutch-ware |
| *Mercador de atacador* | Wholesale dealer |
| *Venda que se faz por atacado* | Wholesale |

| DA MOEDA *or* DINHEIRO PORTUGUEZ. | OF THE PORTUGUESE COIN. |
|---|---|
| **Real* | A ree, equal to $\frac{27}{400}d.$ |
| *Des reis* | 10 rees, $\frac{27}{40}d.$ |
| *Vintem* | A vintin, $1\frac{7}{20}d.$ |
| *Tostão*, or 5 *vintens* | A testoon, $6\frac{3}{4}d.$ |
| 2 *tostões* | Two testoons, 1*s.* $1\frac{1}{2}d.$ |
| 4 *tostões*, or *um crusado* | A crusade, 2*s.* 3*d.* |
| *Crusado novo*, or 24 *vintens* | A new crusade, 2*s.* $8\frac{2}{3}d.$ |
| 5 *tostões* | Five testoons, 2*s.* $9\frac{3}{4}d.$ |
| 10 *tostões*, or 1000 *reis* | 10 testoons, 5*s.* $7\frac{1}{2}d.$ |
| *Um quartinho de oiro*, or 1200 *reis* | 12 testoons, 6*s.* 9*d.* |
| 16 *tostões* | 16 testoons, 9*s.* |
| *Meia moeda de oiro* | Half moidore, 13*s.* 6*d.* |
| 3200, or 32 *tostões* | 32 testoons, 18*s.* |
| *Moeda de oiro de* 4800 | A moidore, 1*l.* 7*s.* |
| *Peça de* 8000 | Joanese, 2*l.* 5*s.* |
| *Dobrão*, or 12,800 | 128 testoons, 3*l.* 12*s.* |

**This mark is prefixed to the imaginary money.**

# A COLLECTION

OF

# PORTUGUESE PROVERBS.

---

| | |
|---|---|
| *A agoa o dá, a ogoa o leva* | Lightly come, lightly go |
| *Na agoa revolta pesca o pescador* | To fish in troubled waters (to make a benefit of public troubles) |
| *Está como o peixe n' agoa* | He lives in clover |
| *Trazer a agoa para o seu moinho* | To bring grist to the mill |
| *Levar agoa ao mar* | To carry coals to Newcastle |
| *As agoas estão baixas* | He *or* she is at a low ebb |
| *O que não pode ser, deve-se soffrer* | What cannot be cured must be endured |
| *Come como um alarve* | He eats like a thresher |
| *Alazão tostado antes morto que cançado* | A dark sorrel horse will die before he will stop |
| *Uma desgraça alcança a outra* | Misfortune never comes alone |
| *Estar na aldêa, e não ver as casas* | We say, you cannot see wood for trees; *or* to be like the butcher that looked for his knife when he had it in his mouth |
| *Quem trabalha tem alfaia* | He that works has furniture |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Fallo-lhe em alhos, respondeme em bugalhos* | I talk of chalk, and you of cheese |
| *Em tempo nevado o alho vale um cavallo* | Garlic in foggy weather is as good as a horse; it means that garlic is a good defence for travellers against the dampness and cold weather |
| *Tezo como um alho* | As stiff as garlic; that is, a healthy, strong, robust person |
| *Sua alma, na sua palma* | As you brew, even so bake |
| *Quem ama a beltrão, ama a seu cão* | Love me, love my dog |
| *Cada qual ama seu semelhante* | Like will to like, *or* like loves like |
| *Tambem os ameaçados comem pão* | Threatened folks eat bread; we say, threatened folks live long |
| *Contas de perto, e amigos de longe* | Short reckonings make long friends |
| *Tão bom é Pedro como seu amo* | Like master, like man |
| *Furtar o carneiro, e dar os pés pelo amor de Deos* | We say, to steal the goose, and give the giblets in alms |
| *Nem um dedo faz mão, nem uma andorinha verão* | One swallow does not make a summer. *Una hirundo non facit ver*, says Horace |
| *Levar palhas e aralhas* | To sweep stakes |
| *Na arca aberta o justo pecca* | That is, it is opportunity that makes the thief |
| *De um argueiro, fazer um cavaleiro* | We say, to make mountains of mole-hills |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Com arte e com engano se vive meio anno; com engano e com arte se vive a outra parte* | That is, all a man's life is a deceit |
| *Quem a boa arvore se chega, boa sombra o cobre* | That is, he that relies on good worthy people reaps a benefit |
| *Asno que tem fome, cardos come* | We say, hungry dogs will eat dirty pudding |
| *Sópa de mel não se fez para a boca do asno* | Good things are not fit for fools |
| *Mais quero asno que me leve, que cavallo que me derrube* | Better be an old man's darling than a young man's slave |
| *Mais valemá avença que boa sentença* | It is better to agree at any cost than go to law |
| *Não deites azeite no fogo* | Do not throw oil into the fire |
| *Da mão á boca se perde a sopa* | Many a slip between the cup and the lip |
| *Em boca cerrada não entra mosca* | A close mouth catches no flies |
| *Quem tem boca vai a Roma* | That is, a man may go anywhere if he has a tongue to speak and ask his way |
| *Pela bôca morre o peixe* | Much taking brings much woe |
| *Cada bufarinheiro louva seus alfinetes* | Every man thinks his own geese swans |
| *Quem tem quatro, e gasta cinco, não ha mister bolsa nem bolsinho* | He that hath four and spends five hath no need of a purse |
| *Cabra vai pela vinha, por onde vai a mãi vai a filha* | Like father, like son |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Matar dois coelhos de uma cajadada* | We say, to kill two birds with one stone |
| *Quem canta, seus males espanta* | The person who sings makes easy his misfortunes |
| *Deitar a capa ao toiro* | To throw one's cloak at the bull; that is, to venture all a man has to save his life |
| *Viva el-rei, e dá cá a capa* | Let the king live, and give me the cloak; that is, spoken of persons who, under a pretence of authority, rob and plunder other people, and at the same time pretend they are doing justice to the power reposed in their hands |
| *Andar de capa cahida* | To be behindhand in the world |
| *O cão com raiva de seu dono trava* | A mad dog bites its own master; there is no trusting to madmen *or* people in a rage |
| *Quem com cães se lança, com pulgas se levanta* | We say, sleep with beggars and you will get fleas |
| *A carne de lobo dente de cão* | That is, to return railing for railing; *or*, as our modern proverb says, give him a Roland for his Oliver; the Latins say, *par pari referre* |
| *A cavallo dado não olhes o dente* | Never look in the mouth of a gift horse |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quem faz casa na praça, uns dizem que é alta, outros que é baixa* | That is, a man in public business cannot please everybody; *or*, as Solon says, it is rare that statesmen can please all men |
| *Quem quer cavallo sem tacha, sem elle se acha* | It is a good horse that never stumbles |
| *Cobra boa fama, e deita-te a dormir* | When your name is up, you may lie in bed till noon |
| *Fazer as contas sem a hospeda* | To reckon without the hostess; *or*, as we say, the host |
| *Em casa do ladrão não falles em corda* | You should not mention a halter to any whose relations or friends have suffered by it; that is, no man should be reminded of the subject of his disgrace |
| *Do coiro lhe sahem as correias* | The thongs come out of his skin; that is, he pays for it |
| *Cortar o vestido conforme o panno* | To cut one's coat according to the cloth |
| *Cria o corvo, tirarvos-ha o olho* | It is said of a person that, being received in distress, shows ingratitude to those who relieved him |
| *Tanta culpa tem o ladrão como o consentidor* | The receiver is as bad as the thief |
| *Dádivas quebrantão penhas* | Gifts break rocks: that is, kindness overcomes the hardest hearts |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Melhor é fazer debalde que estar debalde* | It is better to work for nothing than to be lazy and do nothing at all |
| *Deitar azeite no fogo* | To make bad worse. Horace says, *Oleum addere camino* |
| *Não é o demo tão feio como o pintão* | We say, the lion is not so fierce as his picture |
| *Primeiro estão os dentes, que parentes* | We say, near is my coat, but nearer is my skin, &c. Terence says, *Heus proximus sum egomet mihi* |
| *Lá vai a lingoa, onde o dente grita* | To scratch where it itches |
| *Quando cuidas meter o dente em seguro, toparás o duro* | Harm watch, harm catch, Horace says :<br>—*et fragili quærens illidere dentem*<br>*Offendet solido* |
| *Dar com a lingoa nos dentes* | To denounce oneself, to belie |
| *Ventura te dê Deus, filho; que saber pouco te basta* | God give you good luck, child, for a little learning will serve your turn; because it is fortune that raises men more than merit |
| *Cada qual por si, e Deus por todos* | Every one for himself, and God for all |
| *Em bons dias, boas obras* | The better days the better deeds |
| *Para dia de são cerejo* | We say, when two Sundays come together, that is—never |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Tudo pode o dinheiro* | Money governs the world |
| *O homem propõe, e Deus dispõe* | Man proposes, and God disposes |
| *Dorme como um arganaz* | He sleeps like a dormouse |
| *A bom entendedor poucas palavras bastão* | A word to the wise is enough |
| *Gato escaldado de agoa fria ha medo* | We say, a burnt child dreads the fire |
| *No escudellar verás quem te quer bem, ou mal* | That is, people's affections are discovered by their liberality |
| *Esmolou são Matheus, esmolou para os seus* | Charity begins at home |
| *Não ha melhor espelho que o amigo velho* | There is no better looking-glass than an old friend; that is, such a one will not flatter a man, but tell him the truth |
| *Nem estopa com tições, nem mulher com varões* | That is, conversation of women is dangerous; it is not safe to play with edged tools |
| *Fallar sem cuidar, é atirar sem apontar* | To let one's tongue run without reflecting on what one says is like shooting at random |
| *Falla pouco e bem, ter-te-hão por alguem* | Talk little and well, and you will be counted somebody; that is, you'll be esteemed |
| *Quem a fama tem perdida, morto anda n'esta vida* | He who has lost his reputation is as good as dead whilst living |

| | |
|---|---|
| *A quem má fama tem, nem accompanhes, nem digas bem* | Do not keep company with, nor be fond of one that has an ill name |
| *Aproveitador de farelos, esperdiçador de farinha* | That is, one that saves at the spigot, and lets it run out at the bung; also, penny wise and pound foolish |
| *Não fazem boa farinha* | They cannot agree together |
| *Quem má a faz nella jaz* | Self doth self harm |
| *Agora dá pão e mel, e depois dará pão e fel* | After sweet meat comes sour sauce |
| *Lingoa dôce como mel, e coração amargoso como fel* | A honey tongue, a heart of gall |
| *Bater o ferro quando está quente* | To beat the iron whilst it is hot, *or* to make hay whilst the sun shines |
| *Quem com fero mata, a ferro morre* | He who kills by the sword dies by the sword |
| *Carregador de ferro, carregado de medo* | He who is loaded with iron is loaded with fear; that is, he who loads himself with armour and weapons against danger discovers he is much afraid |
| *Quem te faz festa, não soendo-as fazer, ou te quer enganar, ou te ha mister* | He that makes more of you than he is wont to do, either designs to cheat you, or stands in need of you |
| *Não fies, nem profies, nem arrendes, vivirás entre as gentes* | Do not trust, nor contend, nor hire, and you will live among men; that is, you'll live peaceably |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Se não bebe na taberna, folga n'ella* | We say, he does not smoke, but smokes |
| *Achou fôrma para o seu sapato* | He has found a last to his shoe; that is, he has met with his match |
| *Não sejais forneiro se tendes a cabeça de manteiga* | Do not undertake to be a baker if your head is made of butter; that is, do not take upon you any business you are unfit for |
| *Ao homem ousado a fortuna lhe dá a máo* | Fortune favours the bold |
| *Roupa de francezes* | Things left at random, *or* exposed to be pillaged |
| *Cahir da frigideira nas brasas* | To fall out of the frying-pan into the fire |
| *Perto vai o fumo da chama* | We say, there is no smoke without some fire |
| *Quem uma vez furta, fiel nunca* | He who once steals, is never trusty; *or*, once a thief, always a thief |
| *Mal vai ao fuso quando a barba não anda em cima* | Alas for the spindle when the beard is not over it! By the spindle is meant the woman, and by the beard is meant the man |
| *Cada terra com seu uso, cada roca com seu fuso* | So many countries, so many customs |
| *Quantas cabeças tantas carapuças* | Several men, several minds |
| *Quem lhe doer a cabeça que a aperte* | We say, if any one finds the cap fit him, let him put it on |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Se queres saber quem é o villão, metelhe a vara na mão* | Set a beggar on horseback, and he will ride to the death |
| *Não ha rosa sem espinhos* | There is no rose without thorns, there is no sweet without some pain |
| *Quem não deve, não teme* | Out of debt, out of danger |
| *Quando pode, não quer; quando quer, não pode* | It is good to make hay while the sun shines |
| *Homem honrado não ha mister gabado* | We say, a good face needs no recommendation |
| *Homem grande, bêsta de páo* | This proverb intimates that things are not to be valued by their bulk, but according to their intrinsic worth and value; and so we say, a lark is better than a kite |
| *Debaixo de má capa jaz bom bebedor* | A tattered cloak may cover a good drinker; that is, men are not to be judged by outward appearance |
| *Quem muito abraça, pouco aperta* | All grasp, all lose; or covet all, and lose all. |
| *No açougue, quem mal falla, mal ouve* | He that speaks knavishly shall hear knavishly. Terence says, *Qui pergit ea quæ vult dicere, ea quæ non vult audiet* |
| *Quem em mais alto nada, mais prestes se afoga* | That is, the highest charges are the more liable and nearer to the downfall |
| *Hospeda formosa, damno faz á bolsa* | A beautiful hostess, or landlady, is bad for the purse |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O hospede e o peixe aos tres dias fede* | Fresh fish, and new-come guests, smell when they are three days old |
| *Horta sem agoa, casa sem telhado, mulher sem amor, marido sem cuidado, de graça é caro* | That is, a garden without water, a house untiled, a wife without love, and a husband without troubles, are all alike, being all worth nought |
| *Honra ao bom para que te honre, e ao máo para que te não deshonre* | Honour a good man, that he may honour you; and a bad man, that he may not dishonour you |
| *Honra é dos amos, a que se faz aos criados* | The honour done to servants redounds to their masters |
| *Officio de conselho, honra sem proveito* | An office in the council is honour without profit; that is, to be of the council of a town, by which nothing is got in Portugal |
| *Homem apercebido, meio combatido* | A man that is prepared has half the battle over |

# FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Muito bons dias senhor* | Good day, sir |
| *Como está vm^ce ?* or *como passa ?* | How do you do, sir ? |
| *Bem, não muito bem, vou passando* | Well ; not very well ; so so |
| *Muito bem para o servir* | Very well, at your service |
| *Ás suas ordens* | At your service |
| *Fico-lhe muito obrigado* | I am obliged to you |
| *Agradecido* | I thank you |
| *Como está* or *passa, o senhor seu irmão ?* | How does your brother do ? |
| *Muito bem, não muito bem* | He is very well ; not very well |
| *Elle terá gosto de ver a vm^ce* | He will be glad to see you |
| *Não terei tempo para ir vel-o hoje* | I shall have no time to see him to-day |
| *Faça favor de sentar-se* | Be pleased to sit down |
| *Dá uma cadeira ao senhor* | Give a chair to the gentleman |
| *Não é necessario* | There is no occasion |
| *Tenho que ir a fazer uma visita aqui na visinhança* | I must go to make a visit in the neighbourhood |
| *Vm^ce tem pressa* | You are in haste |
| *Eu logo voltarei* | I will be back *or* return presently |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Adeus meu senhor* | Farewell, sir |
| *Fólgo de o ver com boa saude* | I am glad to see you in good health |
| *Beijo as mãos de vm^ce* | I kiss your hand |
| *Sou seu criado* | I am your servant |

| PARA FAZER UMA VISITA DE MANHA. | TO VISIT IN THE MORNING. |
|---|---|
| *Onde está teu amo?* | Where is your master? |
| *Ainda dorme?* | Is he asleep still? |
| *Não senhor, elle está acordado* | No, sir, he is awake |
| *Está elle já levantado?* | Is he up? |
| *Não, senhor, elle ainda está na cama* | No, sir, he is still in bed |
| *Que vergonha de estar ainda na cama a estas horas!* | What a shame it is to be in bed at this hour of the day! |
| *Hontem á noite fui para a cama tão tarde, que não me pude levantar cedo esta manhã* | I went to bed so late last night, I could not rise early this morning |
| *Que fizerão vm^ces depois de ceiar?* | What did you do after supper? |
| *Dançámos, cantámos, rimos, e jogámos* | We danced, we sang, we laughed, we played |
| *A que jogo?* | At what game? |
| *Aos centos* | We played at piquet |
| *Quanto me peza de o não ter sabido!* | How grieved I am, I did not know it |
| *Quem ganhou? quem perdeo?* | Who won? who lost? |
| *Eu ganhei dez moedas* | I won ten moidores |
| *Até que horas jogarão vm^ces?* | Till what hour did you play? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Até duas horas depois da meia noite* | Till two in the morning |
| *A que horas foi vm^ce para a cama?* | At what o'clock did you go to bed? |
| *As tres, ás tres horas e meia* | At three, at half-past three |
| *Que horas são?* | What's o'clock? |
| *Que horas lhe parece que sejão?* | What do you think it is? |
| *Parece-me que são apenas oito horas* | Scarcely eight, I believe |
| *Sim! as oito! já derão as dez* | How! eight! it has struck ten |
| *Então é preciso que me levante quanto mais depressa pudér* | Then I must get up with all speed |

PARA VESTIR-SE. TO DRESS ONESELF.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quem está ahi?* | Who is there? |
| *Que quer vm^ce?* | What do you want |
| *Despacha-te, encende o lume, e veste-me* | Be quick, make a fire, dress me |
| *Dá-me a minha camisa* | Give me my shirt |
| *Eil-a aqui, senhor* | Here it is, sir |
| *Não está quente, está muito fria* | It is not warm, it is quite cold |
| *Eu a aquentarei, se vm^ce quizer* | If you please, I will warm it |
| *Não, não; traze-me as minhas meias de seda* | No, no; bring me my silk stockings |
| *Uma d' ellas está rota* | One of them is torn |
| *Dá-lhe um ponto, concerta-a* | Stitch it a little, mend it |
| *Dei-a ao que as concerta* | I have given it to be mended |
| *Fizeste bem* | You have done right |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Onde estão as minhas chinelas?* | Where are my slippers? |
| *Onde está o meu chambre?* | Where is my dressing-gown |
| *Pentea-me* | Comb my hair |
| *Dá-me o meu lenço* | Give me my handkerchief |
| *Eis aqui um lavado* | Here is a clean one |
| *Dá-me o que está na minha algibeira* | Give me that which is in my pocket |
| *Dei-o á lavandeira* | I gave it to the washer-woman |
| *Trouxe ella já a minha roupa?* | Has she brought my linen? |
| *Sim, senhor, e não falta nada* | Yes, sir, there wants nothing |
| *Que fato quer vm^ce^ para hoje?* | What clothes will you wear to-day? |
| *O mesmo de hontem* | Those I wore yesterday |
| *O alfaiate ha de trazer logo o seu fato* | The tailor will bring your clothes presently |
| *Batem á porta, vê lá quem é* | Somebody knocks, see who it is |
| *E o alfaiate* | It is the tailor |
| *Deixa-o entrar* | Let him come in |

| O SENHOR E O ALFAIATE. | THE GENTLEMAN AND THE TAILOR. |
|---|---|
| *Trazeis o meu fato?* | Do you bring my suit of clothes? |
| *Sim, senhor, eil-o aqui* | Yes, sir, here it is |
| *Ha muito tempo que estou esperando por elle* | You make me wait a great while |
| *Não pude vir até agora* | I could not come sooner |
| *Não estava acabado* | It was not finished |
| *Ainda não estava forrado* | The lining was not sewed |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Quer vm^ce^ vestir a casaca para ver se lhe está bem?* | Will you please to try the dress-coat on? |
| *Vejamos se está bem feita* | Let us see whether it is well made |
| *Tenho para mim que lhe ha de agradar* | I believe it will please you |
| *Parece-me muito comprida* | It seems to me to be very long |
| *É costume agora trazel-as compridas* | They wear them long now |
| *Abotôe-a* | Button it |
| *É muito apertada* | It is too tight |
| *Assim deve ser para que lhe esteja bem ao corpo* | To fit properly it ought to be tight |
| *Não são as mangas demasiadamente largas?* | Are not the sleeves too wide? |
| *Não, senhor, estão-lhe admiravelmente* | No, sir, they fit very well |
| *O colete parece-me um pouco estreito* | The waistcoat seems rather narrow |
| *Esta é a moda de agora* | That is the fashion now |
| *Este vestido está-lhe admiravelmente* | This suit becomes you very well |
| *É muito curto, muito comprido, muito grande, muito pequeno* | It is too short, too long, too large, too small |
| *Tendes feito a vossa conta?* | Have you made your bill? |
| *Não, senhor, não tive tempo* | No, sir, I had not time |
| *Trazei-a ámanhã, e pagar-vos-hei* | Bring it to-morrow, I will pay you |

| PARA ALMOCAR. | TO BREAKFAST. |
|---|---|
| *Traze-nos alguma cousa para almoçar* | Bring us something for breakfast |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Sim, senhor, ha linguiças e pastelinhos* | Yes, sir, there are some sausages and patties |
| *Gosta vm^ce de presunto?* | Do you like ham? |
| *Sim, traze-o; comeremos uma talhada d'elle* | Yes, bring it, we will eat a slice of it |
| *Estende um guardanapo sobre aquella mesa* | Lay a napkin on that table |
| *Dá-nos pratos, facas, e garfos* | Give us plates, knives, and forks |
| *Lava os copos* | Rinse the glasses |
| *Dá uma cadeira ao senhor* | Reach the gentleman a chair |
| *Assente-se vm^ce, assente-se ao pé do lume* | Sit down, sir; sit by the fire |
| *Não tenho frio, aqui ficarei muito bem* | I am not cold, I shall be very well here |
| *Vejamos se o vinho é bom* | Let us see whether the wine is good |
| *Dá cá aquella garrafa com aquelle copo* | Give me that bottle and a glass |
| *Faça favor de provar aquelle vinho* | Taste that wine, pray |
| *Como lhe agrada? que diz vm^ce d'elle?* | How do you like it? what say you to it? |
| *Não é mao, é muito bom* | It is not bad, it is very good |
| *Eis aqui as linguiças, tira aquelle prato* | Here are the sausages, take away that plate |
| *Gosta de linguiças?* | Do you like sausages, sir? |
| *Já comi algumas, ellas são muito boas* | I have eaten some, they are very good |
| *Dá-me de beber* | Give me something to drink |
| *A' saude de vm^ce* | Your health, sir |
| *Dá de beber ao senhor* | Give the gentleman something to drink |
| *Eu bebi ainda agora* | I drank but just now |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Os pastelinhos erão bem bons* | The patties were very good |
| *Estavão um pouco mais cozidos que devião estar* | They were baked a little too much |
| *Vm^ce mão come* | You do not eat |
| *Tenho comido tanto, que não poderei jantar* | I have eaten so much that I shall not be able to eat any dinner |
| *Vm^ce está zombando, vm^ce não tem comido nada* | You only jest, you have eaten nothing at all |
| *Tenho comido com muito gosto, tanto das liguiças como do presunto* | I have eaten very heartily, both of sausages and the ham |

| PARA FALLAR PORTUGUEZ. | TO SPEAK PORTUGUESE. |
|---|---|
| *Como vai vm^ce com o seu Portuguez?* | How much progress have you made in Portuguese? |
| *Está vm^ce já muito adiantado n'elle?* | Are you much improved in it already? |
| *Ainda me falta muito; não sei quasi nada* | Far from it; I scarcely know anything |
| *Dizem porem que vm^ce o falla muito bem* | It is said, however, you speak it very well |
| *Prouvéra a Deus que assim fosse!* | Would to God it were true! |
| *Os que dizem isso, estão muito enganados* | Those that say so are much mistaken |
| *Esteja vm^ce na certeza que assim mó disserão* | I assure you I was told so |
| *Posso fallar algumas palavras que aprendi de cór* | I can say a few words which I have learnt by heart |
| *É unicamente o que é necessario para começar a fallar* | Only so much as is necessary to begin to speak |

| | |
|---|---|
| *O começar não é bastante, é preciso que vm^ce acabe* | The beginning is not all, you must make an end |
| *Vá sempre fallando, ou bem ou mal* | Be always speaking, whether well or ill |
| *Tenho medo de commeter erros* | I am afraid to commit blunders |
| *Não tenha vm^ce mêdo; a lingoa Portugueza não é difficil* | Never fear, the Portuguese language is not difficult |
| *Conheço isso, e tambem que ella é muito engraçada* | I know it, and that it has abundance of graces |
| *Que felicidade seria a minha se eu a soubesse bem!* | How happy should I be if I were master of it! |
| *A applicação é o unico meio para aprendel-a* | Application is the only way to learn it |
| *Quanto tempo ha que vm^ce aprende?* | How long have you been learning? |
| *Apenas ha um mez* | Scarcely a month yet |
| *Como se chama o seu mestre?* | What is your master's name? |
| *Chama-se* —— | His name is —— |
| *Ha muito tempo que o conheço* | I have known him a long time |
| *Elle tem ensinado a muitos dos meus amigos* | He has taught several friends of mine |
| *Não lhe diz elle ser preciso que falle sempre Portuguez?* | Does not he tell you that you must constantly talk Portuguese? |
| *Sim, senhor, assim me diz muitas vezes* | Yes, sir, he often tells me so |
| *Pois, porque não falla vm^ce?* | Why do you not talk then? |
| *Com quem quer vm^ce que eu falle?* | With whom would you have me talk? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Com os que fallarem com vm$^{ce}$* | With those who will talk to you |
| *Eu quizera fallar, mais não me atrevo* | I would fain talk, but dare not |
| *É preciso que vm$^{ce}$ não tenha medo, nem se peje dos que o ouvirem fallar* | You must not be afraid, you must be bold |

| DO TEMPO. | OF THE WEATHER. |
|---|---|
| *Que tempo faz?* | What sort of weather is it? |
| *O tempo está admiravel* | It is splendid weather |
| *O tempo está máo* | It is bad weather |
| *Faz frio? faz calor?* | Is it cold? is it hot? |
| *Não faz frio, não faz calor* | It is not cold, it is not hot |
| *Chove? não chove?* | Does it rain? does it not rain? |
| *Não o creio* | I do not believe it |
| *O vento está mudado* | The wind is changed |
| *Teremos chuva* | We shall have rain |
| *Hoje não ha de chover* | It will not rain to-day |
| *Chove, chove a cantaros* | It rains, it pours |
| *Está nevando* | It snows |
| *Troveja* | It thunders |
| *Cahe pedra* | It hails |
| *Relampeja* | It lightens |
| *Faz muito calor* | It is very hot |
| *Geou a noite passada?* | Did it freeze last night? |
| *Não, senhor, mas agora está geando* | No, sir, but it freezes now |
| *Parece-me que ha nevoeiro* | It appears to me to be foggy |
| *Vm$^{ce}$ não se engana, assim é* | You are not mistaken, it is so |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Vm^ce tem um a grande constipação* or *defluxo* | You have caught a violent cold |
| *Ha quinze dias que o tenho* | I have had it this fortnight |
| *Que horas são?* | What is the time? |
| *É cedo, não é tarde* | It is early, it is not late |
| *É tempo de almoçar?* | Is it breakfast-time? |
| *Pouco falta para serem horas de jantar* | It will be dinner-time immediately |
| *Que faremos depois de jantar?* | What shall we do after dinner? |
| *Daremos um passeio*, or *iremos passear* | We will take a walk |
| *Vamos dar uma volta* | Let us take a turn now |
| *Não vamos fora com este tempo* | We must not go abroad this weather |

| PARA PERGUNTAR QUE NOVAS HA. | TO INQUIRE AFTER NEWS. |
|---|---|
| *O que ha de novo?* or *que novas ha?* | What is the news? |
| *Sabe vm^ce alguma cousa de novo* | Do you know any news |
| *Não tenho ouvido nada de novo* | I have heard none |
| *De que se falla pela cidade?* | What is the talk of the town? |
| *Não se falla de nada* | There is no talk of anything |
| *Não tendes ouvido fallar de guerra?* | Have you heard any talk of war? |
| *Não ouço fallar nada d'isso* | I have heard nothing of it |
| *Porem falla-se de um cerco* | There is a talk, however, of a siege |

*Fallou-se d'isso, mas não é verdade*
It was so reported, but it is not true

*Antes pelo contrario falla-se de paz*
On the contrary, there is a talk of peace

*Assim o creio*
I believe so

*Que se diz na côrte?*
What say they at court?

*Falla-se de uma viagem*
They talk of a voyage

*Quando vos pareçe que el rei partirá?*
When do you think the king will set out

*Não se sabe. Não se diz quando*
It is not known. They do not say when

*Onde*, or *para onde, se diz que elle irá?*
Where do they say he will go?

*Uns dizem que irá para Flandres, e outros para Alemanha*
Some say he will go to Flanders, others to Germany

*E que diz a Gazeta?*
And what says the Gazette?

*Eu não a li*
I have not read it

*É verdade o que se diz do Sr. ——?*
Is that true which is reported of Mr. ——?

*Pois que se diz d'elle?*
What of him?

*Dizem gue está ferido mortalmente*
They say he is mortally wounded

*Muito me pesaria d'isso; elle é um homem de bem*
I should be sorry for that, he is an honest man

*Quem o ferio?*
Who wounded him?

*Dois marotos que o investirão*
Two rogues that were set upon him

*Sabe-se o porque?*
Is it known upon what account?

*A noticia que corre é, que deu n'um d'elles um bofetão*
The report is, that he gave one of them a slap on the face

| | |
|---|---|
| *Eu não creio isso. Nem eu tão pouco* | I do not believe it. Nor I either |
| *Comtudo, cedo saberemos a verdade* | However, we shall soon know the truth |

| PARA ESCREVER. | TO WRITE. |
|---|---|
| *Dai-me uma falha de papel, uma penna, e uma pouca de tinta* | Give me a sheet of paper, a pen, and a little ink |
| *Ide ao meu quarto, e achareis em cima da mesa tudo o que vos for preciso* | Step to my room, you will find on the table whatever you want |
| *Não ha pennas* | There are no pens |
| *Ha grande quantidade d'ellas na escrivaninha* | There are a great many in the standish |
| *Não prestão para nada* | They are good for nothing |
| *Lá ha outras* | There are some others |
| *Não estão aparadas* | They are not made |
| *Onde está o vosso canivete?* | Where is your penknife? |
| *Sabeis vós aparar pennas?* | Can you make pens? |
| *Eu aparo-as a meu modo* | I make them my own way |
| *Esta não está má* | This is not bad |
| *Em quanto acabo esta carta, fazei-me o favor de fazer um maço das restantes* | While I finish this letter, do me the favour to make a packet of the rest |
| *Que sello quer vm^ce^ que eu lhe ponha?* | What seal will you have me put to it? |
| *Sella-o com o meu sinete*, or *com as minas armas* | Seal it with my cypher, *or* with my crest |
| *Tem vm^ce^ posto a data?* | Have you put the date? |
| *Parece-me que sim, mas ainda não a assignei* | I believe I have, but I have not signed it |

| | |
|---|---|
| *A quantos estamos hoje do mez?* | What day of the month is this? |
| *A oito, a dez, a quinze, a vinte* | The eighth, the tenth, fifteenth, twentieth |
| *Ponde o sobrescrito* | Put the address |
| *Ahi está ou seu criado; quer vm^ce que elle leve as cartas ao correio?* | There is your servant; shall he carry the letters to the post-office? |
| *Leva as minhas cartas ao correio, e não te esqueças de pagar o porte* | Carry my letters to the post-office, and do not forget to pay postage |
| *Não tenho dinheiro* | I have no money |
| *Ahi está uma moeda de oiro* | There is a moidore |
| *Vai depressa, e vem logo* | Go quickly, and return at once |

| PARA COMPRAR. | TO BUY. |
|---|---|
| *Que quer vm^ce?* | What do you want, sir? |
| *Quero um bom panno fino para um fato* | I want a good fine cloth to make me a suit of clothes |
| *Tenha vm^ce a bondade de entrar, e verá o mais bello panno que ha em Londres* | Be pleased to walk in, sir, you will see the finest in London |
| *Deixe-me ver o melhor que vm^ce tem* | Show me the best you have |
| *Aqui tem vm^ce um excellente, que agora se costuma usar* | There is a very fine one, which is much worn at present |
| *É um bom panno, mas a côr não me agrada* | It is a good cloth, but I do not like the colour |
| *Ahi tem vm^ce outra peça que tem a côr mais clara* | There is another lighter piece |

*Agrada-me a côr, mas o panno não é forte, não tem corpo*
I like that colour well, but the cloth is not strong, it is too thin

*Veja esta peça; vm^ce não achará em nenhuma parte outra tão boa como ella*
Look at this piece, sir; you will find none like it anywhere else

*Quanto pede vm^ce por cada vara?*
What do you ask for it a yard?

*O seu justo preço é* ——
It is fairly worth ——

*Sr. não é meu costume pôr-me a regatear; faça-me favor de me dizer o ultimo preço*
Sir, I am not used to stand bargaining; pray tell me your lowest price

*Já disse a vm^ce que aquelle é o seu justo preço*
I have told you, sir, it is worth that

*É muito caro, dar-lhe-hei a vm^ce* ——
It is too dear, I will give you ——

*Não posso abater um vintem*
I cannot abate a farthing

*Vm^ce não deve levar esse preço*
You must not charge that price

*Vm^ce quiz saber o ultimo preço, e eu disse-lhó*
You asked me the lowest price, and I have told you

*Hora, vamos, córte lá duas varas d'elle*
Well, cut off two yards of it

*Asseguro-lhe que não ganho nada com vm^ce*
I assure you I don't get anything by you

*Ahi tem cinco moedas de ouro, dê-me a demasia*
There are five moidores; give me the change

*Tenha a bondade de me dar outra em lugar d'esta, porque não é de pezo*
Be pleased, sir, to let me have another for this; it wants weight

*Ahi está outra*
There's another

| PARA UMA JORNADA. | FOR A JOURNEY. |
|---|---|
| *Que especie de caminho, ha d'aqui a ——?* | What sort of a road is it from hence to ——? |
| *A estrada é bella, boa* | The road is fine, good |
| *É soffrivel* | It is tolerable |
| *É quasi impracticavel no inverno* | It is almost impassable in winter |
| *Agora está coberta de lama por causa do degêlo* | It is all over mud now, because of the thaw |
| *Não é má n'esta estação* | It is pretty good in this season |
| *Estava coberta d'agua ainda não ha muito tempo* | It was overflowed a little while ago |
| *Está cheia d'atoleiros* | It is very boggy |
| *É larga ou estreita a estrada?* | Is the road broad or narrow? |
| *É espaçosa* | It is wide |
| *É commoda* | It is convenient |
| *Os caminhos não são mui bons* | The roads are very indifferent |
| *Encontrão-se boas estalagens na estrada?* | Are there any good inns upon the road? |
| *Ha boas e más* | There are some good and some bad ones |
| *São soffriveis* | They are tolerable |
| *Em geral são mui más* | They are generally very bad |
| *Há pelo caminho cidades notaveis?* | Are there any remarkable towns on the way? |
| *Offerecem ellas alguma cousa curiosa?* | Is there anything interesting in them? |
| *Que conducção posso tomar d'aqui a ——?* | What conveyance can I have to ——? |
| *Póde tomar um lugar na diligencia* | You can take a place in the stage coach |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Póde ir pelo caminho de ferro até* —— | You can go by the railroad as far as —— |
| *Vá pelo barco de vapor até a* —— | Go by the steamboat as far as —— |
| *Pode tomar a posta* | You may travel post |
| *Passa-se por muitas cidades?* | Do we go through many towns? |
| *Ha perigo na estrada?* | Is there any danger upon the road? |
| *A estrada é segura?* | Is the road safe? |
| *Sim, senhor; e muito frequentada* | Yes, sir; it is a great thoroughfare |
| *Não ha que ter mêdo de ladrões* | There is no danger of robbers |
| *Com tudo, sempre será bom não atravessar a mata de noite* | However, you had better not travel in the forests by night |
| *São bem servidas as postas?* | Are the post-houses well provided? |
| *Póde-se contar com cavallos de muda?* | Can we depend upon having fresh horses? |
| *É necessario esperar muito tempo pelos cavallos?* | Shall we have to wait long for horses? |
| *Quanto se paga por cavallo?* | How much must be paid for each horse? |
| *Um franco e meio por posta* | One franc and a half per post |
| *Quanto se dá aos postilhões?* | How much must be given to the postilions? |

DA CEA E DA POUSADA.

*Com que afinal temos chegado á estalagem*

*Apeêmo-nos, senhores*

*Pega nos cavallos d'estes senhores, e trata d'elles*

*Vejamos agora o que vm^ce nos vai da para ceiar*

*Um capão, meia duzia de pombos, uma salada, seis codornizes, e uma duzia de calhandras*

*Querem mais alguma coisa?*

*Isto é bastante; dai-nos algum vinho que seja bom, e uma sobremesa*

*Deixem isso por minha conta, eu lhes prometo que ficarão bem servidos*

*Alumia aos senhores*

*Dai-nos de ceiar o mais depressa que for possivel*

*Antes que vm^ces tenhão descalças botas, estará a cêa na mesa*

*Tende cuidado que tragão para cima as nossas malas e pistolas*

*Descalçai-me as botas, e depois ireis ver se tem dado algum feno aos cavallos*

OF SUPPER AND LODGING.

So, we have arrived at the inn

Let's alight, gentlemen

Take these gentlemen's horses and take care of them

Now let's see what you'll give us for supper

A capon, half-a-dozen of pigeons, a salad, six quails, and a dozen of larks

Will you have nothing else?

That's enough; give us some good wine and a dessert

Let me alone, I will please you, I warrant you

Light the gentlemen

Let us have our supper as soon as possible

Before you have pulled your boots off, supper shall be on the table

Let our portmanteaus and pistols be carried upstairs

Pull off my boots, and then you shall go to see whether they have given the horses any hay

| | |
|---|---|
| *Levai-os ao rio, e tende cuidado que lhes dem alguma avêa* | Take them to the river, and see that they give them some oats |
| *Eu terei cuidado de tudo, estejão vm^ces descançados* | I will take care of everything, do not trouble yourself |
| *Senhores, a cêa está prompta, está na mesa* | Gentlemen, supper is ready, it is upon the table |
| *Nós vamos já* | We will come presently |
| *Vamos cear, senhores, para nos irmos deitar cedo* | Let us go to supper, gentlemen, that we may go to bed in good time |
| *Sentêmo-nos, senhores, sentemo-nos á mesa* | Let us sit down, gentlemen, let us sit down at table |
| *Dai-nos de beber* | Give us something to drink |
| *Á sua saude, meus seuhores* | To your health, gentlemen |
| *É bom o vinho?* | Is the wine good? |
| *Não é mao* | It is not bad |
| *O capão não está bem assado* | The capon is not done enough |
| *Dai-nos algumas laranjas, e uma pouca de pimenta* | Give us some oranges, and a little pepper |
| *Porque não come vm^ce d'estes pombos?* | Why do you not eat of these pigeons? |
| *Eu tenho comido um pombo, e tres calhandras* | I have eaten one pigeon and three larks |
| *Dize ao estalajadeiro que lhe queremos fallar* | Tell the landlord we want to speak to him |

## DO SALTAR E DO CORRER. OF LEAPING AND RUNNING.

| | |
|---|---|
| *Hora vamos, quer vm^ce saltar?* | Come, will you go and leap? |

| | |
|---|---|
| *Não e bom saltar logo depois de comer* | It is not good to jump immediately after dinner |
| *De que modo de saltar gosta vm^ce mais?* | What leaping do you like best? |
| *O mais commum e a pés juntos* | The most usual is with one foot close to the other |
| *Quer que saltemos só com um pé?* | Shall we hop with one leg? |
| *Como quizér* | As you please |
| *Este é um salto muito grande* | This is a very great leap |
| *Quantos pés saltou vm^ce?* | How many feet have you leaped? |
| *Mais de quatro* | More than four |
| *Aposto que salto por cima d'aquelle barranco* | I wager I leap clearly over that ditch |
| *Vm^ce salta com um páo comprido* | You jump with a long stick |
| *Demos uma carreira* | Let us run races |
| *Quer vm^ce que corrâmos a pé ou a cavallo?* | Shall we run on foot or on horseback? |
| *De uma e outra sorte* | Both ways |
| *Começemos a correr d'aqui* | This shall be the starting-place |
| *Correremos até chegar a esta arvore* | This tree shall be the goal |
| *Tenho corrido trez vezes desde a lugar assignalado até á arvore* | I have run three times from the starting-place to the tree |
| *Vm^ce não esperou pelo signal para principiar a correr* | You did not stay for the signal to start |
| *Aquelle cavallo corrêo muito bem* | That horse has run his race very well |
| *Quantas carreiras tem elle dado?* | How many heats has he run? |
| *Tres ou quatro* | Three or four |

## CARTAS DE COMMERCIO.

## LETTERS ON BUSINESS.

*Londres*, 30 *de Janeiro de* 1827.

*Senhor F. F.*

*Recebi as suas de* 3 *e* 5 *do passado, no dia* 5 *do corrente, vindas pelo navio F. P., capitão B. B.; pelas quaes vejo, que Vm^ce pretende carregar as fazendas que recommendei ao seu cuidado pela minha ultima, no primeiro navio para esta.*

*Inclusas remetto a Vm^ce mais algumas amostras; porem desejo que queira recommendar ao tintureiro que as côres sejão vivas e firmes.*

*Pelo ultimo navio que d'aqui partio lhe remetti a conta de venda da sua partida de meias de seda, e das tres caixas de chapéos, pelo navio A.; e achando Vm^ce algumas partidas de quelquer*

The 30th Jan., 1827.

Mr. F. F., London.

Yours of the 3rd and 5th of last month came to hand on the 5th current by the ship F. P., Captain B. B.; and therein I take notice that you intend to put on board the next good ship bound hither the goods I recommended to your care in my last. Herewith I send you more patterns; but I would desire you to be solicitous with your dyer that the colours may be lively and durable. By the last ship I remitted you account of sales of the parcel of silk stockings, and the three boxes of hats, by the ship A.; and if you meet with a

*d'estes dois generos que lhe agradem, as pode mandar, pois são agora mui procurados; deve comtudo ter muito cuidado em que sejão da ultima moda. Tenho verificado o ajuste das* 20 *pipas de azeite da proxima safra, para partirem pelos primeiros navios: igualmente tenho carregado no navio N., Capitão F., as suas* 20 *pipas de vinho tinto; assim como tambem as doze e tres quartos de branco, cuja factura remetto inclusa: os conhecimentos lh'os remetterei pelo correio, Hei-de estimar chegue tudo a salvamento. E quanto por agora se me offerece a dizer-lhe; no entretanto sou,*

*de Vm^ce*
*m^to Venerador e Criado,*
*N.*

parcel of either or both to your mind, please to send them, such articles being now in demand; but great care must be taken of the fashion and make. I have taken care to secure your twenty pipes of oil for the first ships in the season, and put on board the ship N., Captain F., your twenty pipes of red, and twelve pipes and three quarter casks of white wine, of which the invoice goes herewith, and the bills of lading shall be sent by the post, and I hope will come safe to hand; which being all that is necessary at present,

I remain, Sir,
Your humble servant,
N.

---

*Senhor Diogo Jones.*

*Vou por esta avisar a Vm^ce que pelo navio Derby, lhe remetti duas saquinhas de diamantes, importando em pagodas* 4396, 25 *fan.*, 10

Mr. James Jones.

Sir,

These will advise you, that by this ship, the Derby, I have made the return of your stock in my hands, viz.: two bulses of

*casks, em retorno dos seus fundos em meu poder; os quaes fiz registrar nos livros da companhia, em conformidade com as suas ordens.*

*Inclusos achará o conhecimento, factura, e a sua conta corrente fechada, que desejo cheguem a salvamento, e me alegrarei de que faça grandes interesses.*

*Como eu estou para voltar par a Europa, á minha chegada a Londres, terei a honra de o ver, e lhe darei então uma relação exacta do commercio da India.*

*Tenho o prazer de ser,*
*Seu humilde Venerador,*

*Forte de S. Jorge,*
*12 de Jan.*, 1826.

diamonds, amounting to pagodas 4396, 25 fan., 10 casks, having registered them according to your order in the company's books. Enclosed is a bill of lading, together with invoice, and your account current closed, which I wish may come safe to you, and turn to a good account. As I am returning to Europe, on my arrival in London I shall have the honour to see you, and give you an exact account of the trade in India.

I am, Sir,
Your humble servant,

Fort St. George,
Jan. 12, 1826.

---

*Lisboa*, 4 *de Março de* 1825.

*Sñr. João Ferrier,*
*Londres.*

*Acho-me favorecido com a sua de* 3 *do passado, e vejo, que em execução das minhas ordens, tem Vm^ce^ comprado os quinhentos barris de arenques de fumo a* 11*l. per last.*

Lisbon, March 4, 1825.

Mr. John Ferrier,
London.

Sir,

I am favoured with yours of the 3rd of last month, and find, in compliance with my order, you have bought the five hundred barrels of red herrings at

*Estou certo de que esse é o menor preço por que Vm^ce os poude obter, e não tenho a menor duvida de que hão de corresponder em sua qualidade.*

*O meu navio se está a aparelhar para os ir buscar, e visto elle não demandar mais de novo pés d'agua, poderá mesmo carregar no seu cáes (como Vm^ce teve a bondade de me dizer), o que poupará quatro pence por barril, de despesas. Julgo que elle poderá carregar sete centos barris, ou mais. O capitão, visto não ter despesas a fazer, não necessitará de dinheiro.*

*Agradeço-lhe muito a sua informação referente ao cambio entre Londres e esta praça, mas como julgo as Letras sobre o Thesouro um pouco arriscadas, Vm^ce se servirá sacar sobre mim ao cambio mais vantajoso possivel, ficando na certeza de que os seus saques serão honrados com a pontualidade do costume.*

*Tenho o prazer de ser,*
*De Vm^ce*
*m^to at^to Venerador.*

£11 per last. I make no doubt but that was the lowest price you could get them for, and the goodness of them corresponds. My ship is getting ready with all speed to go down to fetch them, and she may be laden at your quay, as she draws no more than nine feet of water (as you are pleased to mention), which will save the charge of fourpence per barrel; I judge she will carry seven hundred barrels or more. The captain will not have occasion for any money, so will want no supply. I thank you for the information you gave me in relation to the exchange between London and this place; but as I look upon the remittance of the money hence as hazardous in Exchequer bills, you will be pleased to draw on me at the most commodious exchange possible, and your bills at the usual course, which shall meet with all due honour from, Sir,

Your humble servant,

*Londres*, 18 *de Março de* 1826.

*Sñr. J. Morrice,*
*Cadiz.*

*Tenho recebido em seu devido tempo as suas differentes cartas, assim como tambem a minha conta corrente, a qual tenho lançado nos meus livros de conformidade com Vm^ce.*

*A sua ultima é de* 29 *do passado, e n'ella me manda o recibo das tres letras, importando em seis mil peças de oito, que meu irmão Jozé lhe remetteu por minha conta e ordem: espero fazer triste negocio com ellas depois de um desembolso de tanto tempo, e com um cambio tão desfavoravel. Acho que os limites que elle lhe deu, forão muito abaixo do cambio, e preço da prata: porêm, visto eu ter esperado todo este tempo, e não haver probabilidade de um ou outro baixar, Vm^ce se servirá remetter-me o meu dinheiro, ao cambio corrente, para esta praça, ou Amsterdam, como lhe parecer*

London, March 18, 1826.

Mr. J. Morrice,
Cadiz.

Sir,

Your several letters came to hand in due time, as did my account current, which I have noted in conformity with you. Your last to me was of the 29th ult., wherein you give me receipt of the three bills, amounting to six thousand pieces of eight, which my brother Joseph sent to you for my account and by my order. I shall make but a sad bargain of them, after so long a disbursement; besides, they cost me a dear exchange. I find his limits to you were much under the price of plate and exchange; now since I have waited all this time, and there being no probability of their falling, be pleased to send my money, as the exchange comes, either for this place or Amsterdam, which you judge will turn most to account. If the plate or

*mais conveniente aos meus interesses.*

*Se o preço da cochonilha, ou da prata descesse tanto que Vm^ce julgasse ser mais conveniente para mim empregar o meu dinheiro em qualquer d'estes dois generos, do que remetter-me letras, n'esse caso o poderá fazer, deixando eu isso inteiramente á sua disposição, na certeza de que tratará dos meus interesses com o mesmo disvelo como se fossem seus proprios.*

*Estimarei saber da chegada do comboio, porque poderia ser produzisse alguma mudança favoravel no commercio, e que cada um podesse fazer uso dos seus capitaes; pois ao presente as circumstancias não convidão a nada. É quanto por agora se me offerece a dizer-lhe. No entretanto tenho a satisfação de ser.*

*De Vm^ce,*
*m^to attento ven^or, e C^o.*

cochineal should fall to a price which you may conceive will answer better than by remittance at a due exchange, in such case invest my money in either of them: this I shall leave entirely to you, being persuaded you will act in my affairs as if they were your own. I should be glad to hear of the fleet's arrival; for perhaps it might give some favourable turn to business, so that one could make some use of one's money, for at present it does not invite one to anything: which is all from,

Sir,
Your humble servant.

*Londres*, 3 *de Abril de* 1826.

*Sñr^s Mills & C^tia*
*Porto.*

*Esta serve para informar a Vm^ces que de sexta feira a oito dias se hão de abrir os livros do Banco de Inglaterra, para pagar os dividendos vencidos até áquelle dia, em que eu não deixarei de receber o que lhes pertence dos juros respectivos até esse tempo, em virtude dos poderes que me conferirão para esse fim, e depois de os ter recebido, lh'os remetterei.*

*De Vm^ces*
*m^to at^to Ven^or., e Criado,*

London, 3rd of April, 1826.

Messieurs Mills & Co.
Oporto.

This may serve to inform you that the books will be opened at the Bank of England on Friday se'nnight, to pay the dividends due up to this time to the parties concerned, when I shall be ready to receive whatever belongs to you both, with the respective interests thereon, by virtue of your powers given to me for that purpose, and, on receipt thereof, shall remit the same to you, whom God preserve many years.

Your most humble
servant.

# PART IV.

CONTAINING

## SEVERAL USEFUL AND ENTERTAINING PASSAGES,

COLLECTED FROM THE BEST PORTUGUESE WRITERS.

ENTRE os bons ditos de Souzeni, poeta Persiano, se conta que, bebendo com outro poeta, seu amigo, certo licor, se queixava de que era muito quente; e dizendo-lhe, Amigo, pobre de ti, 'que d'aqui a poucos dias te farão beber no inferno agoas sulfúreas e ardentes, que te abrazarão as entranhas.'—'Não importa,' replicou Souzeni: 'bastará que me lembre algum dos teus versos, que ellas se farão mais frias que a neve.'

---

Catharina Parthenay, sobrinha da celebre Anna Parthenay, deu esta bella resposta á Henrique IV. 'Saiba V. M. que eu sou muito pobre para ser sua consorte; e que ao mesmo tempo descendo de uma familia muito illustre para ser sua dama.'

Uma Princeza Catholica, e de rara virtude, vendo reduzido o Marechal de Saxonia ás agonias da morte, disse, que era para sentir o não se poder rezar um *De profundis* pela alma de um que tinha feito cantar tantos *Te Deums*.

A Dom Christovão de Moura, Marquez de Castello Rodrigo, e Vice-Rei de Portugal por Dom Philipe Terceiro, indo por uma sala do Paço de Lisboa um soldado honrado, que tinha bem servido na India, lhe dava um memorial e pedia que se lembrasse dos seus papeis, porque havia largo tempo que andava pretendendo, respondeo-lhe o Marquez, que havia muita Gente para despachar, e não se podião despachar todos com brevidade. O soldado, adiantando o passo, se atravessou diante sem descomposição; e, fazendo parar o Vice-Rei, lhe disse com grande confiança: 'Senhor Dom Christovão, despache V. S. os homens, e deixe a Gente.' O Marquez aceitou o memorial e o despachou no mesmo dia.

---

Mandando um Fidalgo em Lisboa abrir em uma rua os alicerces para se fazerem umas casas, sem licença da camara, e passando por alli o procurador da cidade, pôz pena aos officiaes, que não trabalhassem na obra sem licença dos Vereadores; e os officiaes dizendo-o ao Fidalgo, mandoulhes elle que não deixassem de trabalhar, e que não fizessem caso do que dizia aquelle villão ruim. Tornando o procurador da cidade por alli, e achando os officiaes trabalhando, mandou que déssem com elles no cêpo; e não faltando quem lhe contasse o que o Fidalgo disséra, teve-o em ôlho; e no tempo que elle hia atravessando pelo Rocio para sua casa, sahio-lhe ao caminho a cavallo, e com uma lança que levava, dando na sua sombra, lhe disse: 'Porque o que dissestes foi em minha ausencia, dou em vossa sombra; se m'o tivesseis dito no rosto, déra na vossa pessôa.'

---

Abou Hanifah, o mais celebre doutor dos Mussulmanes, tendo recebido uma bofetada, disse ao que o tinha insultado: 'Eu poderia vingar-me, pagando-vos na mesma moeda; mas não o quero fazer. Poderia accusar-vos ao califa; mas não quero ser accusador. Poderia nas minhas orações queixar-me a Deus d'esta affronta; mas nem isso quero fazer. Por fim, poderia pedir a Deus, que se quer no dia do juizo vos castigasse; porem o mesmo Senhor me livre de semelhante pensamento; mas antes, se succedesse que n'este instante chegasse aquelle formidavel dia, e se a minha intercessão tivesse alguma efficacia para com Deus, não quizera por companheiro senão a vós para entrar no Paraiso.' Que admiravel exemplo para os Christãos aprenderem a perdoar as injurias!

---

*Da Peregrinação.*

Passadas que se dão peregrinando, são degráos para a casa do desengano. Das suas fontes sahem os rios muito pequenos, e crescem correndo, e levão mares ao mar. Homens que da sua terra não sahem são navios que acabão no estaleiro. A sabedoria, como vinda do céo, anda n'este globo terrestre peregrina; não é facil acha-la senão peregrinando; errando por este mundo, se aprende a não cometter erros. Vapôres, que na terra eram lodo, apartados d'ella fazem-se estrellas. Aos homens que querem luzir, deve a patria servir, como aos planetas o horizonte, de berço, para ensaio do seu luzimento; longe do ponto ortivo e remontados a mais alta região apurão as influencias, e duplicão as luzes. Que nome terião hoje no mundo Socrates, Pithagoras, e Platão, e outros sabios da antiguidade, se a modo de cepos, ou troncos, que aonde nascerão fazem raiz e no seu primeiro chão

apodrecem, não buscárão fora da Patria as noticias que lhes faltavão. Não se ornára Hercules com os despojos dos Monstros que domou, se os não fôra buscar pelo mundo; á sua dilatada viagem devem os Argonautas a conquista do vello de oiro. Se não corrêra Ulysses remotos climas, fora a Ilha de Ithaca de toda a sua gloria o theatro. Homens perpetuamente caseiros, são gallos que só sabem do seu poleiro. Sabios peregrinos, imitão no seu curso as fontes que passando por vêas de prata, ouro, esmeraldas, e saffiras, tomão, e comsigo levão a flor de suas preciosas qualidades. Zombe embora Plutarco dos que louvão a peregrinação, e diga, que se parecem com os que julgão as estrellas errantes mais nobres, e felices, que as fixas. Não ha escola mais util para a vida, que as muitas vidas ou modos de viver, que na variedade das Nações se observam. Veem-se muitas cousas nunca vistas, aprendem-se muitas que se não sabião, faz-se o homem capaz de toda a casta de negocios, e folga de ver este mundo antes de sahir d'elle. Até para os principes, que das suas cortes fazem na terra o seu paraiso, bom he que peregrinem, para conhecerem o mundo, que elles governão. Os commodos, as delicias, os obsequios dos subditos, podem dar o conhecer a hum homem que nasceu soberano, mas com este conhecimento, não o fazem digno da soberania: se não sahira Alexandre da sua Macedonia, não passára dos limites de regulo, e não chegára a avassallar o mundo.

---

*Do Tempo futuro.*

Trate o homem do presente, e não queira penetrar no futuro; quem de tão longe pôe a mira, não pode dar no alvo. Muitas vezes bom é ignorar o que ha de succeder;

porque se for bom, a dilação, é tormento; e se for máo, o trabalho é sem proveito. Para futuros não ha segurança. Ao Embaixador, que na guerra movida por Luiz XI., Rey de França, a Carlos Duque de Borgonha, procurava attrahir ao Imperador Frederico, com promessa de se repartirem com elle os despojos, e os estados, respondeo o dito Imperador com este apologo: 'Tres caçadores com a esperança de apanharem um urso, se compromettêrão na repartição d'elle. Chegados á boca da caverna, sahio a fera com tão grande impeto, que um dos caçadores botou a fugir, outro subio a uma arvore, e o outro se estendeu no chão fingindo-se morto; chegou-se o urso a elle, poz-lhe o focinho no nariz, e nos ouvidos, e não lhe conhecendo folego, nem signal de vida, o deixou por morto. O que estava na arvore disse ao companheiro, Homem, que te disse o urso, quando te fallou á puridade, com o focinho nos ouvidos?—Disse-me que era mal feito, dispor da pelle e carne do urso, antes de o verem morto.' Com isto o Imperador deu a entender ao Embaixador, que era preciso apanhar primeiro ao Duque de Borgonha, e que depois se trataria da repartição dos seus estados. Dos successos do tempo futuro só Deos tem certeza.

---

*Dos Ricos.*

Em lugares estereis, sem hervas nem plantas, produz a natureza o oiro, para mostrar que os amadores das riquezas não têm fé, nem honra. Os ricos facinorosos, que ainda que celebrados nas historias, são o opprobrio da sua posteridade, poderão ter boa fama, se lhes não facilitára este metal a execução de seus damnados intentos. Em todas as idades forão as riquezas antagonistas da virtude; ellas inventaram os mais enormes delictos; ellas

ensinaram os filhos a tirar a seus pais a vida ; ensinaram os poderosos a opprimir os innocentes, arruinar as familias, saquear os templos, e despir os altares ; ellas induziram os amigos a que faltassem á fé, incitaram os vassallos a negar aos principes a obediencia, aos libidinosos derão meios para violar a pudicicia das donzellas, e estragar a honra dos maridos ; finalmente ellas, ainda que boas para a vida civil, são causa de todos os males ; e posto que os sabios se soubéram aproveitar d'ellas, a cubica, e o máo uso das mesmas, encheram o mundo todo de criminosos. Homens ricos ordinariamente se perdem, por terem muito, e saberem pouco ; desprezão o saber, porque lhes parece, que para todo o genero de vida lhes basta o ter. A Aristippo perguntou Dionysio, porque razão os filosofos frequentavão as casas dos ricos, e não os ricos as dos filosofos. Respondeo Aristippo, que os filosofos conhecem o que lhes falta, e os ricos ignorão o de que necessitão. Senhores ricos, e filosofos pobres, não podem fazer cousas grandes, porque a estes lhes falta dinheiro, e áquelles o espirito. Dizia Diogenes, que muitos ricos são como as plantas, que nascem em desertos e despenhadeiros, porque dos frutos que ellas dão não comem os homens, mas os corvos, milhafres, e feras ; tambem as riquezas de muitos não são para sugeitos beneméritos, mas para chocarreiros, espadachins, rufiões, e meretrizes.

---

*Estado da Lusitania até ao tempo em que foi reduzida a Provincia Romana. Por A. C. do Amaral. Extrahido das Memorias da Academia de Lisboa.*

Uma historia sincera envergonha-se da gloria vã, que se busca em antiguidades mentirosas : degosta-se d'esses

sonhos agradaveis, pasto de uma esteril recreação; e se saborea só com a verdade pura. Tal é a sorte d'este escripto, dirigido a fazer prezentes aos Portugueses os verdadeiros costumes e Leis de seus Maiores: rejeita tudo quanto a impostura, ou a credulidade moderna lhe conta dos Seculos que a Providencia quiz esconder-lhe: e se contenta com as escassas memorias que pode colher dos raros monumentos antigos que lhe restão. Não tenta entrar pelas espessas trevas dos primeiros 36 Seculos do mundo, em que não acha quem o encaminhe. Pois que os Hebreos unicos guias Seguros, que introduzem em muitos outros paizes, nem um só passo dão para este que habitamos; e apenas dão motivo a conjecturar, que das Colonias sahidas do Oriente para povoar a terra, algumas se estenderam até a esta extremidade; mas nem donde, nem quando viessem o pode colher a historia.

Não acha depois dos Hebreos outros de quem se fie, senão os Romanos: e ainda estes pouco lhe sabem dizer de hum Paiz tão apartado, em quanto a ambição de o senhorear os não avizinha a elle: mal conservão uma obscura tradição de que a estas partes vierão Celtas, Iberos, Persas, Lusos, e Gregos; de uns apenas ficára resto na derivação do nome; de outros na herança de alguns costumes. A navegação com que alguns Povos do fundo do Mediterraneo começão a enriquecer, os traz até estas ultimas Costas, e vai logo espalhar pelo Mundo a fama das ricas minas, e do fertil torrão deste Paiz desconhecido ainda, antes que da qualidade de seus habitantes: não tarda comtudo a mostra-se esta; continua a vir em busca dos thesouros descobertos a ambição estrangeira; e vê erguer d'aqui, quaes feras acossadas nos seus covis, homens bravos para defender os bens que a Providencia lhes destinára. E esta he a primeira scena que se nos representa no Terreno Lusitano; hum

Campo de Batalha, continuada já com os Fenicios, já com os Carthaginezes; que depois de disputarem por largo tempo com estes Barbaros a sorte das armas, os deixão ainda por domar aos Romanos quando lhes cedem a conquista do Mundo. Mas ao justo motivo da defeza propria succedem depois outros, que facilmente põe as armas na mão a uns homens, a quem a falta do commercio e de artes quasi não deixa outro meio de enriquecer, que a pilhagem; nome com que muitas das suas guerras são infamadas pelos Povos mais polidos que elles. E o mesmo habito de peleijar lhes vai alimentando um natural feroz, que já os não deixa accommodar com o socego da paz, e que os faz buscar inimigos dentro em casa, quando lhes faltão os de fóra.

Estes vicios, e virtudes de guerra, he o que de principio n'elles distinguem os Romanos, não os vendo senão armados no campo; e de que não podem deixar de dar testemunho estes mesmos vaidosos desprezadores de tudo o que não he Romano. Mas em fim á medida que se lhes chegão mais perto, e se envolvem com elles, já vão divisando por entre alguns claros que as armas deixão, a forma do seu governo interior.

Vem que este Terreno, que designão pelo nome de Lusitania, é habitado de Povos differentes independentes uns dos outros, e governados cada um por suas Leis, e costumes particulares; leis raras, e costumes singelos, ainda com a marca da Natureza não contrafeita.

Como a segurança propria é quem só forma estes corpos, não largão da liberdade que receberam da natureza, mais que o puramente preciso para conservar essa mesma segurança. A guerra a que são dados é que os obriga a criar um Superior, a que jurão fidelidade; mas conseguida a paz, expira o governo do General, e a obediencia dos Soldados.

Se ha que estabelecer de novo para o bem commum da Sociedade, servem-se do meio usado das puras Democracias, Assembleas geraes, em que cada pessoa tem o arbitrio de approvar, ou rejeitar o que se propõe: e ainda n'esta acção respira o ar militar, em que são criados; um bater da espada no broquel he o signal de approvação; um sussurro inquieto o de desapprovar.

A simplicidade da Legislação segue a das penas; são os reos do crime capital apedrejados, e para que o horror do crime se extenda alem ainda do castigo, todo o que passa depois da execuçao he obrigado a lançar alguma pedra sóbre o cadaver do justiçado.

Não desmente da parte Legislativa, a do Commercio interior ainda pouco sujeito a fraudes; não os move a contratar a sede insaciavel do ouro, que mal conhecem: as mutuas necessidades, a que só procurão soccorrer, os ensina a trocar entre si as cousas precisas á vida. Estas lhes dictão tambem o que devem conceder ao corpo; comeres, e bebidas simples, quaes a Natureza as produzia: vestidos sem mais estudo que o do fim para que os usão; cama sem regalo, nem despeza; enfim a tudo o preciso para o conservação se accode com o menos apparato que pode ser.

A esta sobriedade bem propria de si para dar a saude e vigor do corpo, ajuntão o trabalho aturado; os homens o da guerra quasi continua, e nos intervallos d'ella o de exercicios semelhantes á guerra; as mulheres o da cultura dos campos, o de todo o trato domestico, que com discreta economia lhes é cedido pelos homens occupados com as armas. E se faz memoria dos seus bailes, e contares não são tanto fructo do ocio, como do innocente prazer da vida social.

D'este modo sobrio e trabalhado de vida era consequencia a raridade de doenças: para alguma, que acaso

haja, não he venal a cura, nem o remedio, não se tendo alguem por desobrigado de concorrer para um officio de rigorosa humanidade; hé o enfermo exposto em publico; e os que tem sido feridos do mesmo mal ensinão os remedios com que conseguirão a saude.

Nos que habitavão as vizinhanças do Minho, como erão os Gronios, ou Gravios, os Amphilocios, e outros, se vêm assaz retratados os costumes de Gregos, de quem os Antigos querem que elles descendão; Jogos, e certames publicos, cazamentos, arte de augurar tudo he de Gregos. Idolatras como seus Maiores, nada conservão da Religião pura que a Razão lhes mostrára, mais que o reconhecimento de que ha um ente maior que elles, a que devem dar culto; porem estragado este natural sentimento pela corrupção do coração, imaginão Divindades indignas, a que honrão com um culto igualmente indigno. Se querem dar-lhes graças pelo feliz successo de uma batalha, as mãos direitas dos prisioneiros são o triste troféo que lhes levantão. Se antes de qualquer acção procurão saber o seu bom ou mão exito, dentro ás entranhas de um inimigo é que vão buscar este fatal segredo: se querem fazer religioso um juramento, é preciso que as entranhas quentes de um homem, e de um cavallo lhes sirvão de banho, em que depois de mettidas as mãos, as pôe sobre o altar, junto ao qual se deve fazer esta ridicula ceremonia. Emfim, é sempre sangue o que applaca uns Deoses, que estes Idolatras guerreiros formavão á sua semelhança.

Estes são os poucos vestigios, e quasi apagados, que se encontram dos costumes domesticos dos Lusitanos, que de ordinario só se vião no campo de batalha, detendo, ou fazendo retroceder os passos aos Conquistadores do mundo. Mal o poderá crer quem mede a força de um Estado pelo fausto de seus habitadores, pela magnifi-

cencia de suas obras, e por todo o esplendor que encanta os sentidos; quem não avalia quanto pode um Povo, em que todos os individuos são aptos para a defesa da Patria, em que a tantos Soldados como homens endurecidos todos no trabalho, e todos animados do amor da liberdade.

Um povo como este foi o que sem arte, e sem disciplina, em tendo na frente um homem que o soubessè mandar, escarneceu por muitas vezes das tropas mais bem reguladas, e deu muitos dias de magoa e de deslustre aos soberbos Romanos. Viriato, Sertorio, e ainda outros de menos nome forão instrumentos da gloria Lusitana, que sobrepujando á emulação ficou eternizada nos escritos de seus mesmos inimigos, e nos marmores que o tempo consumidor não acabou de gastar.

Por mais de Seculo e meio andarão os Romanos na porfiada lida de subjugar este ultimo pedaço da Hespanha que já contão toda por uma porção certa dos seus dominios: todos os annos lhe nomeão Governador; mas por mais que tentem mandar Pretor como para Provincia pacifica, a cada passo se vem obrigados a lhe mandar Consul armado; depois de terem separado o seu Governo do de quasi todo o resto da Hespanha. E se de quando em quando algum d'estes Generaes consegue a gloria de a pacificar, e sujeitar ás Leis Romanas, pouco tempo lhe dura verde o louro; na sua mesma cabeçã lhe mercha ou ao mais tarde na de seu successor; até que a longa experiencia os desengana, que he preciso mudar de systema; e que só costumando primeiro os Lusitanos a se sujeitar como amigos, he que os poderão insensivelmente ir passando a obedecer como Vassalos.

*Sobre a Poesia Bucolica dos Poetas Portuguezes. Por Joaquim de Foyos. Extrahido das Memorias de Litteratura da Academia de Lisboa.*

Assim como entre as duas especies de oração, por que o homem tanto excede aos outros animaes, se cultivou primeiro o Verso, assim de todas as sortes de Poesias parece ter sido primeria a Bucolica. Ainda que o genero humano não nasceo da terra, e dos duros troncos des arvores, como imaginarão muitos Poetas, e parece que chegarão a crer alguns Filosofos; com tudo depois do diluvio, espalhados os homens por toda a face da terra, e perdidos pouco a pouco os conhecimentos que herdaram de seus maiores, e só conservavão na Sociedade, he summamente provavel, que uma grande parte d'elles viesse successivamente a passar por estes tres generos de vida: Selvagem, Pastoral, Agricola. Os muitos Povos, que ainda hoje habitão, e se achão na primeira, e segunda d'estas vidas, confirmão a verdade d'esta conjectura. Mas o homem, vivendo uma vida silvestre nos bosques, separado de toda a Sociedade, e sustentando-se unicamente de caça, e dos fructos espontaneos da terra, nem se acha em circunstancias de adiantar os seus conhecimentos, nem tem tempo para cultival-os, occupado, e attento todo em buscar o necessario fysico, que não pode achar sem muita difficuldade, e trabalho. E ainda que aconteça, que por vezes lhe sobre algum espaço livre d'estas continuas fadigas, satisfeitos todos os seus naturaes desejos e appetites, cançado o corpo, e entorpecidos os membros, lhe entorpecerão juntamente as faculdades da alma, desacostumadas a discorrer e a exercitar-se em outros objectos, e se entregará docemente ao somno. Não succederá assim aos Pastores, que tendo gado que com seu leite lhes subministre o sustento, e com suas

pelles o vestido, passarão uma boa parte da sua vida quietos e descançados, sem mais outro cuidado que o de conduzir e defender os seus rebanhos e manadas. Obrigados de necessidades mutuas, e attrahidos do natural deleite que causa a companhia dos que têm as mesmas precisões que nós, n'ellas nos podem dar algum auxilio, e recebel-o, se chegarão, quando o permittir a abundancia, dos pastos, uns para os outros, communicarão entre si os seus pensamentos, e desejos, praticarão sobre as cousas que mais amão, celebrarão a sua felicidade.

Uma vez juntos os homens, e em ocio, contentes, e sem cançaço, impossivel é, que não inventem diversos jogos, e toda a sorte de desenfado e recreação para evitar o tedio de uma vida socegada e satisfeita. Entre estes divertimentos não devia ter ultimo lugar a Poesia. As faculdades do homem têm uma natural disposição para ella; ou a Poesia consista na imitação, como querem Platão e Aristoteles, ainda que clara e distinctamente nunca nos dissessem o que esta imitação seja; ou em uma oração levantada sobre as expressões vulgares, invertida com figuras, e armonios amente modulade, e compassada com o metro e com o rhythmo. Em qualquer d'estas cousas que façamos consistir a Poesia, ou em todas ellas, para todas recebeo o homem da Natureza uma admiravel propensão.

As nossos sensações são não sómente a origem e fundamento de todas as nossas idéas, mas transformando-se de diversos modos, são todos os nossos juizos e raciocinios, as nossas artes, as nossas Sciencias, e em uma palavra, tudo quanto sabemos e conhecemos. Mas a imitação é uma sensação facil, e para que está disposta a conformação dos nossos orgãos e das nossas potencias, e por consequencia uma sensação que nós achamos por extremo grata e deleitavel. D'este mesmo principio se segue outro, o qual aqui igualmente pertence, e vem a ser,

que é natural ao homem não so a oração, e a harmonia, mas tambem essa mesma oração variada com differentes tropos e figuras; isto he, com diversos modos de exprimir as cousas, e os pensamentos, já com a mesma harmonia, isto é, com o rhythmo, e já com o metro.

Conhecer-se-ha claramente a dependencia que estes dois principios têm entre si, se considerarmos que a imitação (a qual eu já mostrei ser um exercicio summamente gostoso ao homem, e um modo facillimo assim de elle apprender como de communicar aos outros os seus sentimentos), uma vez feita, e praticada com a oração, traz necessariamente comsigo todas aquellas variedades da mesma oração que apontei acima. D'aqui vem affirmarem agudamente, e com razão justissima, os mais celebres Filosofos que quizerão descer a discussões d'este genero, que a Poesia era tão antiga como o genero humano. Certamente parece ter nascido logo com as primeiras Sociedades, que elles formarão, e quando elles conservavão ainda muito, assim da rusticidade como da singeleza e innocencia natural. Do que parece ou claramente provado, ou deduzido com assaz probabilidade, que a Poesia nasceo e se inventou entre Pastores. Mas em que genero de Poesia se exercitarão estes primeiros homens? Não será difficil conhecel-o, se reflectirmos qual seria a materia que, segundo as circunstancias em que se achavão, se lhes offerecia para os seus cantos. Aristoteles foi de parecer, que dos primeiros inventores os que tinhão genio elevado imitavão acções illustres, e feitas por personagens grandes, e pelo contrario os que tinhão engenho mais rasteiro cantavão as acções dos homens vis, em cujo vituperio compunhão obras ridiculas, assim como os outros se exercitavão em hymnos e encomios.

Porem este erudito e intelligente Filosofo não falla, naquelle lugar, da primeira origem da Poesia rigorosa-

mente, mas sim do modo com que ella, depois de inventada, se foi dividindo em diversas especies; porque suppõe tempos em que he já grande a desigualdade dos homens; o que não tem lugar nas primeiras e simplicissimas sociedades de Pastores.

É pois summamente verosimil, que estes homens quizessem imitar aquellas cousas que com mais frequencia se offerecião aos seus sentidos, que satisfazião as suas necessidades, e que constituião a bem aventurança da sua socegada vida e felice estado, por que nellas empregavão toda a sua attenção e cuidado. Cantarião pois os seus rebanhos, os montes e os valles em que os apascentavão, os rios e fontes, a que os levavão a beber; a alva e serena madrugada que os chamava ao trabalho, a sesta que os convidava ao descanço, e os rafeiros que lhes guardavão o gado. Cantarião, como era natural, as paixões e affectos da sua alma; porém não affectos violentos, e desesperados, que não erão proprios daquelle vida, mas doces e suaves, e que só lhes causavão aquella inquietação e desasocego a que se não pudesse seguir fim algum funesto.

Como estes argumentos são todos proprios da Poesia Bucolica, segue-se legitimamente, que ella foi a primeira que no Mundo inventaram os homens. Sendo pois a Poesia Pastoral a primeira origem de toda a erudição humana, e os primeiros esforços que fizerão as faculdades do homem para se pulirem e cultivarem, justamente me persuadi, que a Academia, instituida toda para utilidade publica, e que álem de outros mais gloriosos e louvaveis empenhos, tomou a si o de dar a conhecer os principios e progressos da nossa Litteratura, havia de levar em gosto que hum Socio seu tratasse dos merecimentos dos nossos Poetas Bucolicos. D'este trabalho, Senhores, posto que maior que minhas forças, me quiz encarregar, por

ser dos mais leves e faceis que tão illustre corpo podia commetter a algum de seus membros.

Vós tratareis verdades sublimes, por extremo remotas e escondidas á commum comprehensão dos homens; medireis o espaço immenso dos Céos; poreis Leis aos corpos mais vastos, mais distantes, e até mais rebeldes do Universo; com vossas porfiadas investigações e rara sagacidade obrigareis a Natureza a que vos descubra e patentêe aquilla mesmo que ella punha maior estudo em occultar. Assim para felicidade dos outros homens augmentareis aperfeiçareis os seus conhecimentos; mas sereis muito particularmente felices vós, e feliz a Patria, em cuja utilidade haveis de empregar os vossos talentos e todos estes trabalhos e fadigas: e alla vo-lo saberá agradecer com o premio que só desejão as almas grandes, do louvor e da gloria. Eu, gozando-me e comprazendo-me do vosso alto merecimento, de que vos quizestes me coubesse tambem alguma parte, me contentarei com examinar a propriedade e elegancia de uma palavra; a verdade, novidade, e belleza de um pensamento; a innocencia e sã singeleza de um Pegureiro: e isto *prope aquæ rivum*, ou quando muito, *sub ramis arboris altæ*.

Mas, tornando ao meu assumpto, de que me fizerão desviar os vossos justos louvôres, não são pouco relevantes, nem concorrem medianamente para a instrucção e cultura dos homens, os trabalhos dos Poetas. Negal-o seria não conhecer o modo por que se dilatão e aperfeiçoão as nossas faculdades, e ignorar inteiramente a Historia dos varios progressos do entendimento humano. A restauração das letras, com que se desterrou a ignorancia e barbaridade, a que nos tinhão reduzido as Nações do Norte e as continuas irrupções dos Sarracenos, tem as suas sementes nos Trovadores Provençaes e Lombardos, que fructificando felizmente chegarão a produzir os dois

abalisados engenhos de Dante, e Petrarca. Cultivada por estes dous grandes homens, e por alguns mais seus contemporaneos a Lingua Toscana, preparou a Italia, e á sua imitação a toda a Europa, para um conhecimento profundo da Lingua Latina e da Grega. Com taes disposições e auxilios se intruirão as Nações Europeas nas Artes e Sciencias, e em toda a sorte de erudição d'aquelles sabios Povos; e inflammadas cada vez mais no desejo de saber, têm levado muitas das Artes e Sciencias dos antigos a um ponto incrivel de perfeição, &c.

---

*Analyse e Combinações filosoficas sobre a Elocução e Estilo de Sá de Miranda, Ferreira, Bernardes, Caminha, e Camões. Por Francisco Dias.*

Quando entrei n'esta composição, julguei que devia tomar um ponto fixo donde viesse deduzindo a sua analyse, e que o Sá de Miranda devia indispensavelmente formar a epoca donde, segundo a ordem do tempo, havia de dimanar todo o seu progresso, como de um escritor que lançou os fundamentos da Poesia Portugueza. Mas antes que entrasse n'esta diligencia, vi que me era de precisa necessidade fazer uma descripção exacta do estado em que se achava a Lingua quando o Poeta Miranda appareceo, e sondar as qualidades principaes da composição e estylo daquelle Padre da Poesia Portugueza, donde passou para Ferreira, para Bernardes, para Caminha, e ultimamente para Camões, o maior Poeta da Nação, e o que mais enriqueceo e apurou o nosso idioma; discorrendo por aquelles pontos que mais me parecerão dignos de comparação no genero Sublime, como mais nobre, e como aquelle que mais esforço pede da fantasia humana;

fazendo juizo de cada um dos Poetas da Analyse, e finalmente indicando as origens donde nascerão as expressões e formulas eombinadas; no que julgo ter satisfeito ao Assumpto, que é certamente mais difficultoso do que parece.

Na execução d'este tão trabalhoso argumento me conduzi, segundo as luzes que pude adquirir na lição de Aristoteles, Cicero, Longino, Quintiliano, e muito mais na de Locke, Condillac, Du Marsais, e em especial na do sobre todos sabio Commentario que o grande Voltaire fez ás Obras de Pedro Corneille, onde se vêm as regras do gosto na sua maior elevação.

Todas estas materias são novas em Portugal, e por consequencia não tive a quem seguir; e apezar dos defeitos, posso dizer,

——— *que aqui vereis presente*
*Cousas que juntas se achão.*

CAMÕES, *Lus.*

---

*Introducção.*

É o talento da palavra a mais nobre faculdade do ente racional, como instrumento com que não só expõe as suas idéas, mas até pinta os mais occultos sentimentos do espirito, com rasgos tão vivos e sublimes que os faz passar aos corações mais izentos de interesse. Aquella Filosofia inata ao coração do homem que preside a todas as acções que mais o elevão, foi quem formou os sinaes representativos das suas idéas simplices e compostas, e quem, á força de infinitas combinações, lhe fez conceber o grande pensamento do transumpto mental consignado nas palavras por uma successão de idéas não interrom-

pidas, cujo nexo constitue a pintura eterna não só do fysico, mas, o que é mais prodigioso, do moral humano.

Aquella mesma filosofia, que dirigindo e elevando o espirito humano desde as idéas simplices até as implexas lhe deu as primeiras noções da expressão simples é primitiva, como mais adaptada ás necessidades do homem; á proporção que lhe foi ampliando a esfera dos seus conhecimentos, lhe foi ministrando expressão complexa, isto é, figurada, com a qual pinta aos olhos, e dá corpo e vida ás mais sublimes abstracções que pode conceber o entendimento humano.

D'este immenso aggregado de idéas simplices e compostas, como consequencia natural, procedeo a vivacidade da expressão, e a riqueza das Linguas que se elevaram ao mais distincto grão de perfeição, segundo o numero de acontecimentos e revoluções notaveis: e muito mais segundo o trato frequente com as nações estranhas, e communicação social dos povos entre si; por isso mesmo que das grandes crizes procede a effervescenia das paixões, que pondo em movimento e actividade a massa das idéas, gera nóvos pensamentos, e nova elocução.

D'aqui se infere, que os melhores de todos os idiomas devem forçosamente ser os d'aquelles povos que mais revoluções experimentaram, e que melhor conheceram, as leis da Sociedade. Vê-se pois pelo que nos ensina a historia, que as Nações mais pulidas e sabias, tanto na linguagem como nos costumes, forão quasi sempre as que, situadas junto ao mar, conheceram mais cedo a necessidade de communicação dos povos estranhos por meio do Commercio; ou aquellas cujos acontecimentos lhes derão lugar distincto nos annaes do genero humano.

Por isso vemos, que as Linguas geraes do Malabar, Coromandel, e da China, regiões maritimas, assim como tambem a Arabe, são as mais bellas e antigas de todas

as Linguas da Asia. Os Povos da Grecia, que gozando do mais formoso espectaculo da Natureza, experimentarão tantas e tão notaveis revoluções, inventarão o mais significativo e harmonico de todos os Idiomas, onde se achão consignados os mais insignes monumentos do genio, e donde procedeo a magestade da Lingua dos Romanos, não mais famosos pelas suas conquistas que pelos escriptos immortaes com que illustrarão os Seculos. O mesmo se deve considerar dos Italianos, Francezes, Hespanhoes, e Inglezes, cujos Idiomas tendo origem na Lingua Latina, se têm elevado ao mais alto ponto de perfeição possivel, e nos quaes existem monumentos para quem todo o louvor he diminuto.

Mas este concurso de circunstancias parece que ainda não foi a causa sufficiente da perfeição das Linguas: ainda ali se diviza hum vacuo, que preciza ser occupado. Aqui vem a Poesia, com toda a sua pompa e magestade, gerando nóvos pensamentos, pulindo e aperfeiçoando os Idiomas, dando a tudo alma e vida, já elevando-se aos maiores assumptos nos louvores do Ente Supremo, e no Panegyrico dos grandes homens, persuadindo a imitação das acções nobres e dignas dos mais distinctos applausos. Ella lhe abre os seus thesouros, ella os enriquece, ella lhes dá força, elegancia, e harmonia, sem o que serião uns cadaveres seccos e inanimados. Sem a Poesia nada serião talvez os Gregos e os Romanos, que tanto encherão o mundo com a fama das suas victorias, com a grandeza das suas acções, e muito mais com a perfeição, com que cultivarão todas as artes de génio, de que tantos e tão admiraveis testemunhos nos deixarão principalmente nos seus escritos. A Poesia pois, que teve entre os antigos um caracter de harmonia muito diverso da Poesia moderna, veio pella ignorancia dos Seculos a tal decadencia, que pouco faltou par ficar inteiramente ignorada.

Das reliquias da Lingua Latina e Grega se formarão os Idiomas modernos, com diversa Syntaxe; e com elles resuscitarão, ou por melhor dizer, formarão os Provençaes uma Poesia toda nova na disposição das cesuras e combinações harmonicas.

Os Italianos, restauradores de quasi todas as Artes, forão os primeiros que tratarão a Poesia com dignidade, aperfeiçoando os metros e harmonias, que os mesmos Provençaes e Sicilianos tinhão inventado; e tanto se applicarão a ella, que já no decimo quarto Seculo era famoso Poeta o celebre Dante, quem fixou todas as accentuações harmonicas do hendecasyllabo, que ficou sendo o mais necessario metro da Poesia Italiana, Castelhana, e Portugueza.

Entraram os Mouros em Hespanha, e com elles a Poesia: porem o desasocego da guerra não deu lugar aos antigos possuidores d'esta Região, tão infestada de Nações estranhas, a cultivar a Poesia seriamente, nem a pulir os seus Idiomas tão cedo como os Italianos. Da longa dominação que os Romanos tiverão em Hespanha se havia nella introduzido o uzo da Lingua Latina, que veio a ser vulgar: d'ella, e de varios dialectos barbaros, se formarão os dois mais bellos, e sonoros Idiomas de Hespanha, e talves da Europa, o Castelhano, e o Portuguez.

Estas duas Linguas se forão igualmente aperfeiçoando, de sorte que a um mesmo tempo chegaram ao seu auge. Com tudo, sendo a Nação Portugueza mais moderna, e occupando muito menos espaço de torreno que a Castelhana, veio mais cedo a produzir monumentos que assaz distinguiram e acreditaram o seu Idiôma. As historias de Joaõ de Barros dadas á luz no meio do Seculo decimo sexto, e traduzidas em todas as Linguas cultas da Europa, fizerão mostrar ao Mundo litterario, que a Lingua Portugueza era a mais filha da Latina. Um numero sufficiente

de Escriptores, que logo depois vierão, acabarão de determinar o genio da Lingua, cujo caracter he elegancia a perspicuidade. Sendo pois a Lingua Portugueza desde a sua origem mui doce e sonora, resultado natural da quantidade proporcionada das suas vogaes e consoantes, das quaes as primeiras não são tão frequentes e conjunctas que enfraqueçáo a harmonia, e a fação languida e pouco notada, como se vê na Lingua Italiana; nem as segundas com nimia frequencia se atropellão, e produzem sons rudes e asperos, como nas Linguas do Norte. Todas estas felices disposições, álem do genio, convidavão a Nação á cultura da Poesia, para que sempre teve natural inclinação. Deixemos a miuda investigação d'estas causas, a qual será mais propria de quem tentar escrever a historia da Lingua. Deixemos tambem as Poesias anteriores ao Seculo de quinhentos, muitas das quaes existem em algumas Bibliothecas antigas, como as d' El Rei D. Diniz, na do Convento da Ordem de Christo em Thomar, e outras andão empregadas no celebre Cancioneiro de Resende, collecção preciosa, donde se podem extrahir as maiores luzes a respeito da Natureza e origem da nossa Poesia: e começando a tratar do auge a que esta elevou a Lingua Portugueza, as graças e numero que lhe communicou, principiaremos a discorrer-de uma época mais vizinha a nós, e esta seja determinada pelo famoso Sá de Miranda.

Vejamos pois os assumptos que este Poeta tratou, a qualidade de sua imitação em geral, o uzo que fez do hendecasyllabo, até ao seu tempo pouco ou nada conhecido em Portugal, a em toda a Hespanha; como tratou, como aperfeiçoou o Soneto, do qual se deve reputar inventor entre nós, novas graças que accrescentou á nossa Lingua, e como finalmente preparou aos Poetas que lhe

succederam hum novo caminho para se elevarem até á immortal Lusiada.

Mas antes que entremos n'este exame, vejamos primeiro o estado em que o Sá de Miranda achou o Idioma.

A Nação Portugueza, que até ao fim do reinado de D. Fernando jazia na ignorancia, occupada unicamente da cultura das suas terras quanto lhe era preciso para o consumo interior do Reino, e para entreter uma ligeira sombra de commercio exterior, continuamente vexado pella tyrannia Arabica, que, infestando os mares, era eterno obstaculo á navegação; vivendo como desterrada na solidão dos campos, sem communicação, nem policia, fallava uma linguagem informe e grosseira, chea de sons rudes, que as Linguas barbaras lhe tinhão communicado: e a pezar de ter uma origem tão pura, como a Lingua Latina donde procedia, só conservava alguma energia natural nascida das significações primitivas das suas vozes, que, álem, de serem masculadas de infinitas anomalias e dissonancias, erão privadas de translações, que dão força e elevação aos Idiomas. Cheia pois de construcções erroneas, de diphtongos âsperos, e desinencias rudes, pobre de termos, sem idéa do nexo que subsiste nas particulas, sem syntaxe, sem harmonia, o seu periodo incerto e desunido vicillára sem caracter.

A grande revolução de D. João I., fazendo a mais viva commoção no genio dos Portuguezes, com ella lhe vierão novos estimulos de gloria, que eleva o espirito; novas emprezas, novos pensamentos, nova força, nova energia âs suas enunciações; novos objectos do discurso, e novo linguagem. Um Latim barbaro, até alli organo das Leis e instumentos publicos, cessou de ser a linguagem do Foro.

Da conquista de Ceuta nasceo a idéa, a grande idéa dos descubrimentos, que mostrando a necessidade de

cultivar as Mathematicas e a Astronomia, taes quaes existião naquelles tempos obscuros, alargou a esfera da Mechanica, que fazendo novas investigações sobre a acção dos ventos, e resistencia das agoas, extrahindo a somma da combinação dos movimentos, resultantes da acção e reacção d'estes dois Elementos, alcançou mais perfeito conhecimento das leis dos liquidos, e do equilibrio, e aperfeiçoou finalmente a Arte de navegar. Novos Astros, novos mares e costas, novas ilhas, novos mundos enchem de admiração todo o universo.

# EXTRACTOS POETICOS.

---

*From the Third Canto of the Lusiad of Camões.*

120

Estavas linda Inez posta em sossego,
De teus annos colhendo o doce fruto,
Naquelle engano da alma, ledo e cego,
Que a fortuna não deixa durar muto:
Nos saudosos campos do Mondego,
De teus formosos olhos nunco enxuto
Aos montes ensinando e ás ervinhas
O nome que no peito escrito tinhas.

Do teu principe alli te respondião
As lembranças, que na alma lhe moravão,
Que sempre ante seus olhos de trazião,
Quando dos teus formosos se apartavão:
De noite em doces sonhos, que mentião;
De dia em pensamentos, que voavão:
E quanto em fim cuidava, e quanto via,
Erão tudo memorias de alegria.

D'outras bellas senhoras e princezas,
Os dezejados talamos engeita,
Que tudo, em fim, tu puro amor desprezas,
Quando hum gesto suave te sugeita.
Vendo estas namoradas estranhezas,
O velho pay sesudo, que respeita
O murmurar do povo e a fantasia
Do filho, que casar-se não queria:

Tirar Inez a mundo determina,
Por lhe tirar o filho, que tem preso,
Crendo co'sangue só da morte indina,
Matar do firme amor o fogo aceso.
Que furor consentio, que a espada fina,
Que pode sustentar o grande peso
Do furor Mauro, fosse levantada
Contra huma fraca dama delicada?

Trazião-na os horrificos algozes
Ante o Rey, já movido a piedade,
Mas o povo com falsas, e ferozes
Razões, á morte crua o persuade.
Ella com tristes e piedosas vozes,
Sahidas só de magoa e saudade
Do seu Principe e filhos que deixava,
Que mais que a propria morte a mogoava;

Para o céo cristalino levantando
Com lagrimas os olhos piedosos,
Os olhos, porque as mãos lhe estava atando
Hum dos duros ministros rigorosos:
E depois nos meninos atentando,
Que tão queridos tinha, e tão mimosos,
Cuja orfandade como mãi temia,
Para o avõ cruel assim dizia.

Se já nas brutas feras, cuja mente
Natura fez cruel de nascimento,
E nas aves agrestes, que sómente
Nas rapinas aerias tem o intento,
Com pequenas crianças vio a gente
Terem tão piedoso sentimento,
Como coa mãy de Nino já mostrarão,
E cos Irmãos que Roma edificarão:

O' tu que tens de humano o gesto, e o peito,
Se de humano he matar huma donzella
Fraca, e sem força, só por ter sugeito
O coração, a quem soube vencella,
A estas criancinhas tem respeito
Pois o não tens á morte escura della :
Mova-te a piedade sua e minha,
Pois te não move a culpa que não tinha.

E se vencendo a Maura resistencia
A morte sabes dar com fogo e ferro,
Sabe tambem dar vida cem clemencia
A quem para perdella não fez erro.
Mas se to assi merece esta innocencia,
Põe-me em perpetuo e misero desterro,
Na Scythia fria, ou lá na Libia ardente,
Onde em lagrimas viva eternamente.

Põe-me onde se use toda a feridade,
Entre leoens e tigres, e verei,
Se nelles achar posso a piedade,
Que entre peitos humanos não achei ;
Alli co' amor intrinseco e vontade,
Naquelle por quem morro criarei
Estas reliquias suas, que aqui viste,
Que refrigerio sejão da mãi triste.

Queria perdoar-lhe o Rey benino,
Movido das palavras, que o magôão,
Mas o pertinaz povo, e seu destino
(Que desta sorte o quiz), lhe não perdôão.
Arrancão das espadas de aço fino
Os que por bom tal feito alli pregôão ;
Contra huma dama, ó peitos carniceiros,
Ferozes vos mostraes e cavalleiros ?

Qual contra a linda moça Policena,
Consolação extrema da mãy velha,
Porque a sombra de Achiles a condena,
C' o ferro o duro Pyrro se aparelha;
Mas ella os olhos, com que o ar serena,
(Bem como paciente, e mansa ovelha)
Na misera mãy postos que endoudece,
Ao duro sacrificio se offerece:

Taes contra Inez os brutos matadores
No collo de alabastro, que sostinha
As obras cõ que amor matou de amores
A' quelle que depois a fez rainha:
As espadas banhando, e as brancas flores
Que ella dos olhos seus regado tinha,
Se incarniçavão fervidos, e irosos,
No futuro castigo não cuidosos.

Bem puderas, ó sol, da vista destes,
Teus rayos apartar aquelle dia,
Como da seva mesa de Thyestes
Quando os filhos por mão de Atreu comia:
Vós ó concavos valles que pudestes
A voz extrema ouvir da boca fria,
O none do seu Pedro, que lhe ouvistes,
Por muito grande espaço repetistes.

Assi como a bonina, que cortada
Antes de tempo foi, candida e bella,
Sendo das mãos lascivas mal tratada,
Da menina, que a trouxe na capella,
O cheiro traz perdido, e a cor murchada,
Tal está morta a pallida donzella,
Secas do rosto as rosas, e perdida
A branca e viva cor, co' a doce vida.

135

As filhas do Mondego a morte escura,
Longo tempo chorando memorarão,
E por memoria eterna em fonte pura
As lagrimas choradas transformarão ;
O nome lhe puzerso, que inda dura,
Dos amores de Inez que alli passarão ;
Vede, que fresca fonte rega as flores,
Que lagrimas são agoa, e o nome amores.

---

*From the fifth Canto of the same.*

Porem ja cinco soes erão passados,
Que dalli nos partiramos, cortando
Os mares nunca d'ontrem navegados,
Prosperamente os ventos assoprando ;
Quando huma noite estando descuidados,
Na cortadora proa vigiando,
Huma nuvem que os ares escurece,
Sobra nossas cabeçãs apparece.

Tão temerosa vinha, e carregada,
Que poz nos coraçoens hum grande medo,
Bramindo o negro mar de longe brada
Como se desse em vão n'algum rochedo ;
O' potestade, disse, sublimada,
Que ameaço divino, ou que segredo,
Este clima, e este mar nos apresenta,
Que mór cousa parece que tormenta ?

Não acabava, quando huma figura
Se nos mostra no ar robusta e valida,
De disforme e grandissima estatura,
O rosto carregado, a barba esquallida,
Os olhos encovados, e a postura
Medonha, e má, e a cor terrena e pallida,
A boca negra, os dentes amarellos.

Tão grande era de membros, que bem posso
Certificarte, que este era o segundo
De Rhodes estranhissimo Colosso,
Que hum dos sete milagres foi do mundo:
Co' hum tom de voz nos falla horrendo e grosso,
Que pareceo sahir do mar profundo,
Arrepiãose as carnes, e o cabello
A mi, e a todos, só de ouvillo e vello.

E disse: O' gente ousada mais que quantas
No mundo cometterão grandes cousas,
Tu, que por guerras cruas taes e tantas,
E por trabalhos vãos nunca repousas,
Pois os vedados terminos quebrantas,
E navegar meus longos mares ousas,
Que eu tanto tempo ha que guardo e tenho,
Nunca arados de estranho ou proprio lenho;

Pois vens ver os segredos escondidos
Da natureza, e do humido elemento,
A nenhum grande humano concedidos,
De nobre ou de immortal merecimento;
Ouve os damnos de mi que apercebidos
Estão a teu sobejo atrevimento,
Por todo o largo mar, e pela terra,
Que inda has de subjugar com dura guerra.

Sabe que quantas naos esta viagem,
Que tu fazes, fizerem de atrevidas,
Inimiga terão esta paragem
Com ventos, e tormentas desmedidas;
E da primeira armada, que passagem
Fizer por estas ondas insoffridas,
Eu farei de improviso tal castigo,
Que seja mór o damno que o perigo.

Aqui espero tomar, se não me engano,
De quem me descubrio summa vingança;
E não se acabará só nisto o damno
De vossa pertinace confiança:
Antes em vossas naos vereis cada anno
(Se he verdade o que meu juizo alcança)
Naufragios, perdições de toda sorte,
Que o menor mal de todos seja a morte.

E do primeiro illustre que a ventura
Com fama alta fizer tocar os Ceos
Serei eterna e nova sepultura,
Por juizos incognitos de Deos:
Aqui porá da Turca armada dura
Os soberbos e prosperos tropheos;
Comigo de seus damnos o ameaça
A destruida Quilôa, com Mombaça.

Outro tambem vira de honrada fama,
Liberal, Cavalleiro e namorado,
E comsigo trará formosa Dama,
Que Amor por grão mercê lhe terá dado:
Triste ventura e negro fado os chama
Neste terreno meu, que, duro e irado,
Os deixará de hum crú naufragio vivos,
Para verem trabalhos excessivos.

Verão morrer com fome os filhos caros,
Em tanto amor gerados e nascidos;
Verão os Cafres asperos e avaros
Tirar á linda Dama os seus vestidos:
Os crystallinos membros e preclaros
A' calma, ao frio, ao ar verão despidos;
Despois de ter pizada longamente
C' os delicados pés a area ardente.

E verão mais olhos que escaparem
De tanto mal, de tanta desventura,
Os dous amantes miseros ficarem
Na fervida e implacavel espessura.
Alli, depois que as pedras abrandarem
Com lagrimas de dor, e magoa pura,
Abraçados as almas soltarão
Da formosa, e miserrima prisao.

Mais hia por diante o monstro horrendo,
Dizendo nossos fados, quando alçado
Lhe disse eu: Quem es tu, que esse estupendo
Corpo, certo, me tem maravilhado!
A boca, e os olhos negros retorcendo,
E dando hum espantoso e grande brado,
Me respondeo com voz pesada e amara,
Como quem da pergunta lhe pezára:

Eu sou aquelle occulto e grande Cabo
A quem chamais vós outros Tormentorio,
Que nunca a Ptholomeo, Pomponio, Estrabo,
Plinio, e quantos passarão, fui notorio:
Aqui toda a Africana costa acabo
Neste meu nunca visto Promontorio,
Que para o Polo Antarctico se estende,
A quem vossa ousadia tanto offende.

Fui dos filhos asperrimos da Terra,
Qual Encelado, Egeo, e o Centimano,
Chamei-me Adamastor, e fui na guerra
Contra o que vibra os raios de Vulcano:
Não que puzesse serra sobre serra,
Mas conquistando as ondas do Oceano
Fui Capitão do mar, por onde andava
A armada de Neptuno, que eu buscava.

Amores da alta Esposa de Peleo
Me fizeram tomar tamanha empresa,
Todas as Deosas desprezei do Ceo
Só por amar das aguas a Princeza:
Hum dia a vi co' as filhas de Nereo
Sahir nua na praia, e logo presa
A vontade senti de tal maneira,
Que inda não sinto cousa que mais queira.

Como fosse impossivel alcançalla,
Pela grandeza fea de meu gesto,
Determinei por armas de tomalla,
E a Doris este caso manifesto:
De medo a Deosa então por mi lhe falla;
Mas ella co' hum formoso riso honesto
Respondeo: Qual será o amor bastante
De Nympha que sustente o d' hum Gigante?

Com tudo, por livrarmos o Oceano
De tanta guerra, eu buscarei maneira,
Com que com minha honra escuse o damno
Tal resposta me torna a mensageira.
Eu quem cahir não pude neste engano,
Que he grande dos amantes a cegueira
Encheu-se me com grandes abundanças
peito de dezejos e esperanças.

Já, nescio, já da guerra desistindo,
Huma noite de Doris promettida,
Me apparece de longe o gesto lindo,
Da branca Thetis, unica, despida:
Como doudo corri de longe abrindo
Os braços para aquella que era vida
Deste corpo, e começo os olhos bellos
A lhe beijar as faces, e os cabellos.

Oh que não sei de nojo como o conte!
Que crendo ter nos braços quem amavá,
Abraçado me achei co' hum duro monte
De aspero mato, e de espessura brava:
Estando co' hum penedo fronte afronte,
Que eu pelo rosto angelico apertava,
Não fiquei homem não, mas mudo, e quedo,
E junto a hum penedo outro penedo.

O' Nympha a mais formosa do Oceano,
Já que minha presença não te agrada,
Que te custava ter-me neste engano,
Ou fosse monte, nuvem, sonho, ou nada?
D' aqui me parto irado, e quasi insano
Da magoa, e da deshonra alli passada,
A buscar outro mundo, onde não visse
Quem de meu pranto, e de meu mal se risse.

Erão já neste tempo meus irmãos
Vencidos, e em miseria extrema postos;
E, por mais segurar-se os Deoses vãos,
Alguns a varios montes sotopostos:
E como contra o Ceo não valem mãos,
Eu que chorando andava meus desgostos
Comecei a sentir do fado imigo
Por meus atrevimentos o castigo.

Converte-se-me a carne em terra dura,
Em penedos os ossos se fizeram ;
Estes membros que vês, e esta figura,
Por estas longas aguas se estenderam :
Emfim minha grandissima estatura
Neste remoto cabo converteram
Os Deoses, e por mais dobradas magoas,
Me anda Thetis cercando destas agoas.

Assim contava, e co' hum medonho choro
Subito dante os olhos se apartou ;
Desfez-se a nuvem negra, e co' hum sonóro
Bramido muito longe o mar soou.
Eu, levantando as mãos ao sancto coro
Dos Anjos, que tão longe nos guiou,
A Deos pedi, que removesse os duros
Casos que Adamastor contou futuros.

---

*From the second Canto of the same.*

Ouvio-lhe estas palavras piedosas
A formosa Dione, e commovida
De entre as Nymphas se vai, que saudosas
Ficarão desta subita partida.
Já penetra as estrellas luminósas,
Já na terceira Esfera recebida
Avante passa, e lá no sexto Ceo,
Para onde estava o Padre se moveo.

E como hia affrontada do caminho,
Tão formosa no gesto se mostrava,
Que as estrellas, e o Ceo, e o ar vizinho,
E tudo quanto a via namorava,
Dos olhos, onde faz seu filho o ninho,
Huns espiritos vivos inspirava,
Com que os Polos gelados accendia,
E tornava de fogo a Esfera fria.

E por mais namorar o Soberano
Padre, de quem foi sempre amada, e cara,
Se lhe apresenta assi, como ao Troyano
Na selva Idea já se apresentára.
Se a vira o caçador que o vulto humano
Perdeo vendo a Diana na agua clara
Nunca os famintos galgos o mataram,
Que primeiro desejos o acabaram.

Os crespos fios de ouro se esparziam
Pelo collo que a néve escurecia;
Andando as lacteas tetas lhe tremiam
Com quem Amor brincava, e não se via:
Da alva petrina flamas lhe sahiam,
Onde o menino as almas accendia;
Pelas lizas columnas lhe trepavam.
Desejos, que como hera se enrolavam.

C' hum delgado sendal as partes cobre
De quem vergonha hé natural reparo:
Porem nem tudo esconde, nem descobre
O véo dos roxos lirios pouco ovaro:
Mas para que o desejo accenda e dobre,
Lhe põe diante aquelle objecto raro.
Já se sentem no Ceo por toda a parte
Ciumes em Vulcano, amor em Marte.

E mostrando no angelico semblante
C' o riso huma tristeza misturada,
Como dama que foi do incauto amante
Em brincos amorosos mal tratada,
Que se queixa e se ri n' hum mesmo instante,
E se mostra entre alegre magoada ;
Desta arte a Deosa, a quem nenhuma iguala,
Mais mimosa que triste ao Padre falla.

---

*From the first Idyll of Boccage.*

A' foz do Tejo, em bronca penedia,
Minada pelas ondas salitrosas,
Prisioneiro de amor Tritão gemia.

Luzião lhe as espadoas escamosas,
Sustentava o maritimo instrumento,
O buzio atroador nas mãos callosas ;

Conchas da cor do liquido Elemento
Parte do corpo enorme lhe vestião,
Igual na ligeireza ao proprio vento.

Da barba salsas gotas lhe cahião,
E nos olhos, que Amor affogueava,
Em borbotões as lagrimas fervião.

Lilia, que hum Bosque proximo habitava,
Lilia a Napea desdenhosa e bella,
Amorosos clamores lhe arrancava :

Hum dia a vio na praia, e só de vella
Seu coração feroz enfeitiçado,
Voou, gemendo, para os olhos della.

Das entranhas do Pelago salgado,
Louco de Amores, louco de saudades,
O queixoso Amador tinha saltado.

Do Pai, que abafa as negras tempestades,
Já seu voraz tormento era sabido,
E das outras Equoreas Divindades.

De aereas esperanças illudido,
Grão tempo seu espirito saudoso,
Rastejando a cruel, vagou perdido;

Grão tempo glorias vãs sonhou teimoso,
Antes que desse fructuosa entrada
Ao acre desengano o peito ancioso, &c.

THE END.

LONDON: Printed by STRANGEWAYS & SONS, Tower Street, Cambridge Circus, W.C.



27155
LaPor Gr
V671g
Author Vieyra, Antonio
Title A grammar of the Portuguese language.
University of Toronto
Library
DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET
Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU